AUCHE 230 - STRUCTURE AND BONDING



Elizabeth McGinitie
University of Alberta - Augustana Faculty

LibreTexts™

AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie)

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden borne from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and were supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

The LibreTexts name, logo, and book covers are trademarked by LibreTexts, Inc. (a 501(c)(3) not-for-profit organization) and protected against unauthorized use.

This text was compiled on 10/21/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Atomic Structure

1.1: The History of the Periodic Table

1.2: Electromagnetic Radiation

1.3: Quantum Theory

1.4: Atomic Spectra

1.5: The Bohr Atom

1.6: Two Ideas Leading to a New Quantum Mechanics

1.7: Wave Mechanics and Quantum Numbers

1.8: Electron Spin- A Fourth Quantum Number

1.9: Orbital Shapes and Energies

1.10: Electron Configurations

1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

1.12: Magnetic Properties

1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

1.14: Slater's Rules

2: Simple Bonding Theory

2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry

2.2: Ionic Bonding

2.3: Covalent Bonding

2.4: Electronegativity

2.5: Lewis Theory- An Overview

2.6: Writing Lewis Structures

2.7: Resonance

2.8: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

2.9: Shapes of Molecules

2.10: Multiple Bonds

2.11: Electronegativity and Atomic Size Effects

3: Molecular Symmetry

3.1: Symmetry Elements and Operations

3.2: Symmetry Elements

3.3: Molecular Point Groups

4: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory

4.1: Formation of Molecular Orbitals from Atomic Orbitals

4.2: Molecular Orbitals from s Orbitals

4.3: Molecular Orbitals from p Orbitals

4.4: Molecular orbitals from d orbitals
4.5: Nonbonding Orbitals and Other Factors
4.6: Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules
4.7: Molecular Orbitals
4.8: Orbital Mixing
4.9: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods
4.10: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules
4.11: Orbital ionization energies
4.12: Polar bonds
4.13: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals

5: Acid-Base and Donor-Acceptor Chemistry

5.1: Acid-Base Models as Organizing Concepts
5.2: Arrhenius Concept
5.3: Brønsted-Lowry Concept
5.4: Rules of Thumb for thinking about the relationship between Molecular Structure and Brønsted Acidity and Basicity*
5.5: The acid-base behavior of binary element hydrides is determined primarily by the element's electronegativity and secondarily by the element-hydrogen bond strength.*
5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom*
5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals
5.8: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital.
5.9: All other things being equal, electron withdrawing groups tend to make Lewis acids stronger and bases weaker while electron donating groups tend to make Lewis bases stronger and acids weaker
5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct.
5.11: Hard and Soft Acids and Bases
5.12: Hard-Hard and Soft-Soft preferences may be explained and quantified in terms of electrostatic and covalent and electronic stabilization on the stability of Lewis acid-base adducts
5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors

6: Crystalline Solids

6.1: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids
6.2: The Solid State of Matter
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Detailed Licensing

This page titled AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie) is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing***.

This page titled Licensing is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

1: ATOMIC STRUCTURE

1.1: The History of the Periodic Table

1.2: Electromagnetic Radiation

1.3: Quantum Theory

1.4: Atomic Spectra

1.5: The Bohr Atom

1.6: Two Ideas Leading to a New Quantum Mechanics

1.7: Wave Mechanics and Quantum Numbers

1.8: Electron Spin- A Fourth Quantum Number

1.9: Orbital Shapes and Energies

1.10: Electron Configurations

1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

1.12: Magnetic Properties

1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

1.14: Slater's Rules

This page titled 1: Atomic Structure is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

1.1: The History of the Periodic Table

The periodic law was developed independently by Dmitri Mendeleev and Lothar Meyer in 1869. Mendeleev created the first periodic table and was shortly followed by Meyer. They both arranged the elements by their mass and proposed that certain properties periodically reoccur. Meyer formed his periodic law based on the atomic volume or molar volume, which is the atomic mass divided by the density in solid form. Mendeleev's table is noteworthy because it exhibits mostly accurate values for atomic mass and it also contains blank spaces for unknown elements.

Introduction

In 1804 physicist John Dalton advanced the atomic theory of matter, helping scientists determine the mass of the known elements. Around the same time, two chemists Sir Humphry Davy and Michael Faraday developed electrochemistry which aided in the discovery of new elements. By 1829, chemist Johann Wolfgang Doberiner observed that certain elements with similar properties occur in group of three such as; chlorine, bromine, iodine; calcium, strontium, and barium; sulfur, selenium, tellurium; iron, cobalt, manganese. However, at the time of this discovery too few elements had been discovered and there was confusion between molecular weight and atomic weights; therefore, chemists never really understood the significance of Doberiner's triad.

In 1859 two physicists Robert Willhem Bunsen and Gustav Robert Kirchoff discovered spectroscopy which allowed for discovery of many new elements. This gave scientists the tools to reveal the relationships between elements. Thus in 1864, chemist John A. R Newland arranged the elements in increasing of atomic weights. Explaining that a given set of properties reoccurs every eight place, he named it the law of Octaves.

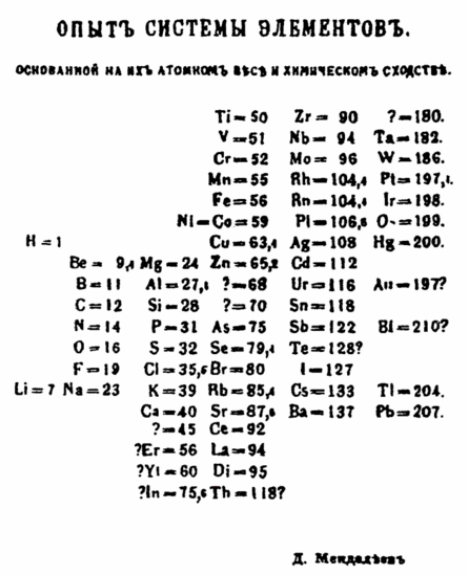
The Periodic Law

In 1869, **Dmitri Mendeleev** and **Lothar Meyer** individually came up with their own periodic law "when the elements are arranged in order of increasing atomic mass, certain sets of properties recur periodically." Meyer based his laws on the atomic volume (the atomic mass of an element divided by the density of its solid form), this property is called **Molar volume**.

$$\text{Atomic (molar) volume } (\text{cm}^3/\text{mol}) = \frac{\text{molar mass (g/ mol)}}{\rho\ (\text{cm}^3/\text{g})}$$

Mendeleev's Periodic Table

Mendeleev's periodic table is an arrangement of the elements that group similar elements together. He left blank spaces for the undiscovered elements (atomic masses, element: 44, scandium; 68, gallium; 72, germanium; & 100, technetium) so that certain elements can be grouped together. However, Mendeleev had not predicted the noble gases, so no spots were left for them.



ОПЫТЪ СИСТЕМЫ ЭЛЕМЕНТОВЪ.

ОСНОВАННОЙ НА ИХЪ АТОМНОМЪ ВѢСѢ И ХИМИЧЕСКОМЪ СХОДСТВѢ.

			Ti = 50	Zr = 90	? = 180.
			V = 51	Nb = 94	Ta = 182.
			Cr = 52	Mo = 96	W = 186.
			Mn = 55	Rh = 104,4	Pt = 197,1.
			Fe = 56	Ru = 104,4	Ir = 198.
			Ni = Co = 59	Pl = 106,6	O = 199.
H = 1			Cu = 63,4	Ag = 108	Hg = 200.
	Be = 9,4	Mg = 24	Zn = 65,2	Cd = 112	
	B = 11	Al = 27,4	? = 68	Ur = 116	Au = 197?
	C = 12	Si = 28	? = 70	Sn = 118	
	N = 14	P = 31	As = 75	Sb = 122	Bi = 210?
	O = 16	S = 32	Se = 79,4	Te = 128?	
	F = 19	Cl = 35,6	Br = 80	I = 127	
Li = 7	Na = 23	K = 39	Rb = 85,4	Cs = 133	Tl = 204.
		Ca = 40	Sr = 87,6	Ba = 137	Pb = 207.
		? = 45	Ce = 92		
		?Er = 56	La = 94		
		?Yt = 60	Di = 95		
		?In = 75,6	Th = 118?		

Д. Менделѣевъ

Figure 1: Mendeleev's original periodic table[4]

In Mendeleev's table, elements with similar characteristics fall in vertical columns, called groups. Molar volume *increases* from top to bottom of a group[3]

Example

The alkali metals (Mendeleev's group I) have high molar volumes and they also have low melting points which decrease in the order:

$$\text{Li (174 }^{\circ}\text{C)} > \text{Na (97.8 }^{\circ}\text{C)} > \text{K (63.7 }^{\circ}\text{C)} > \text{Rb (38.9 }^{\circ}\text{C)} > \text{Cs (28.5 }^{\circ}\text{C)}$$

Atomic Number as the Basis for the Periodic Law

Assuming there were errors in atomic masses, Mendeleev placed certain elements not in order of increasing atomic mass so that they could fit into the proper groups (similar elements have similar properties) of his periodic table. An example of this was with argon (atomic mass 39.9), which was put in front of potassium (atomic mass 39.1). Elements were placed into groups that expressed similar chemical behavior.

In 1913 Henry G.J. Moseley did researched the X-Ray spectra of the elements and suggested that the energies of electron orbitals depend on the nuclear charge and the nuclear charges of atoms in the target, which is also known as anode, dictate the frequencies of emitted X-Rays. Moseley was able to tie the X-Ray frequencies to numbers equal to the nuclear charges, therefore showing the placement of the elements in Mendeleev's periodic table. The equation he used:

$$\nu = A(Z - b)^2$$

with

- ν: X-Ray frequency
- Z: Atomic Number
- A and b: constants

> With Moseley's contribution the Periodic Law can be restated:
>
> Similar properties recur periodically when elements are arranged according to increasing atomic number."

Atomic numbers, not weights, determine the factor of chemical properties. As mentioned before, argon weights more than

potassium (39.9 vs. 39.1, respectively), yet argon is in front of potassium. Thus, we can see that elements are arranged based on their atomic number. The periodic law is found to help determine many patterns of many different properties of elements; melting and boiling points, densities, electrical conductivity, reactivity, acidic, basic, valance, polarity, and solubility.

The table below shows that elements increase from left to right accordingly to their atomic number. The vertical columns have similar properties within their group for example Lithium is similar to sodium, beryllium is similar to magnesium, and so on.

Group	1	2	13	14	15	16	17	18
Element	**Li**	**Be**	**B**	**C**	**N**	**O**	**F**	**Ne**
Atomic Number	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Atomic Mass	6.94	9.01	10.81	12.01	14.01	15.99	18.99	20.18
Element	**Na**	**Mg**	**Al**	**Si**	**P**	**S**	**Cl**	**Ar**
Atomic Number	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
Atomic Mass	22.99	24.31	26.98	20.09	30.97	32.07	35.45	39.95

Elements in Group 1 (periodic table) have similar chemical properties and are called alkali metals. Elements in Group 2 have similar chemical properties, they are called the alkaline earth metals.

Short form periodic table

The short form periodic table is a table where elements are arranged in 7 rows, periods, with increasing atomic numbers from left to right. There are 18 vertical columns known as groups. This table is based on Mendeleev's periodic table and the periodic law.

Long form Periodic Table

In the long form, each period correlates to the building up of electronic shell; the first two groups (1-2) (s-block) and the last 6 groups (13-18) (p-block) make up the main-group elements and the groups (3-12) in between the s and p blocks are called the transition metals. Group 18 elements are called noble gases, and group 17 are called halogens. The f-block elements, called inner transition metals, which are at the bottom of the periodic table (periods 8 and 9); the 15 elements after barium (atomic number 56) are called lanthanides and the 14 elements after radium (atomic number 88) are called actinides.

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph H., William S. Harwood, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education, Inc., 2007.
2. Sisler, Harry H. Electronic structure, properties, and the periodic law. New york; Reinhold publishing corporation, 1963.
3. Petrucci, Ralph H., Carey Bissonnette, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. Custom Edition for CHEM 2. Pearson Learning Solutions, 2010.
4. Mendeleev's 1869 Periodic Table. In *Wikimedia Commons*. Retrieved 4 December 2010, from commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Fi...odic_table.png.
5. Periodic Table of Elements. In *Wikimedia Commons*. Retrieved 4 December 2010, from commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Pe...le_of_Elements.

Problems

1) The periodic law states that

a. similar properties recur periodically when elements are arranged according to increasing atomic number
b. similar properties recur periodically when elements are arranged according to increasing atomic weight
c. similar properties are everywhere on the periodic table
d. elements in the same period have same characteristics

2) Which element is most similar to Sodium

a. Potassium
b. Aluminum
c. Oxygen
d. Calcium

3) According to the periodic law, would argon be in front of potassium or after? Explain why.

4) Which element is most similar to Calcium?

a. Carbon
b. Oxygen
c. Strontium
d. Iodine

5) Who were the two chemists that came up with the periodic law?

a. John Dalton and Michael Faraday
b. Dmitri Mendeleev and Lothar Meyer
c. Michael Faraday and Lothar Meyer
d. John Dalton and Dmitri Mendeleev

Answers

1. A
2. A
3. Argon would in front of potassium because the periodic law states that the periodic table increases from left to right based on atomic number not atomic weights
4. C
5. B

This page titled 1.1: The History of the Periodic Table is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- The Periodic Law is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.2: Electromagnetic Radiation

Learning Objectives

- to learn about the characteristics of electromagnetic waves. Light, X-Rays, infrared and microwaves among the types of electromagnetic waves.

Scientists discovered much of what we know about the structure of the atom by observing the interaction of atoms with various forms of radiant, or transmitted, energy, such as the energy associated with the visible light we detect with our eyes, the infrared radiation we feel as heat, the ultraviolet light that causes sunburn, and the x-rays that produce images of our teeth or bones. All these forms of radiant energy should be familiar to you. We begin our discussion of the development of our current atomic model by describing the properties of waves and the various forms of electromagnetic radiation.



Figure 1.2.1: A Wave in Water When a drop of water falls onto a smooth water surface, it generates a set of waves that travel outward in a circular direction.

Properties of Waves

A wave is a periodic oscillation that transmits energy through space. Anyone who has visited a beach or dropped a stone into a puddle has observed waves traveling through water (Figure 1.2.1). These waves are produced when wind, a stone, or some other disturbance, such as a passing boat, transfers energy to the water, causing the surface to oscillate up and down as the energy travels outward from its point of origin. As a wave passes a particular point on the surface of the water, anything floating there moves up and down.

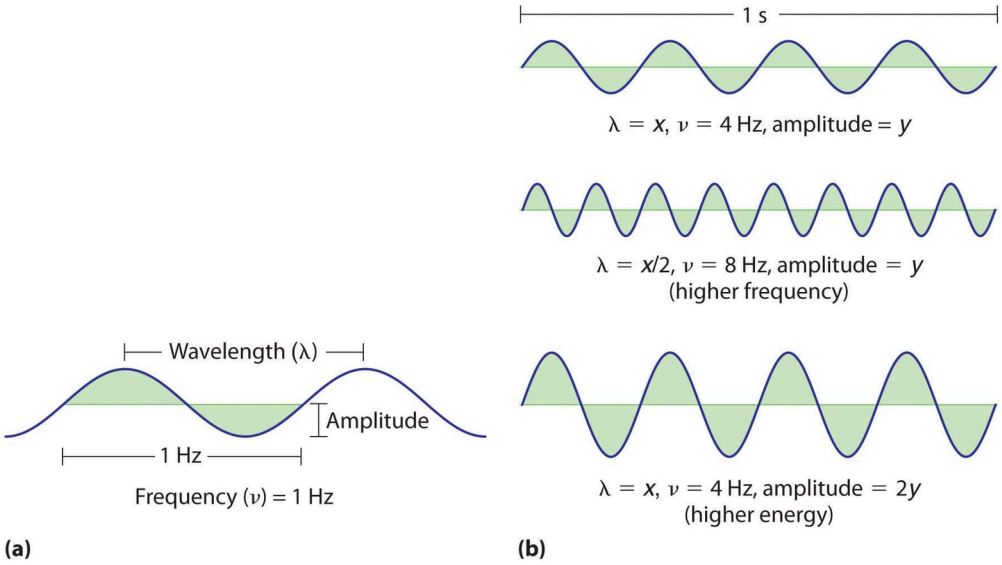


Figure 1.2.2: Important Properties of Waves (a) Wavelength (λ in meters), frequency (ν, in Hz), and amplitude are indicated on this drawing of a wave. (b) The wave with the shortest wavelength has the greatest number of wavelengths per unit time (i.e., the highest frequency). If two waves have the same frequency and speed, the one with the greater amplitude has the higher energy.

Waves have characteristic properties (Figure 1.2.2). As you may have noticed in Figure 1.2.1, waves are periodic, that is, they repeat regularly in both space and time. The distance between two corresponding points in a wave—between the midpoints of two peaks, for example, or two troughs—is the wavelength (λ), distance between two corresponding points in a wave—between the midpoints of two peaks or two troughs. λ is the lowercase Greek lambda, and u is the lowercase Greek nu. Wavelengths are described by a unit of distance, typically meters. The frequency (ν), the number of oscillations (i.e., of a wave) that pass a particular point in a given period of time. of a wave is the number of oscillations that pass a particular point in a given period of time. The usual units are oscillations persecond (1/s = s^{-1}), which in the SI system is called the hertz (Hz). It is named after German physicist Heinrich Hertz (1857–1894),a pioneer in the field of electromagnetic radiation. The amplitude (the vertical height of a wave, which is defined as half the peak-to-trough height), or vertical height, of a wave is defined as half the peak-to-trough height; as the amplitude of a wave with a given frequency increases, so does its energy. As you can see in Figure 1.2.2, two waves can have the same amplitude but different wavelengths and vice versa. The distance traveled by a wave per unit time is its speed (v), the distance traveled by a wave per unit time, which is typically measured in meters per second (m/s). The speed of a wave is equal to the product of its wavelength and frequency:

$$(\text{wavelength})(\text{frequency}) = speed \tag{1.2.1}$$

$$\lambda u = v \tag{1.2.2}$$

$$\left(\frac{meters}{\cancel{wave}}\right)\left(\frac{\cancel{wave}}{second}\right) = \frac{meters}{second} \tag{1.2.3}$$

Be careful not to confuse the symbols for the speed, v, with the frequency, u. Water waves are slow compared to sound waves, which can travel through solids, liquids, and gases. Whereas water waves may travel a few meters per second, the speed of sound in dry air at 20°C is 343.5 m/s. Ultrasonic waves, which travel at an even higher speed (>1500 m/s) and have a greater frequency, are used in such diverse applications as locating underwater objects and the medical imaging of internal organs.

Electromagnetic Radiation

Water waves transmit energy through space by the periodic oscillation of matter (the water). In contrast, energy that is transmitted, or radiated, through space in the form of periodic oscillations of electric and magnetic fields is known as electromagnetic radiation, which is energy that is transmitted, or radiated, through space in the form of periodic oscillations of electric and magnetic fields. (Figure 1.2.3). Some forms of electromagnetic radiation are shown in Figure 1.2.4. In a vacuum, all forms of electromagnetic radiation—whether microwaves, visible light, or gamma rays—travel at the speed of light (c), which is the speed with which all forms of electromagnetic radiation travel in a vacuum, a fundamental physical constant with a value of 2.99792458 × 10^8 m/s (which is about 3.00 ×10^8 m/s or 1.86 × 10^5 mi/s). This is about a million times faster than the speed of sound.

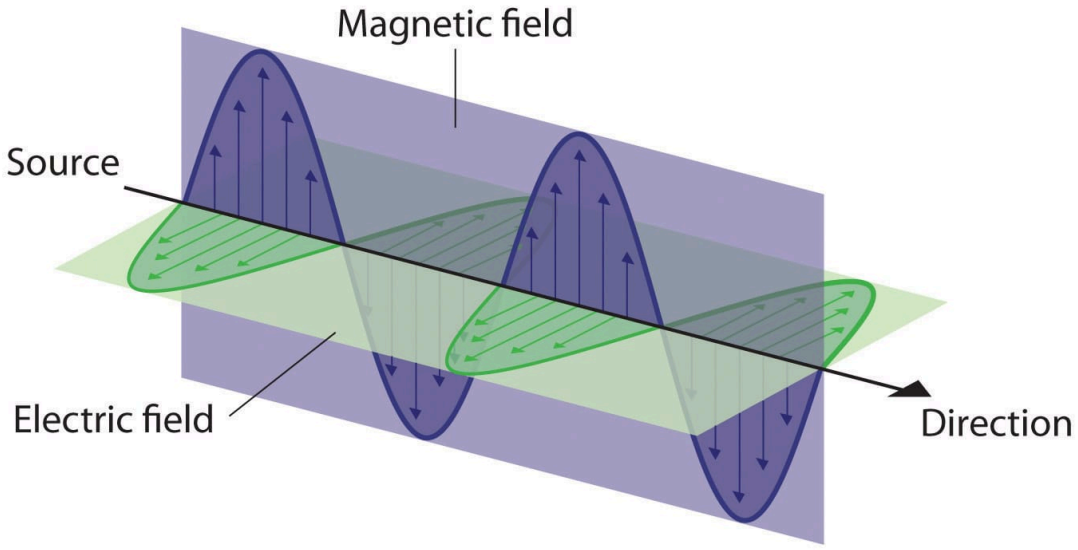


Figure 1.2.3: The Nature of Electromagnetic Radiation. All forms of electromagnetic radiation consist of perpendicular oscillating electric and magnetic fields.

Because the various kinds of electromagnetic radiation all have the same speed (*c*), they differ in only wavelength and frequency. As shown in Figure 1.2.4 and Table 1.2.1, the wavelengths of familiar electromagnetic radiation range from 10^{1} m for radio waves to 10^{-12} m for gamma rays, which are emitted by nuclear reactions. By replacing *v* with *c* in Equation 1.2.1, we can show that the frequency of electromagnetic radiation is inversely proportional to its wavelength:

$$c = \lambda u$$
$$u = \frac{c}{\lambda} \tag{1.2.4}$$

For example, the frequency of radio waves is about 10^{8} Hz, whereas the frequency of gamma rays is about 10^{20} Hz. Visible light, which is electromagnetic radiation that can be detected by the human eye, has wavelengths between about 7×10^{-7} m (700 nm, or 4.3×10^{14} Hz) and 4×10^{-7} m (400 nm, or 7.5×10^{14} Hz). Note that when frequency increases, wavelength decreases; c being a constant stays the same. Similarly when frequency decreases, the wavelength increases.

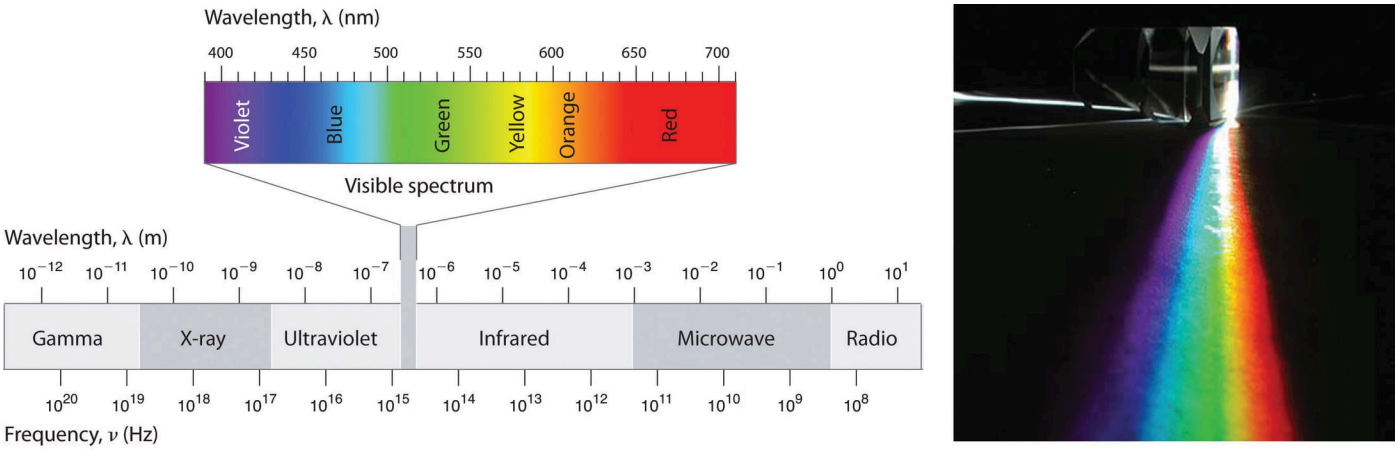


Figure 1.2.4: The Electromagnetic Spectrum. (a) This diagram shows the wavelength and frequency ranges of electromagnetic radiation. The visible portion of the electromagnetic spectrum is the narrow region with wavelengths between about 400 and 700 nm. (b) When white light is passed through a prism, it is split into light of different wavelengths, whose colors correspond to the visible spectrum. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

Within this visible range our eyes perceive radiation of different wavelengths (or frequencies) as light of different colors, ranging from red to violet in order of decreasing wavelength. The components of white light—a mixture of all the frequencies of visible

light—can be separated by a prism, as shown in part (b) in Figure 1.2.4. A similar phenomenon creates a rainbow, where water droplets suspended in the air act as tiny prisms.

Table 1.2.1: Common Wavelength Units for Electromagnetic Radiation

Unit	Symbol	Wavelength (m)	Type of Radiation
picometer	pm	10^{-12}	gamma ray
angstrom	Å	10^{-10}	x-ray
nanometer	nm	10^{-9}	x-ray
micrometer	μm	10^{-6}	infrared
millimeter	mm	10^{-3}	infrared
centimeter	cm	10^{-2}	microwave
meter	m	10^{0}	radio

As you will soon see, the energy of electromagnetic radiation is directly proportional to its frequency and inversely proportional to its wavelength:

$$E \propto u \tag{1.2.5}$$

$$E \propto \frac{1}{\lambda} \tag{1.2.6}$$

Whereas visible light is essentially harmless to our skin, ultraviolet light, with wavelengths of ≤ 400 nm, has enough energy to cause severe damage to our skin in the form of sunburn. Because the ozone layer absorbs sunlight with wavelengths less than 350 nm, it protects us from the damaging effects of highly energetic ultraviolet radiation.

> The energy of electromagnetic radiation **increases** with **increasing** frequency and **decreasing** wavelength.

Example 1.2.1

Your favorite FM radio station, WXYZ, broadcasts at a frequency of 101.1 MHz. What is the wavelength of this radiation?

Given: frequency

Asked for: wavelength

Strategy:

Substitute the value for the speed of light in meters per second into Equation 1.2.2 to calculate the wavelength in meters.

Solution:

From Equation 1.2.4, we know that the product of the wavelength and the frequency is the speed of the wave, which for electromagnetic radiation is 2.998 × 10^8 m/s:

$$\lambda\nu = c = 2.998 \times 10^8 m/s \tag{1.2.7}$$

Thus the wavelength λ is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{u} = \left(\frac{2.988 \times 10^8\ m/\cancel{s}}{101.1\ \cancel{MHz}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{MHz}}{10^6\ \cancel{s^{-1}}}\right) = 2.965\ m \tag{1.2.8}$$

Exercise 1.2.1

As the police officer was writing up your speeding ticket, she mentioned that she was using a state-of-the-art radar gun operating at 35.5 GHz. What is the wavelength of the radiation emitted by the radar gun?

Answer: 8.45 mm

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electromagnetic Radiation: https://youtu.be/TZy7a69pP-w

Summary

Understanding the electronic structure of atoms requires an understanding of the properties of waves and electromagnetic radiation. A basic knowledge of the electronic structure of atoms requires an understanding of the properties of waves and electromagnetic radiation. A **wave** is a periodic oscillation by which energy is transmitted through space. All waves are **periodic**, repeating regularly in both space and time. Waves are characterized by several interrelated properties: **wavelength (λ)**, the distance between successive waves; **frequency (ν)**, the number of waves that pass a fixed point per unit time; **speed (*v*)**, the rate at which the wave propagates through space; and **amplitude**, the magnitude of the oscillation about the mean position. The speed of a wave is equal to the product of its wavelength and frequency. **Electromagnetic radiation** consists of two perpendicular waves, one electric and one magnetic, propagating at the **speed of light (*c*)**. Electromagnetic radiation is radiant energy that includes radio waves, microwaves, visible light, x-rays, and gamma rays, which differ in their frequencies and wavelengths.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 1.2: Electromagnetic Radiation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.1: Electromagnetic Radiation is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.3: Quantum Theory

Learning Objectives

- To understand how energy is quantized.

By the late 19th century, many physicists thought their discipline was well on the way to explaining most natural phenomena. They could calculate the motions of material objects using Newton's laws of classical mechanics, and they could describe the properties of radiant energy using mathematical relationships known as Maxwell's equations, developed in 1873 by James Clerk Maxwell, a Scottish physicist. The universe appeared to be a simple and orderly place, containing matter, which consisted of particles that had mass and whose location and motion could be accurately described, and electromagnetic radiation, which was viewed as having no mass and whose exact position in space could not be fixed. Thus matter and energy were considered distinct and unrelated phenomena. Soon, however, scientists began to look more closely at a few inconvenient phenomena that could *not* be explained by the theories available at the time.

Blackbody Radiation

One phenomenon that seemed to contradict the theories of classical physics was blackbody radiation, which is electromagnetic radiation whose wavelength and color that depends on the temperature of the object. The wavelength of energy emitted by an object depends on only its temperature, not its surface or composition. Hence an electric stove burner or the filament of a space heater glows dull red or orange when heated, whereas the much hotter tungsten wire in an incandescent light bulb gives off a yellowish light.



Figure 1.3.1: Blackbody Radiation. When heated, all objects emit electromagnetic radiation whose wavelength (and color) depends on the temperature of the object. A relatively low-temperature object, such as a horseshoe forged by a blacksmith, appears red, whereas a higher-temperature object, such as the surface of the sun, appears yellow or white. Images used with permission from Wikipedia.

The *intensity* of radiation is a measure of the energy emitted per unit area. A plot of the intensity of blackbody radiation as a function of wavelength for an object at various temperatures is shown in Figure 1.3.2. One of the major assumptions of classical physics was that energy increased or decreased in a smooth, continuous manner. For example, classical physics predicted that as wavelength decreased, the intensity of the radiation an object emits should increase in a smooth curve without limit at *all* temperatures, as shown by the broken line for 6000 K in Figure 1.3.2. Thus classical physics could not explain the sharp *decrease* in the intensity of radiation emitted at shorter wavelengths (primarily in the ultraviolet region of the spectrum), which was referred to as the "ultraviolet catastrophe." In 1900, however, the German physicist Max Planck (1858–1947) explained the ultraviolet catastrophe by proposing that the energy of electromagnetic waves is *quantized* rather than continuous. This means that for each temperature, there is a maximum intensity of radiation that is emitted in a blackbody object, corresponding to the peaks in Figure 1.3.2, so the intensity does not follow a smooth curve as the temperature increases, as predicted by classical physics. Thus energy could be gained or lost only in integral multiples of some smallest unit of energy, a quantum (the smallest possible unit of energy). Energy can be gained or lost only in integral multiples of a quantum..

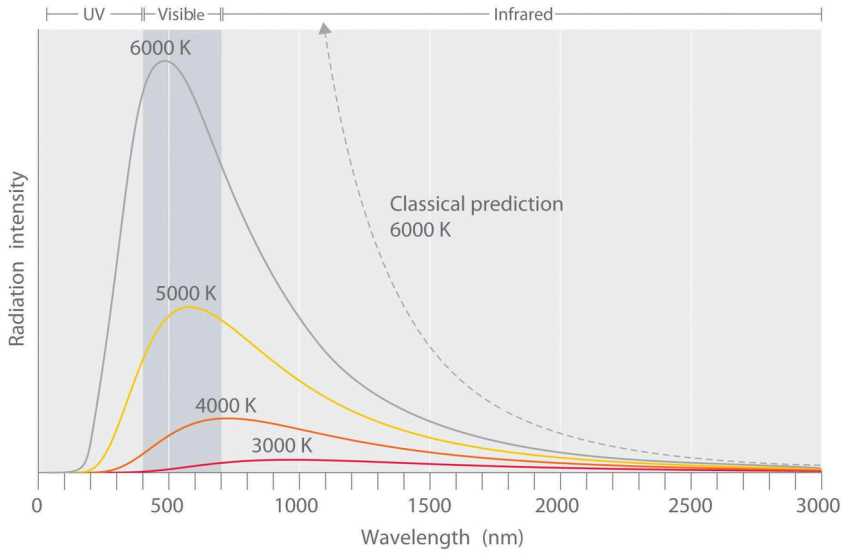
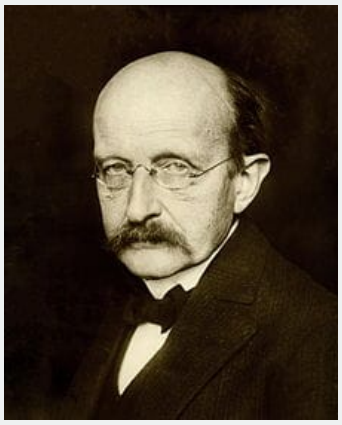


Figure 1.3.2: Relationship between the Temperature of an Object and the Spectrum of Blackbody Radiation It Emits. At relatively low temperatures, most radiation is emitted at wavelengths longer than 700 nm, which is in the infrared portion of the spectrum. The dull red glow of the electric stove element in Figure 1.3.1 is due to the small amount of radiation emitted at wavelengths less than 700 nm, which the eye can detect. As the temperature of the object increases, the maximum intensity shifts to shorter wavelengths, successively resulting in orange, yellow, and finally white light. At high temperatures, all wavelengths of visible light are emitted with approximately equal intensities. The white light spectrum shown for an object at 6000 K closely approximates the spectrum of light emitted by the sun (Figure 1.3.1). Note the sharp decrease in the intensity of radiation emitted at wavelengths below 400 nm, which constituted the ultraviolet catastrophe. The classical prediction fails to fit the experimental curves entirely and does not have a maximum intensity.

Max Planck (1858–1947)

In addition to being a physicist, Planck was a gifted pianist, who at one time considered music as a career. During the 1930s, Planck felt it was his duty to remain in Germany, despite his open opposition to the policies of the Nazi government.



One of his sons was executed in 1944 for his part in an unsuccessful attempt to assassinate Hitler, and bombing during the last weeks of World War II destroyed Planck's home. After WWII, the major German scientific research organization was renamed the Max Planck Society.

Although quantization may seem to be an unfamiliar concept, we encounter it frequently. For example, US money is integral multiples of pennies. Similarly, musical instruments like a piano or a trumpet can produce only certain musical notes, such as C or F sharp. Because these instruments cannot produce a continuous range of frequencies, their frequencies are quantized. Even electrical charge is quantized: an ion may have a charge of –1 or –2 but *not* –1.33 electron charges.

Planck postulated that the energy of a particular quantum of radiant energy could be described Max Planck (1858–1947) by the

equation

$$E = hu \tag{1.3.1}$$

where the proportionality constant *h* is called Planck's constant, one of the most accurately known fundamental constants in science. For our purposes, its value to four significant figures is generally sufficient:

$$h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J•s (joule-seconds)}$$

As the frequency of electromagnetic radiation increases, the magnitude of the associated quantum of radiant energy increases. By assuming that energy can be emitted by an object only in integral multiples of *h*ν, Planck devised an equation that fit the experimental data shown in Figure 1.3.2. We can understand Planck's explanation of the ultraviolet catastrophe qualitatively as follows: At low temperatures, radiation with only relatively low frequencies is emitted, corresponding to low-energy quanta. As the temperature of an object increases, there is an increased probability of emitting radiation with higher frequencies, corresponding to higher-energy quanta. At any temperature, however, it is simply more probable for an object to lose energy by emitting a large number of lower-energy quanta than a single very high-energy quantum that corresponds to ultraviolet radiation. The result is a maximum in the plot of intensity of emitted radiation versus wavelength, as shown in Figure 1.3.2, and a shift in the position of the maximum to lower wavelength (higher frequency) with increasing temperature.

At the time he proposed his radical hypothesis, Planck could not explain *why* energies should be quantized. Initially, his hypothesis explained only one set of experimental data—blackbody radiation. If quantization were observed for a large number of different phenomena, then quantization would become a law. In time, a theory might be developed to explain that law. As things turned out, Planck's hypothesis was the seed from which modern physics grew.

The Photoelectric Effect

Only five years after he proposed it, Planck's quantization hypothesis was used to explain a second phenomenon that conflicted with the accepted laws of classical physics. When certain metals are exposed to light, electrons are ejected from their surface (Figure 1.3.3). Classical physics predicted that the number of electrons emitted and their kinetic energy should depend on only the intensity of the light, not its frequency. In fact, however, each metal was found to have a characteristic threshold frequency of light; below that frequency, no electrons are emitted regardless of the light's intensity. Above the threshold frequency, the number of electrons emitted was found to be proportional to the intensity of the light, and their kinetic energy was proportional to the frequency. This phenomenon was called the photoelectric effect (A phenomenon in which electrons are ejected from the surface of a metal that has been exposed to light).

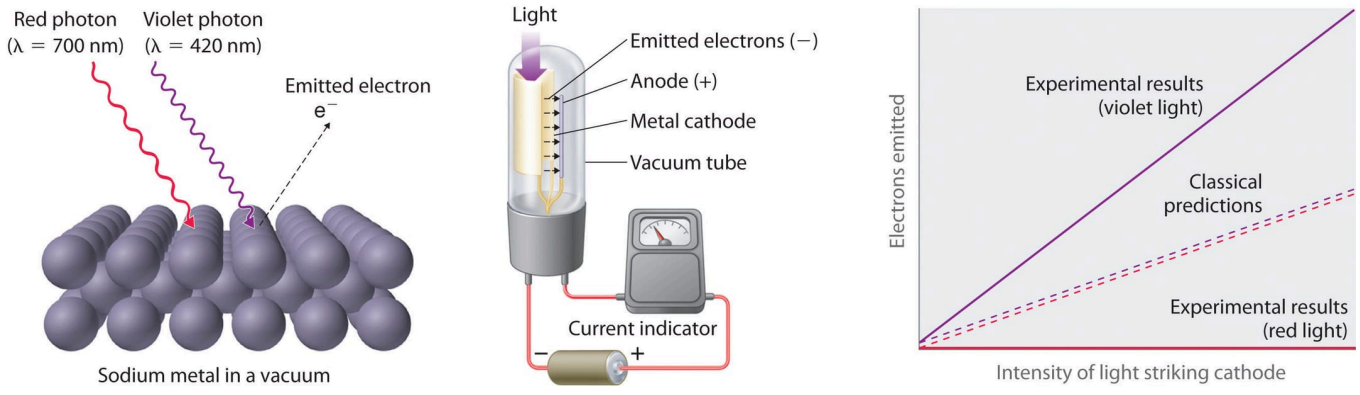


Figure 1.3.3: The Photoelectric Effect *(a) Irradiating a metal surface with photons of sufficiently high energy causes electrons to be ejected from the metal. (b) A photocell that uses the photoelectric effect, similar to those found in automatic door openers. When light strikes the metal cathode, electrons are emitted and attracted to the anode, resulting in a flow of electrical current. If the incoming light is interrupted by, for example, a passing person, the current drops to zero. (c) In contrast to predictions using classical physics, no electrons are emitted when photons of light with energy less than E_0, such as red light, strike the cathode. The energy of violet light is above the threshold frequency, so the number of emitted photons is proportional to the light's intensity.*

Albert Einstein (1879–1955; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1921) quickly realized that Planck's hypothesis about the quantization of radiant energy could also explain the photoelectric effect. The key feature of Einstein's hypothesis was the assumption that radiant

energy arrives at the metal surface in particles that we now call photons (a quantum of radiant energy, each of which possesses a particular energy energy E given by Equation 8.3.1 Einstein postulated that each metal has a particular electrostatic attraction for its electrons that must be overcome before an electron can be emitted from its surface ($E_o = h\nu_o$). If photons of light with energy less than E_o strike a metal surface, no single photon has enough energy to eject an electron, so no electrons are emitted regardless of the intensity of the light. If a photon with energy greater than E_o strikes the metal, then part of its energy is used to overcome the forces that hold the electron to the metal surface, and the excess energy appears as the kinetic energy of the ejected electron:

$$kinetic\ energy\ of\ ejected\ electron = E - E_o = hu - hu_o = h\,(u - u_o) \tag{1.3.2}$$

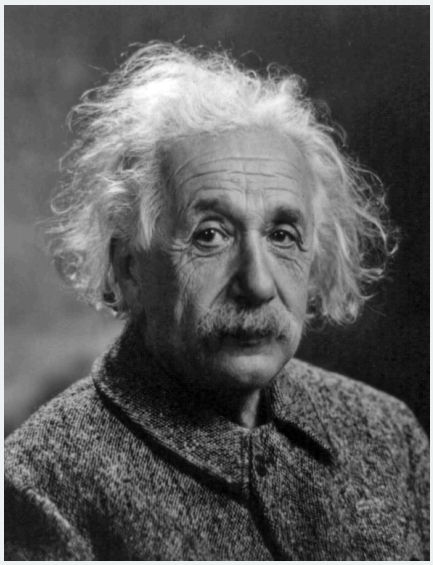
When a metal is struck by light with energy above the threshold energy E_o, the *number* of emitted electrons is proportional to the *intensity* of the light beam, which corresponds to the number of photons per square centimeter, but the *kinetic energy* of the emitted electrons is proportional to the *frequency* of the light. Thus Einstein showed that the energy of the emitted electrons depended on the frequency of the light, contrary to the prediction of classical physics.



Figure 1.3.4: A Beam of Red Light Emitted by a Helium Neon laser reads a bar code. Originally Helium neon lasers, which emit red light at a wavelength of 632.8 nm, were used to read bar codes. Today, smaller, inexpensive diode lasers are used.

Albert Einstein (1879–1955)

In 1900, Einstein was working in the Swiss patent office in Bern. He was born in Germany and throughout his childhood his parents and teachers had worried that he might be developmentally disabled. The patent office job was a low-level civil service position that was not very demanding, but it did allow Einstein to spend a great deal of time reading and thinking about physics.



In 1905, his "miracle year" he published four papers that revolutionized physics. One was on the special theory of relativity, a second on the equivalence of mass and energy, a third on Brownian motion, and the fourth on the photoelectric effect, for which he received the Nobel Prize in 1921, the theory of relativity and energy-matter equivalence being still controversial at the time

Planck's and Einstein's postulate that energy is quantized is in many ways similar to Dalton's description of atoms. Both theories

are based on the existence of simple building blocks, atoms in one case and quanta of energy in the other. The work of Planck and Einstein thus suggested a connection between the quantized nature of energy and the properties of individual atoms.

Example 1.3.1

A ruby laser, a device that produces light in a narrow range of wavelengths emits red light at a wavelength of 694.3 nm (Figure 1.3.4). What is the energy in joules of a single photon?

Given: wavelength

Asked for: energy of single photon.

Strategy:

A. Use Equation 6.1.2 and Equation 8.3.1 to calculate the energy in joules.

Solution:

The energy of a single photon is given by $E = h\nu = hc/\lambda$.

Exercise 1.3.1

An x-ray generator, such as those used in hospitals, emits radiation with a wavelength of 1.544 Å.

a. What is the energy in joules of a single photon?
b. How many times more energetic is a single x-ray photon of this wavelength than a photon emitted by a ruby laser?

Answer

a. $1.287 \times 10^{-15}\ J/photon$
b. 4497 times

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Photoelectric Effect: https://youtu.be/mxBMxJLauQk

Summary

- The fundamental building blocks of energy are quanta and of matter are atoms.

The properties of **blackbody radiation**, the radiation emitted by hot objects, could not be explained with classical physics. Max Planck postulated that energy was quantized and could be emitted or absorbed only in integral multiples of a small unit of energy, known as a **quantum**. The energy of a quantum is proportional to the frequency of the radiation; the proportionality constant h is a fundamental constant (Planck's constant). Albert Einstein used Planck's concept of the quantization of energy to explain the **photoelectric effect**, the ejection of electrons from certain metals when exposed to light. Einstein postulated the existence of what today we call **photons**, particles of light with a particular energy, $E = h\nu$. Both energy and matter have fundamental building blocks: quanta and atoms, respectively.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 1.3: Quantum Theory is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.3: Quantum Theory is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.4: Atomic Spectra

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between atomic spectra and the electronic structure of atoms.

The photoelectric effect provided indisputable evidence for the existence of the photon and thus the particle-like behavior of electromagnetic radiation. The concept of the photon, however, emerged from experimentation with *thermal radiation*, electromagnetic radiation emitted as the result of a source's temperature, which produces a continuous spectrum of energies. More direct evidence was needed to verify the quantized nature of electromagnetic radiation. In this section, we describe how experimentation with visible light provided this evidence.

Line Spectra

Although objects at high temperature emit a continuous spectrum of electromagnetic radiation, a different kind of spectrum is observed when pure samples of individual elements are heated. For example, when a high-voltage electrical discharge is passed through a sample of hydrogen gas at low pressure, the resulting individual isolated hydrogen atoms caused by the dissociation of H_2 emit a red light. Unlike blackbody radiation, the color of the light emitted by the hydrogen atoms does not depend greatly on the temperature of the gas in the tube. When the emitted light is passed through a prism, only a few narrow lines, called a line spectrum, which is a spectrum in which light of only a certain wavelength is emitted or absorbed, rather than a continuous range of wavelengths (Figure 1.4.1), rather than a continuous range of colors. The light emitted by hydrogen atoms is red because, of its four characteristic lines, the most intense line in its spectrum is in the red portion of the visible spectrum, at 656 nm. With sodium, however, we observe a yellow color because the most intense lines in its spectrum are in the yellow portion of the spectrum, at about 589 nm.



Figure 1.4.1: The Emission of Light by Hydrogen Atoms. (a) A sample of excited hydrogen atoms emits a characteristic red light. (b) When the light emitted by a sample of excited hydrogen atoms is split into its component wavelengths by a prism, four characteristic violet, blue, green, and red emission lines can be observed, the most intense of which is at 656 nm.

Such *emission spectra* were observed for many other elements in the late 19th century, which presented a major challenge because classical physics was unable to explain them. Part of the explanation is provided by the observation of only a few values of λ (or ν) in the line spectrum meant that only a few values of *E* were possible. Thus *the energy levels of a hydrogen atom had to be quantized*; in other words, only states that had certain values of energy were possible, or *allowed*. If a hydrogen atom could have *any* value of energy, then a continuous spectrum would have been observed, similar to blackbody radiation.

In 1885, a Swiss mathematics teacher, Johann Balmer (1825–1898), showed that the frequencies of the lines observed in the visible region of the spectrum of hydrogen fit a simple equation that can be expressed as follows:

$$u = constant\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \tag{1.4.1}$$

where *n* = 3, 4, 5, 6. As a result, these lines are known as the *Balmer series*. The Swedish physicist Johannes Rydberg (1854–1919) subsequently restated and expanded Balmer's result in the *Rydberg equation*:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \Re\left(\frac{1}{n_1^2} - \frac{1}{n_2^2}\right) \tag{1.4.2}$$

where n_1 and n_2 are positive integers, $n_2 > n_1$, and $\Re$ the *Rydberg constant*, has a value of 1.09737 × 10^7 m^{-1}.

Johann Balmer (1825–1898)

A mathematics teacher at a secondary school for girls in Switzerland, Balmer was 60 years old when he wrote the paper on the spectral lines of hydrogen that made him famous.



Balmer published only one other paper on the topic, which appeared when he was 72 years old.

Like Balmer's equation, Rydberg's simple equation described the wavelengths of the visible lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen (with n_1 = 2, n_2 = 3, 4, 5,...). More important, Rydberg's equation also described the wavelengths of other series of lines that would be observed in the emission spectrum of hydrogen: one in the ultraviolet (n_1 = 1, n_2 = 2, 3, 4,...) and one in the infrared (n_1 = 3, n_2 = 4, 5, 6). Unfortunately, scientists had not yet developed any theoretical justification for an equation of this form.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Bohr Atom: https://youtu.be/GuFQEOzFOgA

Summary

There is an intimate connection between the atomic structure of an atom and its spectral characteristics. Most light is polychromatic and contains light of many wavelengths. Light that has only a single wavelength is monochromatic and is produced by devices called lasers, which use transitions between two atomic energy levels to produce light in a very narrow range of wavelengths. Atoms can also absorb light of certain energies, resulting in a transition from the ground state or a lower-energy excited state to a higher-energy excited state. This produces an **absorption spectrum**, which has dark lines in the same position as the bright lines in the **emission spectrum** of an element.

Atoms of individual elements emit light at only specific wavelengths, producing a **line spectrum** rather than the continuous spectrum of all wavelengths produced by a hot object. Niels Bohr explained the line spectrum of the hydrogen atom by assuming that the electron moved in circular orbits and that orbits with only certain radii were allowed. Lines in the spectrum were due to transitions in which an electron moved from a higher-energy orbit with a larger radius to a lower-energy orbit with smaller radius. The orbit closest to the nucleus represented the **ground state** of the atom and was most stable; orbits farther away were higher-energy **excited states**. Transitions from an excited state to a lower-energy state resulted in the emission of light with only a limited number of wavelengths. Bohr's model could not, however, explain the spectra of atoms heavier than hydrogen.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 1.4: Atomic Spectra is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.2: Atomic Spectra is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.5: The Bohr Atom

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between atomic spectra and the electronic structure of atoms.

In 1913, a Danish physicist, Niels Bohr (1885–1962; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1922), proposed a theoretical model for the hydrogen atom that explained its emission spectrum. Bohr's model required only one assumption: *The electron moves around the nucleus in circular orbits that can have only certain allowed radii.* Rutherford's earlier model of the atom had also assumed that electrons moved in circular orbits around the nucleus and that the atom was held together by the electrostatic attraction between the positively charged nucleus and the negatively charged electron. Although we now know that the assumption of circular orbits was incorrect, Bohr's insight was to propose that *the electron could occupy only certain regions of space*.

Using classical physics, Niels Bohr showed that the energy of an electron in a particular orbit is given by

$$E_n = \frac{-\Re hc}{n^2} \tag{1.5.1}$$

where $\Re$ is the Rydberg constant, h is Planck's constant, c is the speed of light, and n is a positive integer corresponding to the number assigned to the orbit, with $n = 1$ corresponding to the orbit closest to the nucleus. In this model $n = \infty$ corresponds to the level where the energy holding the electron and the nucleus together is zero. In that level, the electron is unbound from the nucleus and the atom has been separated into a negatively charged (the electron) and a positively charged (the nucleus) ion. In this state the radius of the orbit is also infinite. The atom has been ionized.

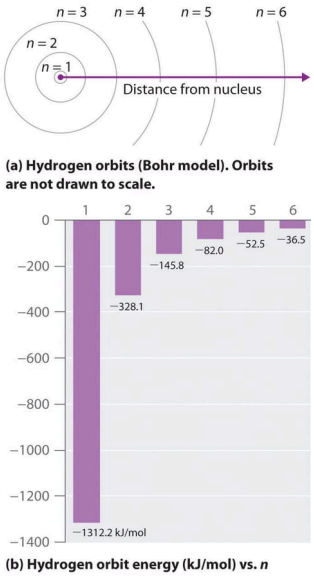
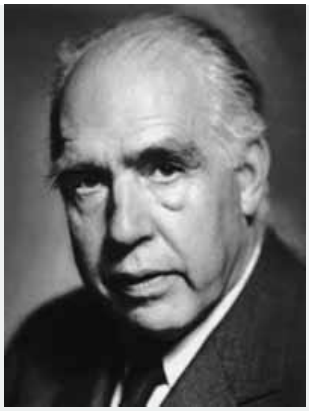


Figure 1.5.2 The Bohr Model of the Hydrogen Atom (a) The distance of the orbit from the nucleus increases with increasing *n*. (b) The energy of the orbit becomes increasingly less negative with increasing *n*.

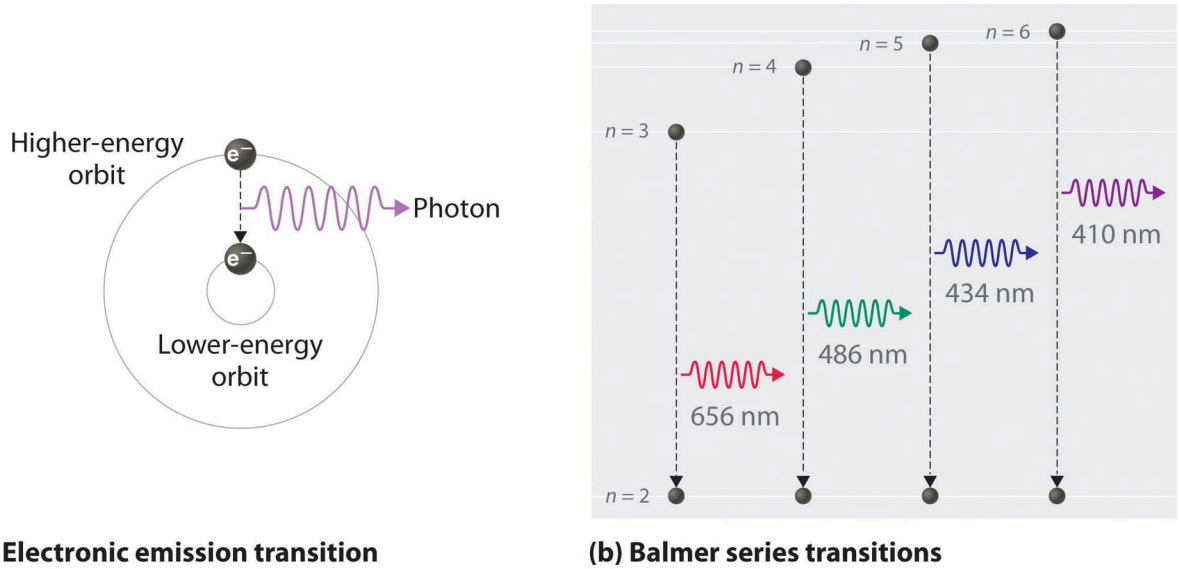
Niels Bohr (1885–1962)

During the Nazi occupation of Denmark in World War II, Bohr escaped to the United States, where he became associated with the Atomic Energy Project.



In his final years, he devoted himself to the peaceful application of atomic physics and to resolving political problems arising from the development of atomic weapons.

As n decreases, the energy holding the electron and the nucleus together becomes increasingly negative, the radius of the orbit shrinks and more energy is needed to ionize the atom. The orbit with n = 1 is the lowest lying and most tightly bound. The negative sign in Equation 1.5.3 indicates that the electron-nucleus pair is more tightly bound when they are near each other than when they are far apart. Because a hydrogen atom with its one electron in this orbit has the lowest possible energy, this is the ground state (the most stable arrangement of electrons for an element or a compound), the most stable arrangement for a hydrogen atom. As n increases, the radius of the orbit increases; the electron is farther from the proton, which results in a less stable arrangement with higher potential energy (Figure 2.10). A hydrogen atom with an electron in an orbit with n > 1 is therefore in an excited state. Any arrangement of electrons that is higher in energy than the ground state.: its energy is higher than the energy of the ground state. When an atom in an excited state undergoes a transition to the ground state in a process called decay, it loses energy by emitting a photon whose energy corresponds to the difference in energy between the two states (Figure 1.5.1).



(a) Electronic emission transition **(b) Balmer series transitions**

Figure 1.5.3: The Emission of Light by a Hydrogen Atom in an Excited State. (a) Light is emitted when the electron undergoes a transition from an orbit with a higher value of *n* (at a higher energy) to an orbit with a lower value of *n* (at lower energy). (b) The Balmer series of emission lines is due to transitions from orbits with *n* ≥ 3 to the orbit with *n* = 2. The differences in energy between these levels corresponds to light in the visible portion of the electromagnetic spectrum.

So the difference in energy (Δ*E*) between any two orbits or energy levels is given by $\Delta E = E_{n_1} - E_{n_2}$ where n_1 is the final orbit and n_2 the initial orbit. Substituting from Bohr's equation (Equation 1.5.3) for each energy value gives

$$\Delta E = E_{final} - E_{initial} = -\frac{\Re hc}{n_2^2} - \left(-\frac{\Re hc}{n_1^2}\right) = -\Re hc\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{1.5.2}$$

If $n_2 > n_1$, the transition is from a higher energy state (larger-radius orbit) to a lower energy state (smaller-radius orbit), as shown by the dashed arrow in part (a) in Figure 1.5.3. Substituting hc/λ for ΔE gives

$$\Delta E = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = -\Re hc\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{1.5.3}$$

Canceling hc on both sides gives

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = -\Re\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{1.5.4}$$

Except for the negative sign, this is the same equation that Rydberg obtained experimentally. The negative sign in Equation 1.5.5 and Equation 1.5.6 indicates that energy is released as the electron moves from orbit n_2 to orbit n_1 because orbit n_2 is at a higher energy than orbit n_1. Bohr calculated the value of $\Re$ from fundamental constants such as the charge and mass of the electron and Planck's constant and obtained a value of 1.0974 × 10^7 m^{-1}, the same number Rydberg had obtained by analyzing the emission spectra.

We can now understand the physical basis for the Balmer series of lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen (part (b) in Figure 2.9). As shown in part (b) in Figure 1.5.3, the lines in this series correspond to transitions from higher-energy orbits (n > 2) to the second orbit (n = 2). Thus the hydrogen atoms in the sample have absorbed energy from the electrical discharge and decayed from a higher-energy excited state (n > 2) to a lower-energy state (n = 2) by emitting a photon of electromagnetic radiation whose energy corresponds exactly to the difference in energy between the two states (part (a) in Figure 1.5.3). The n = 3 to n = 2 transition gives rise to the line at 656 nm (red), the n = 4 to n = 2 transition to the line at 486 nm (green), the n = 5 to n = 2 transition to the line at 434 nm (blue), and the n = 6 to n = 2 transition to the line at 410 nm (violet). Because a sample of hydrogen contains a large number of atoms, the intensity of the various lines in a line spectrum depends on the number of atoms in each excited state. At the temperature in the gas discharge tube, more atoms are in the n = 3 than the n ≥ 4 levels. Consequently, the n = 3 to n = 2 transition is the most intense line, producing the characteristic red color of a hydrogen discharge (part (a) in Figure 1.5.1). Other families of lines are produced by transitions from excited states with n > 1 to the orbit with n = 1 or to orbits with n ≥ 3. These transitions are shown schematically in Figure 1.5.4

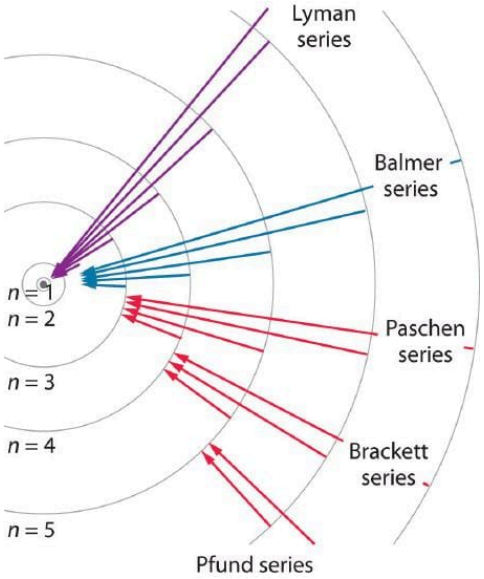


Figure 1.5.4: Electron Transitions Responsible for the Various Series of Lines Observed in the Emission Spectrum of Hydrogen. The Lyman series of lines is due to transitions from higher-energy orbits to the lowest-energy orbit (n = 1); these transitions release a great deal of energy, corresponding to radiation in the ultraviolet portion of the electromagnetic spectrum. The Paschen, Brackett, and Pfund series of lines are due to transitions from higher-energy orbits to orbits with n = 3, 4, and 5, respectively; these transitions release substantially less energy, corresponding to infrared radiation. (Orbits are not drawn to scale.)

In contemporary applications, electron transitions are used in timekeeping that needs to be exact. Telecommunications systems, such as cell phones, depend on timing signals that are accurate to within a millionth of a second per day, as are the devices that control the US power grid. Global positioning system (GPS) signals must be accurate to within a billionth of a second per day,

which is equivalent to gaining or losing no more than one second in 1,400,000 years. Quantifying time requires finding an event with an interval that repeats on a regular basis. To achieve the accuracy required for modern purposes, physicists have turned to the atom. The current standard used to calibrate clocks is the cesium atom. Supercooled cesium atoms are placed in a vacuum chamber and bombarded with microwaves whose frequencies are carefully controlled. When the frequency is exactly right, the atoms absorb enough energy to undergo an electronic transition to a higher-energy state. Decay to a lower-energy state emits radiation. The microwave frequency is continually adjusted, serving as the clock's pendulum. In 1967, the second was defined as the duration of 9,192,631,770 oscillations of the resonant frequency of a cesium atom, called the *cesium clock*. Research is currently under way to develop the next generation of atomic clocks that promise to be even more accurate. Such devices would allow scientists to monitor vanishingly faint electromagnetic signals produced by nerve pathways in the brain and geologists to measure variations in gravitational fields, which cause fluctuations in time, that would aid in the discovery of oil or minerals.

Example 1.5.1: The Lyman Series

The so-called Lyman series of lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen corresponds to transitions from various excited states to the n = 1 orbit. Calculate the wavelength of the lowest-energy line in the Lyman series to three significant figures. In what region of the electromagnetic spectrum does it occur?

Given: lowest-energy orbit in the Lyman series

Asked for: wavelength of the lowest-energy Lyman line and corresponding region of the spectrum

Strategy:

A. Substitute the appropriate values into Equation 1.5.2 (the Rydberg equation) and solve for λ.
B. Use Figure 1.5.1 to locate the region of the electromagnetic spectrum corresponding to the calculated wavelength.

Solution:

We can use the Rydberg equation to calculate the wavelength:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = -\Re\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{1.5.5}$$

A For the Lyman series, n_1 = 1. The lowest-energy line is due to a transition from the n = 2 to n = 1 orbit because they are the closest in energy.

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = -\Re\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) = 1.097 \times m^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{1} - \frac{1}{4}\right) = 8.228 \times 10^6\ m^{-1} \tag{1.5.6}$$

It turns out that spectroscopists (the people who study spectroscopy) use cm^{-1} rather than m^{-1} as a common unit. Wavelength is inversely proportional to energy but frequency is directly proportional as shown by Planck's formula, E=hu.

Spectroscopists often talk about energy and frequency as equivalent. The cm^{-1} unit is particularly convenient. The infrared range is roughly 200 - 5,000 cm^{-1}, the visible from 11,000 to 25.000 cm^{-1} and the UV between 25,000 and 100,000 cm^{-1}. The units of cm^{-1} are called wavenumbers, although people often verbalize it as inverse centimeters. We can convert the answer in part A to cm^{-1}.

$$\varpi = \frac{1}{\lambda} = 8.228 \times 10^6\ \cancel{m}^{-1}\left(\frac{\cancel{m}}{100\ cm}\right) = 82,280\ cm^{-1} \tag{1.5.7}$$

and

$$\lambda = 1.215 \times 10^{-7}\ m = 122\ nm \tag{1.5.8}$$

This emission line is called Lyman alpha. It is the strongest atomic emission line from the sun and drives the chemistry of the upper atmosphere of all the planets producing ions by stripping electrons from atoms and molecules. It is completely absorbed by oxygen in the upper stratosphere, dissociating O_2 molecules to O atoms which react with other O_2 molecules to form stratospheric ozone

B This wavelength is in the ultraviolet region of the spectrum.

Exercise 1.5.1: The Pfund Series

The Pfund series of lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen corresponds to transitions from higher excited states to the $n = 5$ orbit. Calculate the wavelength of the *second* line in the Pfund series to three significant figures. In which region of the spectrum does it lie?

Answer: 4.65×10^3 nm; infrared

Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom gave an exact explanation for its observed emission spectrum. The following are his key contributions to our understanding of atomic structure:

- Electrons can occupy only certain regions of space, called *orbits*.
- Orbits closer to the nucleus are lower in energy.
- Electrons can move from one orbit to another by absorbing or emitting energy, giving rise to characteristic spectra.

Unfortunately, Bohr could not explain *why* the electron should be restricted to particular orbits. Also, despite a great deal of tinkering, such as assuming that orbits could be ellipses rather than circles, his model could not quantitatively explain the emission spectra of any element other than hydrogen (Figure 1.5.5). In fact, Bohr's model worked only for species that contained just one electron: H, He^+, Li^{2+}, and so forth. Scientists needed a fundamental change in their way of thinking about the electronic structure of atoms to advance beyond the Bohr model.

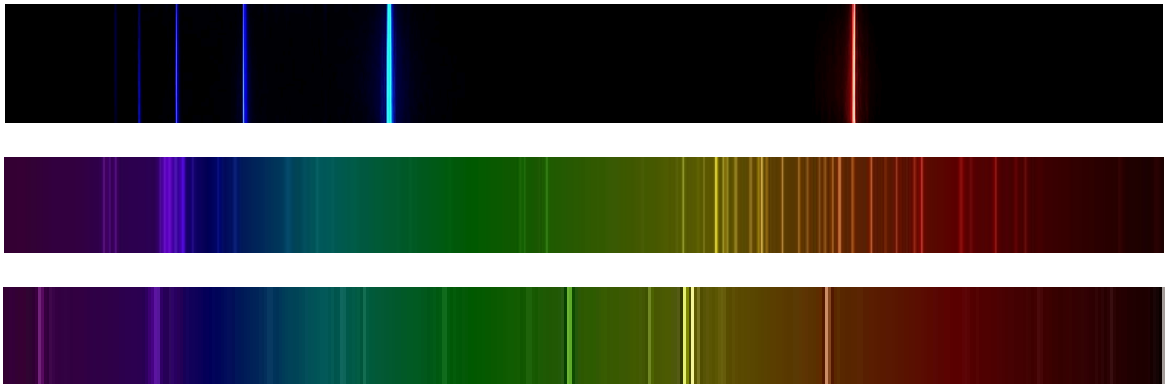


Figure 1.5.5: The Emission Spectra of Elements Compared with Hydrogen. These images show (a) hydrogen gas, which is atomized to hydrogen atoms in the discharge tube; (b) neon; and (c) mercury. The strongest lines in the hydrogen spectrum are in the far UV Lyman series starting at 124 nm and below. The strongest lines in the mercury spectrum are at 181 and 254 nm, also in the UV. These are not shown.

Thus far we have explicitly considered only the emission of light by atoms in excited states, which produces an emission spectrum (a spectrum produced by the emission of light by atoms in excited states). The converse, absorption of light by ground-state atoms to produce an excited state, can also occur, producing an absorption spectrum (a spectrum produced by the absorption of light by ground-state atoms). Because each element has characteristic emission and absorption spectra, scientists can use such spectra to analyze the composition of matter.

When an atom emits light, it decays to a lower energy state; when an atom absorbs light, it is excited to a higher energy state.

The Energy States of the Hydrogen Atom

If white light is passed through a sample of hydrogen, hydrogen atoms absorb energy as an electron is excited to higher energy levels (orbits with $n \geq 2$). If the light that emerges is passed through a prism, it forms a continuous spectrum with *black* lines (corresponding to no light passing through the sample) at 656, 468, 434, and 410 nm. These wavelengths correspond to the $n = 2$ to $n = 3$, $n = 2$ to $n = 4$, $n = 2$ to $n = 5$, and $n = 2$ to $n = 6$ transitions. Any given element therefore has both a characteristic emission spectrum and a characteristic absorption spectrum, which are essentially complementary images.

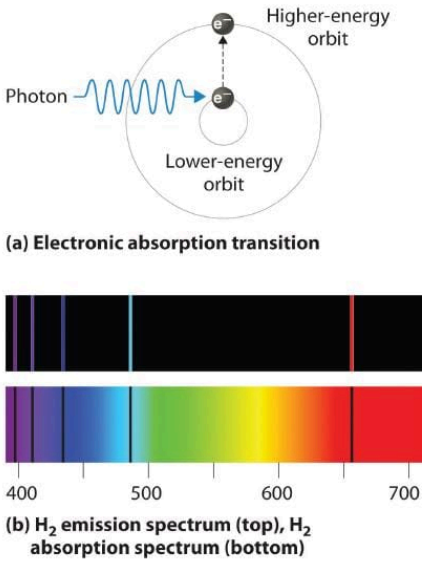


Figure 1.5.6: Absorption and Emission Spectra. Absorption of light by a hydrogen atom. (a) When a hydrogen atom absorbs a photon of light, an electron is excited to an orbit that has a higher energy and larger value of n. (b) Images of the emission and absorption spectra of hydrogen are shown here.

Emission and absorption spectra form the basis of *spectroscopy*, which uses spectra to provide information about the structure and the composition of a substance or an object. In particular, astronomers use emission and absorption spectra to determine the composition of stars and interstellar matter. As an example, consider the spectrum of sunlight shown in Figure 1.5.7 Because the sun is very hot, the light it emits is in the form of a continuous emission spectrum. Superimposed on it, however, is a series of dark lines due primarily to the absorption of specific frequencies of light by cooler atoms in the outer atmosphere of the sun. By comparing these lines with the spectra of elements measured on Earth, we now know that the sun contains large amounts of hydrogen, iron, and carbon, along with smaller amounts of other elements. During the solar eclipse of 1868, the French astronomer Pierre Janssen (1824–1907) observed a set of lines that did not match those of any known element. He suggested that they were due to the presence of a new element, which he named *helium*, from the Greek *helios*, meaning “sun.” Helium was finally discovered in uranium ores on Earth in 1895. Alpha particles are helium nuclei. Alpha particles emitted by the radioactive uranium, pick up electrons from the rocks to form helium atoms.

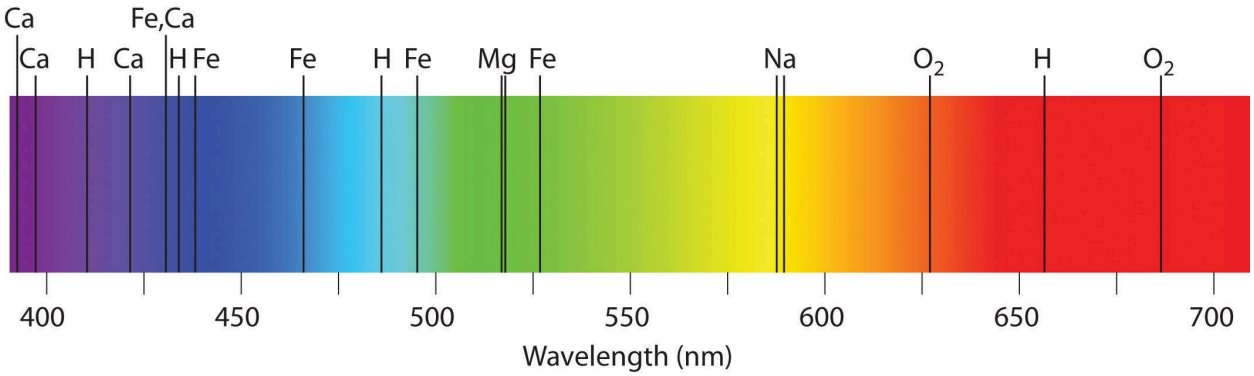


Figure 1.5.7: The Visible Spectrum of Sunlight. The characteristic dark lines are mostly due to the absorption of light by elements that are present in the cooler outer part of the sun's atmosphere; specific elements are indicated by the labels. The lines at 628 and 687 nm, however, are due to the absorption of light by oxygen molecules in Earth's atmosphere.

The familiar red color of "neon" signs used in advertising is due to the emission spectrum of neon shown in part (b) in Figure 1.5.5. Similarly, the blue and yellow colors of certain street lights are caused, respectively, by mercury and sodium discharges. In all these cases, an electrical discharge excites neutral atoms to a higher energy state, and light is emitted when the atoms decay to the ground state. In the case of mercury, most of the emission lines are below 450 nm, which produces a blue light (part (c) in Figure 1.5.5). In the case of sodium, the most intense emission lines are at 589 nm, which produces an intense yellow light.

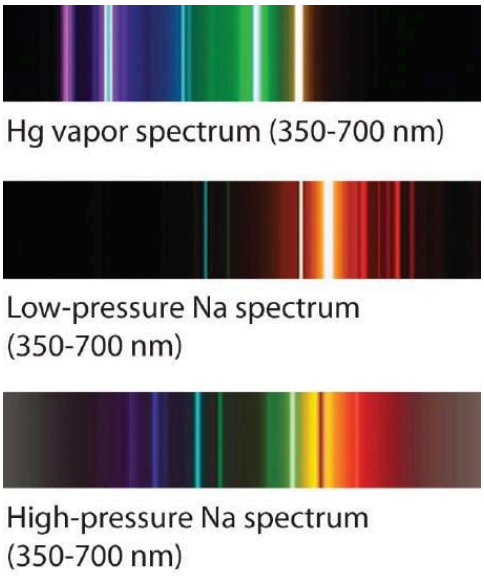


Figure 1.5.8: The emission spectra of sodium and mercury. Sodium and mercury spectra. Many street lights use bulbs that contain sodium or mercury vapor. Due to the very different emission spectra of these elements, they emit light of different colors. The lines in the sodium lamp are broadened by collisions. The dark line in the center of the high pressure sodium lamp where the low pressure lamp is strongest is cause by absorption of light in the cooler outer part of the lamp.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Bohr Atom: https://youtu.be/GuFQEOzFOgA

The Chemistry of Fireworks

The colors of fireworks are also due to atomic emission spectra. As shown in part (a) in Figure 1.5.9, a typical shell used in a fireworks display contains gunpowder to propel the shell into the air and a fuse to initiate a variety of reactions that produce heat and small explosions. Thermal energy excites the atoms to higher energy states; as they decay to lower energy states, the atoms emit light that gives the familiar colors.



Figure 1.5.9 :The Chemistry of Fireworks *(a) In the "multibreak" shell used for fireworks, the chambers contain mixtures of fuels and oxidizers plus compounds for special effects ("stars") connected by time-delay fuses so that the chambers explode in stages. (b) The finale of a fireworks display usually consists of many shells fired simultaneously to give a dazzling multicolor display. The labels indicate the substances that are responsible for the colors of some of the fireworks shown.*

When oxidant/reductant mixtures listed in Table 1.5.1 are ignited, a flash of white or yellow light is produced along with a loud bang. Achieving the colors shown in part (b) in Figure 1.5.9 requires adding a small amount of a substance that has an emission spectrum in the desired portion of the visible spectrum. For example, sodium is used for yellow because of its 589 nm emission lines. The intense yellow color of sodium would mask most other colors, so potassium and ammonium salts, rather than sodium salts, are usually used as oxidants to produce other colors, which explains the preponderance of such salts in Table 1.5.1 . Strontium salts, which are also used in highway flares, emit red light, whereas barium gives a green color. Blue is one of the most difficult colors to achieve. Copper(II) salts emit a pale blue light, but copper is dangerous to use because it forms highly unstable explosive compounds with anions such as chlorate. As you might guess, preparing fireworks with the desired properties is a complex, challenging, and potentially hazardous process. If you have the time here is a NOVA program about how fireworks are made.

*Table 1.5.1: Common Chemicals Used in the Manufacture of Fireworks**

Oxidizers	Fuels (reductants)	Special effects
ammonium perchlorate	aluminum	*blue flame*: copper carbonate, copper sulfate, or copper oxide
barium chlorate	antimony sulfide	*red flame*: strontium nitrate or strontium carbonate
barium nitrate	charcoal	*white flame*: magnesium or aluminum
potassium chlorate	magnesium	*yellow flame*: sodium oxalate or cryolite (Na_3AlF_6)
potassium nitrate	sulfur	*green flame*: barium nitrate or barium chlorate
potassium perchlorate	titanium	*white smoke*: potassium nitrate plus sulfur
strontium nitrate		*colored smoke*: potassium chlorate and sulfur, plus organic dye
***Almost any combination of an oxidizer and a fuel may be used along with the compounds needed to produce a desired special effect.**		

Oxidizers	Fuels (reductants)	Special effects
		whistling noise: potassium benzoate or sodium salicylate
		white sparks: aluminum, magnesium, or titanium
		gold sparks: iron fillings or charcoal
***Almost any combination of an oxidizer and a fuel may be used along with the compounds needed to produce a desired special effect.**		

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

There is an intimate connection between the atomic structure of an atom and its spectral characteristics. Atoms of individual elements emit light at only specific wavelengths, producing a **line spectrum** rather than the continuous spectrum of all wavelengths produced by a hot object. Niels Bohr explained the line spectrum of the hydrogen atom by assuming that the electron moved in circular orbits and that orbits with only certain radii were allowed. Lines in the spectrum were due to transitions in which an electron moved from a higher-energy orbit with a larger radius to a lower-energy orbit with smaller radius. The orbit closest to the nucleus represented the **ground state** of the atom and was most stable; orbits farther away were higher-energy **excited states**. Transitions from an excited state to a lower-energy state resulted in the emission of light with only a limited number of wavelengths. Bohr's model could not, however, explain the spectra of atoms heavier than hydrogen.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 1.5: The Bohr Atom is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.4: The Bohr Atom is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.6: Two Ideas Leading to a New Quantum Mechanics

Learning Objectives

- To understand the wave–particle duality of matter.

Einstein's photons of light were individual packets of energy having many of the characteristics of particles. Recall that the collision of an electron (a particle) with a sufficiently energetic photon can eject a *photoelectron* from the surface of a metal. Any excess energy is transferred to the electron and is converted to the kinetic energy of the ejected electron. Einstein's hypothesis that energy is concentrated in localized bundles, however, was in sharp contrast to the classical notion that energy is spread out uniformly in a wave. We now describe Einstein's theory of the relationship between energy and mass, a theory that others built on to develop our current model of the atom.

The Wave Character of Matter

Einstein initially assumed that photons had zero mass, which made them a peculiar sort of particle indeed. In 1905, however, he published his special theory of relativity, which related energy and mass according to the following equation:

$$E = h\nu = h\frac{c}{\lambda} = mc^2 \tag{1.6.1}$$

According to this theory, a photon of wavelength λ and frequency ν has a nonzero mass, which is given as follows:

$$m = \frac{E}{c^2} = \frac{h\nu}{c^2} = \frac{h}{\lambda c} \tag{1.6.2}$$

That is, light, which had always been regarded as a wave, also has properties typical of particles, a condition known as wave–particle duality (a principle that matter and energy have properties typical of both waves and particles). Depending on conditions, light could be viewed as either a wave or a particle.

In 1922, the American physicist Arthur Compton (1892–1962) reported the results of experiments involving the collision of x-rays and electrons that supported the particle nature of light. At about the same time, a young French physics student, Louis de Broglie (1892–1972), began to wonder whether the converse was true: Could particles exhibit the properties of waves? In his PhD dissertation submitted to the Sorbonne in 1924, de Broglie proposed that a particle such as an electron could be described by a wave whose wavelength is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv} \tag{1.6.3}$$

where

- is Planck's constant,
- *m* is the mass of the particle, and
- *v* is the velocity of the particle.

This revolutionary idea was quickly confirmed by American physicists Clinton Davisson (1881–1958) and Lester Germer (1896–1971), who showed that beams of electrons, regarded as particles, were diffracted by a sodium chloride crystal in the same manner as x-rays, which were regarded as waves. It was proven experimentally that electrons do exhibit the properties of waves. For his work, de Broglie received the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1929.

If particles exhibit the properties of waves, why had no one observed them before? The answer lies in the numerator of de Broglie's equation, which is an extremely small number. As you will calculate in Example 1.6.1, Planck's constant (6.63×10^{-34} J•s) is so small that the wavelength of a particle with a large mass is too short (less than the diameter of an atomic nucleus) to be noticeable.

Example 1.6.1

Calculate the wavelength of a baseball, which has a mass of 149 g and a speed of 100 mi/h.

Given: mass and speed of object

Asked for: wavelength

Strategy:

A. Convert the speed of the baseball to the appropriate SI units: meters per second.
B. Substitute values into Equation 8.5.3 and solve for the wavelength.

Solution:

The wavelength of a particle is given by λ = *h*/*mv*. We know that *m* = 0.149 kg, so all we need to find is the speed of the baseball:

$$v = \left(\frac{100\ \cancel{mi}}{\cancel{h}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{h}}{60\ \cancel{min}}\right)\left(\frac{1.609\ \cancel{km}}{\cancel{mi}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ m}{\cancel{km}}\right)$$

B Recall that the joule is a derived unit, whose units are (kg•m^2)/s^2. Thus the wavelength of the baseball is

$$\lambda = \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J \cdot s}{(0.149\ kg)\,(44.69\ m \cdot s)} = \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \cancel{kg} \cdot m^{\cancel{2}} \cdot \cancel{s}^{\cancel{-2}} \cdot \cancel{s}}{\left(0.149\ \cancel{kg}\right)\left(44.69\ \cancel{m} \cdot \cancel{s^{-1}}\right)} = 9.95 \times 10^{-35}\ m \tag{1.6.4}$$

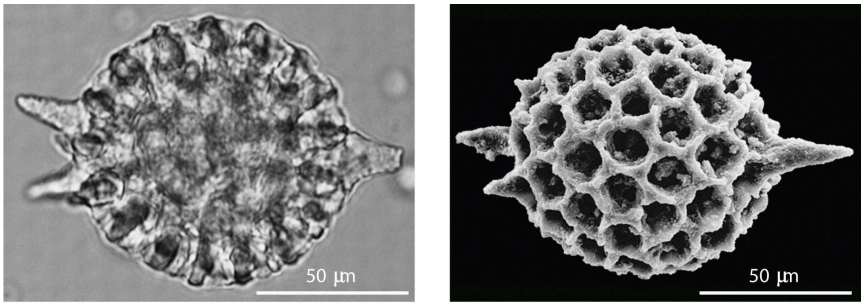
(You should verify that the units cancel to give the wavelength in meters.) Given that the diameter of the nucleus of an atom is approximately 10^{-14} m, the wavelength of the baseball is almost unimaginably small.

Exercise 1.6.1

Calculate the wavelength of a neutron that is moving at 3.00 × 10^3 m/s.

Answer: 1.32 Å, or 132 pm

As you calculated in Example 1.6.1, objects such as a baseball or a neutron have such short wavelengths that they are best regarded primarily as particles. In contrast, objects with very small masses (such as photons) have large wavelengths and can be viewed primarily as waves. Objects with intermediate masses, such as electrons, exhibit the properties of both particles and waves. Although we still usually think of electrons as particles, the wave nature of electrons is employed in an *electron microscope*, which has revealed most of what we know about the microscopic structure of living organisms and materials. Because the wavelength of an electron beam is much shorter than the wavelength of a beam of visible light, this instrument can resolve smaller details than a light microscope can (Figure 1.6.1).



(a) Radiolarian under light microscope **(b) Radiolarian under electron microscope**

Figure 1.6.1: A Comparison of Images Obtained Using a Light Microscope and an Electron Microscope**.** Because of their shorter wavelength, high-energy electrons have a higher resolving power than visible light. Consequently, an electron microscope (b) is able to resolve finer details than a light microscope (a). (Radiolaria, which are shown here, are unicellular planktonic organisms.)

An Important Wave Property: Phase

A wave is a disturbance that travels in space. The magnitude of the wave at any point in space and time varies sinusoidally. While the absolute value of the magnitude of one wave at any point is not very important, the **relative** displacement of two waves called the phase difference, is vitally important because it determines whether the waves reinforce or interfere with each other. Figure 1.6.2a, on the right shows an arbitrary phase difference between two wave. Figure 1.6.2b shows what happens when the two waves are 180 degrees out of phase. The green line is their sum. Figure 1.6.2c shows what happens when the two lines are in phase, exactly superimposed on each other. Again, the green line is the sum of the intensities.

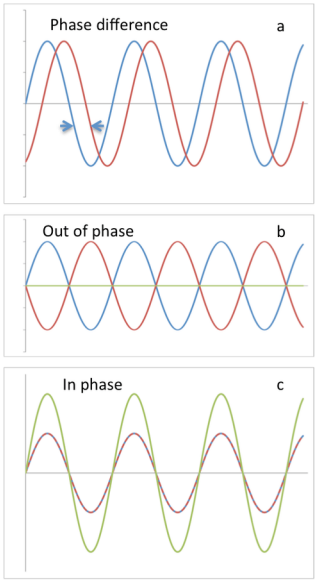


Figure 1.6.2: Phase. Two waves traveling together are displaced by a phase difference. If the phase difference is 0 then they lay on top of each other and reinforce. If the phase difference is 180 they completely cancel each other out.

Standing Waves

De Broglie also investigated why only certain orbits were allowed in Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom. He hypothesized that the electron behaves like a standing wave (a wave that does not travel in space). An example of a standing wave is the motion of a string of a violin or guitar. When the string is plucked, it vibrates at certain fixed frequencies because it is fastened at both ends (Figure 1.6.3). If the length of the string is *L*, then the lowest-energy vibration (the fundamental (the lowest-energy standing wave) has wavelength

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\lambda}{2} &= L \\ \lambda &= 2L \end{aligned} \tag{1.6.5}$$

Higher-energy vibrations are called overtones (the vibration of a standing wave that is higher in energy than the fundamental vibration) and are produced when the string is plucked more strongly; they have wavelengths given by

$$\lambda = \frac{2L}{n} \tag{1.6.6}$$

where *n* has any integral value. Thus the resonant vibrational energies of the string are quantized. When plucked, all other frequencies die out immediately. Only the resonant frequencies survive and are heard. By analogy we can think of the resonant frequencies as being quantized. Notice in Figure 1.6.3 that all overtones have one or more nodes (the points where the amplitude of a wave is zero), points where the string does not move. The amplitude of the wave at a node is zero.

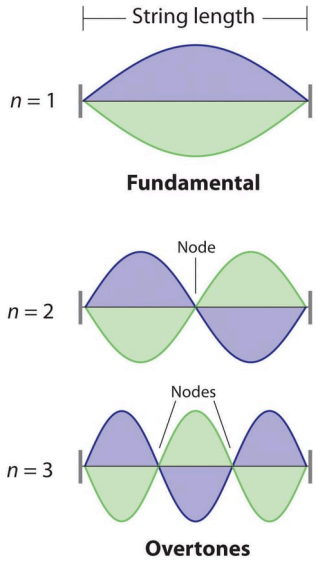


Figure 1.6.3 Standing Waves on a Vibrating String. The vibration with *n* = 1 is the fundamental and contains no nodes. Vibrations with higher values of *n* are called overtones; they contain *n* – 1 nodes.

Quantized vibrations and overtones containing nodes are not restricted to one-dimensional systems, such as strings. A two-dimensional surface, such as a drumhead, also has quantized vibrations. Similarly, when the ends of a string are joined to form a circle, the only allowed vibrations are those with wavelength

$$2\pi r = n\lambda \tag{1.6.7}$$

where *r* is the radius of the circle. De Broglie argued that Bohr's allowed orbits could be understood if the electron behaved like a *standing circular wave* (Figure 1.6.4). The standing wave could exist only if the circumference of the circle was an integral multiple of the wavelength such that the propagated waves were all in phase, thereby increasing the net amplitudes and causing *constructive interference*. Otherwise, the propagated waves would be out of phase, resulting in a net decrease in amplitude and causing *destructive interference*. The non resonant waves interfere with themselves! De Broglie's idea explained Bohr's allowed orbits and energy levels nicely: in the lowest energy level, corresponding to *n* = 1 in Equation 8.5.2, one complete wavelength would close the circle. Higher energy levels would have successively higher values of *n* with a corresponding number of nodes.

Standing waves are often observed on rivers, reservoirs, ponds, and lakes when seismic waves from an earthquake travel through the area. The waves are called *seismic seiches*, a term first used in 1955 when lake levels in England and Norway oscillated from side to side as a result of the Assam earthquake of 1950 in Tibet. They were first described in the Proceedings of the Royal Society in 1755 when they were seen in English harbors and ponds after a large earthquake in Lisbon, Portugal. Seismic seiches were also observed in many places in North America after the Alaska earthquake of March 28, 1964. Those occurring in western reservoirs lasted for two hours or longer, and amplitudes reached as high as nearly 6 ft along the Gulf Coast. The height of seiches is approximately proportional to the thickness of surface sediments; a deeper channel will produce a higher seiche.

Still, as all analogies, although the standing wave model helps us understand much about why Bohr's theory worked, it also, if pushed too far can mislead.

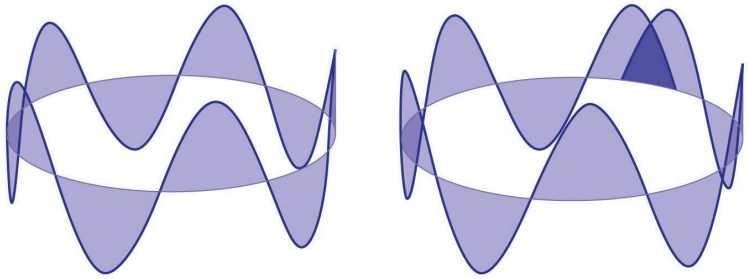


Figure 1.6.4 Standing Circular Wave and Destructive Interference.(a) In a standing circular wave with n = 5, the circumference of the circle corresponds to exactly five wavelengths, which results in constructive interference of the wave with itself when overlapping occurs. (b) If the circumference of the circle is not equal to an integral multiple of wavelengths, then the wave does not overlap exactly with itself, and the resulting destructive interference will result in cancellation of the wave. Consequently, a standing wave cannot exist under these conditions.

As you will see, some of de Broglie's ideas are retained in the modern theory of the electronic structure of the atom: the wave behavior of the electron and the presence of nodes that increase in number as the energy level increases. Unfortunately, his (and Bohr's) explanation also contains one major feature that we know to be incorrect: in the currently accepted model, the electron in a given orbit is *not* always at the same distance from the nucleus.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The de Broglie Equation: https://youtu.be/pz0zMHWtK7Q

The Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle

Because a wave is a disturbance that travels in space, it has no fixed position. One might therefore expect that it would also be hard to specify the exact position of a *particle* that exhibits wavelike behavior. A characteristic of light is that is can be bent or spread out by passing through a narrow slit as shown in the video below. You can literally see this by half closing your eyes and looking through your eye lashes. This reduces the brightness of what you are seeing and somewhat fuzzes out the image, but the light bends around your lashes to provide a complete image rather than a bunch of bars across the image. This is called diffraction.

This behavior of waves is captured in Maxwell's equations (1870 or so) for electromagnetic waves and was and is well understood. Heisenberg's uncertainty principle for light is, if you will, merely a conclusion about the nature of electromagnetic waves and nothing new. DeBroglie's idea of wave particle duality means that particles such as electrons which all exhibit wave like characteristics, will also undergo diffraction from slits whose size is of the order of the electron wavelength.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This situation was described mathematically by the German physicist Werner Heisenberg (1901–1976; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1932), who related the position of a particle to its momentum. Referring to the electron, Heisenberg stated that "at every moment the electron has only an inaccurate position and an inaccurate velocity, and between these two inaccuracies there is this uncertainty relation." Mathematically, the Heisenberg uncertainty principle is greater than or equal to Planck's constant *h* divided by 4π: states that the uncertainty in the position of a particle (Δ*x*) multiplied by the uncertainty in its momentum [Δ(*mv*)] is greater than or equal to Planck's constant divided by 4π:

$$(\Delta x)\,(\Delta\,[mv]) \geqslant \frac{h}{4\pi} \tag{1.6.8}$$

Because Planck's constant is a very small number, the Heisenberg uncertainty principle is important only for particles such as electrons that have very low masses. These are the same particles predicted by de Broglie's equation to have measurable wavelengths.

If the precise position *x* of a particle is known absolutely (Δ*x* = 0), then the uncertainty in its momentum must be infinite:

$$(\Delta\,[mv]) = \frac{h}{4\pi\,(\Delta x)} = \frac{h}{4\pi\,(0)} = \infty \tag{1.6.9}$$

Because the mass of the electron at rest (*m*) is both constant and accurately known, the uncertainty in Δ(*mv*) must be due to the Δ*v* term, which would have to be infinitely large for Δ(*mv*) to equal infinity. That is, according to Equation 8.5.8, the more accurately we know the exact position of the electron (as Δ*x* → 0), the less accurately we know the speed and the kinetic energy of the electron (1/2 mv^2) because Δ(*mv*) → ∞. Conversely, the more accurately we know the precise momentum (and the energy) of the electron [as Δ(*mv*) → 0], then Δ*x* → ∞ and we have no idea where the electron is.

Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom violated the Heisenberg uncertainty principle by trying to specify **simultaneously** both the position (an orbit of a particular radius) and the energy (a quantity related to the momentum) of the electron. Moreover, given its mass and wavelike nature, the electron in the hydrogen atom could not possibly orbit the nucleus in a well-defined circular path as predicted by Bohr. You will see, however, that the *most probable radius* of the electron in the hydrogen atom is exactly the one predicted by Bohr's model.

Example 1.6.2

Calculate the minimum uncertainty in the position of the pitched baseball from Example 1.6.1 that has a mass of exactly 149 g and a speed of 100 ± 1 mi/h.

Given: mass and speed of object

Asked for: minimum uncertainty in its position

Strategy:

A. Rearrange the inequality that describes the Heisenberg uncertainty principle (Equation 8.5.7) to solve for the minimum uncertainty in the position of an object (Δ*x*).
B. Find Δ*v* by converting the velocity of the baseball to the appropriate SI units: meters per second.
C. Substitute the appropriate values into the expression for the inequality and solve for Δ*x*.

Solution:

A The Heisenberg uncertainty principle tells us that (Δ*x*)[Δ(*mv*)] = *h*/4π. Rearranging the inequality gives

$$\Delta x \geq \left(\frac{h}{4\pi}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\Delta(mv)}\right)$$

B We know that *h* = 6.626 × 10^{-34} J•s and *m* = 0.149 kg. Because there is no uncertainty in the mass of the baseball, Δ(*mv*) = *m*Δ*v* and Δ*v* = ±1 mi/h. We have

$$\Delta\nu = \left(\frac{1\ \cancel{mi}}{\cancel{h}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{h}}{60\ \cancel{min}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{min}}{60\ s}\right)\left(\frac{1.609\ \cancel{km}}{\cancel{mi}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ m}{\cancel{km}}\right) = 0.4469\ \ m/s$$

C Therefore,

$$\Delta x \geqslant \left(\frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J \cdot s}{4\,(3.1416)}\right)\left(\frac{1}{(0.149\ kg)\,(0.4469\ m \cdot s^{-1})}\right)$$

Inserting the definition of a joule (1 J = 1 kg•m^2/s^2) gives

$$\Delta x \geqslant \left(\frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \cancel{kg} \cdot m^{\cancel{2}} \cdot s}{4\,(3.1416)\left(\cancel{s^2}\right)}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{s}}{\left(0.149\ \cancel{kg}\right)(0.4469\ \cancel{m})}\right)$$

$$\Delta x \geqslant 7.92 \pm \times 10^{-34}\ \ m$$

This is equal to 3.12 × 10^{-32} inches. We can safely say that if a batter misjudges the speed of a fastball by 1 mi/h (about 1%), he will not be able to blame Heisenberg's uncertainty principle for striking out.

Exercise 1.6.2

Calculate the minimum uncertainty in the position of an electron traveling at one-third the speed of light, if the uncertainty in its speed is ±0.1%. Assume its mass to be equal to its mass at rest.

Answer: 6 × 10^{-10} m, or 0.6 nm (about the diameter of a benzene molecule)

Videos and Examples

- de Broglie Waves - Sixty Symbols - a bit of history and explanation (as well as wave particle duality can be explained)
- Calculating the wavelength of a proton - Josh Samson
- Calculating the wavelength of a small car - Prof. Heath
- What is the Uncertainty Principle? - Minute Physics
- AP Chem Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle - Mind Bite
- deBroglie Example - about education
- Heisenberg uncertainty principle quiz worked out - C Craig
- Quantum Chemistry - Ohio State
- Quantum Chemistry Quizzes - mhe education
- AP Chemistry Chapter 7 Review - Science Geek

Answers for these quizzes are included.

Summary

- An electron possesses both particle and wave properties.

The modern model for the electronic structure of the atom is based on recognizing that an electron possesses particle and wave properties, the so-called **wave–particle duality**. Louis de Broglie showed that the wavelength of a particle is equal to Planck's constant divided by the mass times the velocity of the particle.

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv} \tag{8.5.3}$$

The electron in Bohr's circular orbits could thus be described as a **standing wave**, one that does not move through space. Standing waves are familiar from music: the lowest-energy standing wave is the **fundamental** vibration, and higher-energy vibrations are **overtones** and have successively more **nodes**, points where the amplitude of the wave is always zero. Werner

Heisenberg's **uncertainty principle** states that it is impossible to precisely describe both the location and the speed of particles that exhibit wavelike behavior.

$$(\Delta x)\,(\Delta\,[mv]) \geqslant \frac{h}{4\pi} \tag{8.5.7}$$

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 1.6: Two Ideas Leading to a New Quantum Mechanics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.5: Two Ideas Leading to a New Quantum Mechanics is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.7: Wave Mechanics and Quantum Numbers

Learning Objectives

- To apply the results of quantum mechanics to chemistry.

The paradox described by Heisenberg's uncertainty principle and the wavelike nature of subatomic particles such as the electron made it impossible to use the equations of classical physics to describe the motion of electrons in atoms. Scientists needed a new approach that took the wave behavior of the electron into account. In 1926, an Austrian physicist, Erwin Schrödinger (1887–1961; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1933), developed *wave mechanics*, a mathematical technique that describes the relationship between the motion of a particle that exhibits wavelike properties (such as an electron) and its allowed energies. In doing so, Schrödinger developed the theory of quantum mechanics, which is used today to describe the energies and spatial distributions of electrons in atoms and molecules.

Schrödinger (1887–1961)

Schrödinger's unconventional approach to atomic theory was typical of his unconventional approach to life. He was notorious for his intense dislike of memorizing data and learning from books. When Hitler came to power in Germany, Schrödinger escaped to Italy. He then worked at Princeton University in the United States but eventually moved to the Institute for Advanced Studies in Dublin, Ireland, where he remained until his retirement in 1955.

Although quantum mechanics uses sophisticated mathematics, you do not need to understand the mathematical details to follow our discussion of its general conclusions. We focus on the properties of the *wave functions* that are the solutions of Schrödinger's equations.

Wave Functions

A wave function (Ψ) is a mathematical function that relates the location of an electron at a given point in space (identified by x, y, and z coordinates) to the amplitude of its wave, which corresponds to its energy. Thus each wave function is associated with a particular energy E. The properties of wave functions derived from quantum mechanics are summarized here:

- **A wave function uses three variables to describe the position of an electron.** A fourth variable is usually required to fully describe the location of objects in motion. Three specify the position in space (as with the Cartesian coordinates x, y, and z), and one specifies the time at which the object is at the specified location. For example, if you wanted to intercept an enemy submarine, you would need to know its latitude, longitude, and depth, as well as the time at which it was going to be at this position (Figure 1.7.1). For electrons, we can ignore the time dependence because we will be using standing waves, which by definition do not change with time, to describe the position of an electron.

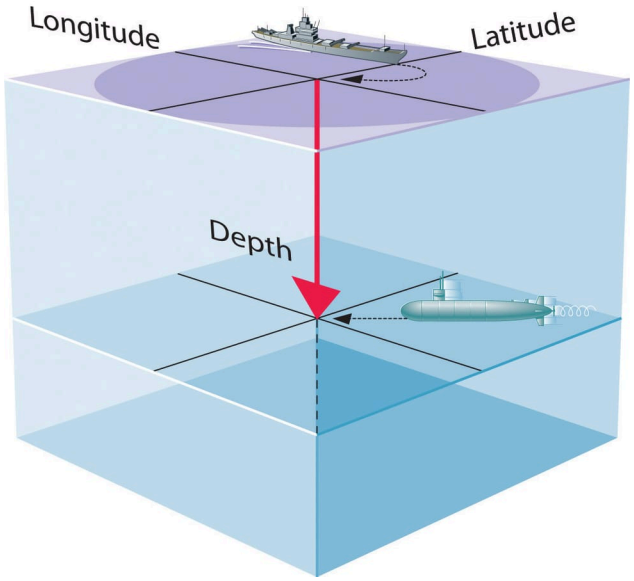


Figure 1.7.1: The Four Variables (Latitude, Longitude, Depth, and Time) Required to Precisely Locate an Object

If you are the captain of a ship trying to intercept an enemy submarine, you need to deliver your depth charge to the right location at the right time.

- **The magnitude of the wave function at a particular point in space is proportional to the amplitude of the wave at that point.** Many wave functions are complex functions, which is a mathematical term indicating that they contain $\sqrt{-1}$, represented as i. Hence the amplitude of the wave has no real physical significance. In contrast, the sign of the wave function (either positive or negative) corresponds to the phase of the wave, which will be important in our discussion of chemical bonding. The sign of the wave function should *not* be confused with a positive or negative electrical charge.
- **The square of the wave function at a given point is proportional to the probability of finding an electron at that point, which leads to a distribution of probabilities in space.** The square of the wave function (Ψ^2) is always a real quantity [recall that that $\sqrt{-1}^2 = -1$] is proportional to the probability of finding an electron at a given point. More accurately, the probability is given by the product of the wave function Ψ and its complex conjugate Ψ*, in which all terms that contain *i* are replaced by $-i$. We use probabilities because, according to Heisenberg's uncertainty principle, we cannot precisely specify the position of an electron. The probability of finding an electron at any point in space depends on several factors, including the distance from the nucleus and, in many cases, the atomic equivalent of latitude and longitude. As one way of graphically representing the probability distribution, the probability of finding an electron is indicated by the density of colored dots, as shown for the ground state of the hydrogen atom in Figure 1.7.2.

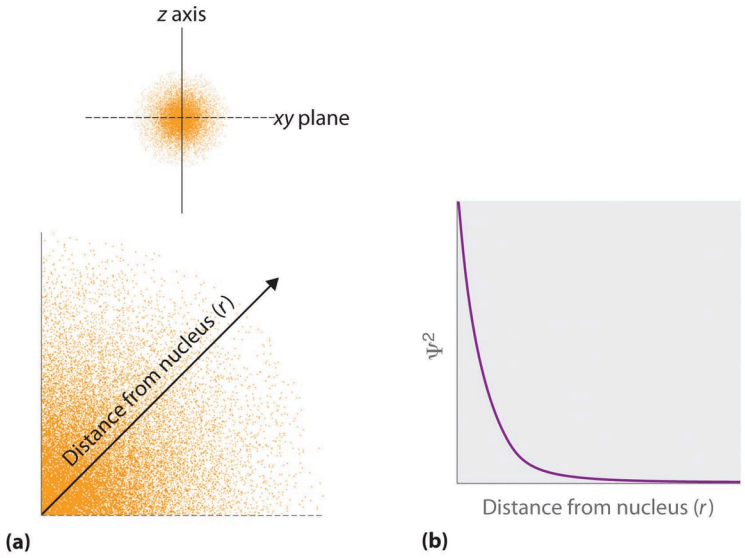


Figure 1.7.2: Probability of Finding the Electron in the Ground State of the Hydrogen Atom at Different Points in Space. (a) The density of the dots shows electron probability. (b) In this plot of Ψ^2 versus r for the ground state of the hydrogen atom, the electron probability density is greatest at r = 0 (the nucleus) and falls off with increasing r. Because the line never actually reaches the horizontal axis, the probability of finding the electron at very large values of r is very small but *not* zero.

- **Describing the electron distribution as a standing wave leads to sets of *quantum numbers* that are characteristic of each wave function.** From the patterns of one- and two-dimensional standing waves shown in Figure 6.18 and Figure 6.19, you might expect (correctly) that the patterns of three-dimensional standing waves would be complex. Fortunately, however, in the 18th century, a French mathematician, Adrien Legendre (1752–1783), developed a set of equations to describe the motion of tidal waves on the surface of a flooded planet. Schrödinger incorporated Legendre's equations into his wave functions. The requirement that the waves must be in phase with one another to avoid cancellation and produce a standing wave results in a limited number of solutions (wave functions), each of which is specified by a set of numbers called quantum numbers.
- **Each wave function is associated with a particular energy.** As in Bohr's model, the energy of an electron in an atom is quantized; it can have only certain allowed values. The major difference between Bohr's model and Schrödinger's approach is that Bohr had to impose the idea of quantization arbitrarily, whereas in Schrödinger's approach, quantization is a natural consequence of describing an electron as a standing wave.

Quantum Numbers

Schrödinger's approach uses three quantum numbers (n, l, and m_l) to specify any wave function. The quantum numbers provide information about the spatial distribution of an electron. Although n can be any positive integer, only certain values of l and m_l are allowed for a given value of n.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Introduction to Quantum Numbers: https://youtu.be/07JpBeaPxL8

The Principal Quantum Number

The **principal quantum number** (n) tells the average relative distance of an electron from the nucleus:

$$n = 1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots \tag{1.7.1}$$

As *n* increases for a given atom, so does the average distance of an electron from the nucleus. A negatively charged electron that is, on average, closer to the positively charged nucleus is attracted to the nucleus more strongly than an electron that is farther out in space. This means that electrons with higher values of *n* are easier to remove from an atom. All wave functions that have the same value of *n* are said to constitute a principal shell because those electrons have similar average distances from the nucleus. As you will see, the principal quantum number *n* corresponds to the *n* used by Bohr to describe electron orbits and by Rydberg to describe atomic energy levels.

The Azimuthal Quantum Number

The second quantum number is often called the azimuthal quantum number (*l*). The value of *l* describes the *shape* of the region of space occupied by the electron. The allowed values of *l* depend on the value of *n* and can range from 0 to *n* − 1:

$$l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n - 1 \tag{1.7.2}$$

For example, if *n* = 1, *l* can be only 0; if *n* = 2, *l* can be 0 or 1; and so forth. For a given atom, all wave functions that have the same values of both *n* and *l* form a subshell. The regions of space occupied by electrons in the same subshell usually have the same shape, but they are oriented differently in space.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Principal quantum number (n) & Orbital angular momentum (l): The Orbital Subshell: https://youtu.be/ms7WR149fAY

The Magnetic Quantum Number

The third quantum number is the magnetic quantum number (m_l). The value of m_l describes the *orientation* of the region in space occupied by an electron with respect to an applied magnetic field. The allowed values of m_l depend on the value of *l*: m_l can range from –*l* to *l* in integral steps:

$$m_l = -l, -l + 1, \ldots, 0, \ldots, l - 1, l \tag{1.7.3}$$

For example, if $l = 0$, m_l can be only 0; if *l* = 1, m_l can be –1, 0, or +1; and if *l* = 2, m_l can be –2, –1, 0, +1, or +2.

Each wave function with an allowed combination of *n*, *l*, and m_l values describes an atomic orbital, a particular spatial distribution for an electron. For a given set of quantum numbers, each principal shell has a fixed number of subshells, and each subshell has a fixed number of orbitals.

Example 1.7.1: n=4 Shell Structure

How many subshells and orbitals are contained within the principal shell with *n* = 4?

Given: value of *n*

Asked for: number of subshells and orbitals in the principal shell

Strategy:

A. Given $n = 4$, calculate the allowed values of l. From these allowed values, count the number of subshells.
B. For each allowed value of l, calculate the allowed values of m_l. The sum of the number of orbitals in each subshell is the number of orbitals in the principal shell.

Solution:

A We know that l can have all integral values from 0 to $n - 1$. If $n = 4$, then l can equal 0, 1, 2, or 3. Because the shell has four values of l, it has four subshells, each of which will contain a different number of orbitals, depending on the allowed values of m_l.

B For $l = 0$, m_l can be only 0, and thus the $l = 0$ subshell has only one orbital. For $l = 1$, m_l can be 0 or ±1; thus the $l = 1$ subshell has three orbitals. For $l = 2$, m_l can be 0, ±1, or ±2, so there are five orbitals in the $l = 2$ subshell. The last allowed value of l is $l = 3$, for which m_l can be 0, ±1, ±2, or ±3, resulting in seven orbitals in the $l = 3$ subshell. The total number of orbitals in the $n = 4$ principal shell is the sum of the number of orbitals in each subshell and is equal to n^2:

Exercise 1.7.1: n=3 Shell Structure

How many subshells and orbitals are in the principal shell with $n = 3$?

Answer: three subshells; nine orbitals

Rather than specifying all the values of n and l every time we refer to a subshell or an orbital, chemists use an abbreviated system with lowercase letters to denote the value of l for a particular subshell or orbital:

l =	0	1	2	3
Designation	*s*	*p*	*d*	*f*

The principal quantum number is named first, followed by the letter s, *p*, *d*, or *f* as appropriate. These orbital designations are derived from corresponding spectroscopic characteristics: sharp, *p*rinciple, *d*iffuse, and *f*undamental. A 1s orbital has $n = 1$ and $l = 0$; a 2*p* subshell has $n = 2$ and $l = 1$ (and has three 2*p* orbitals, corresponding to $m_l = -1$, 0, and +1); a 3*d* subshell has $n = 3$ and $l = 2$ (and has five 3*d* orbitals, corresponding to $m_l = -2$, -1, 0, +1, and +2); and so forth.

We can summarize the relationships between the quantum numbers and the number of subshells and orbitals as follows (Table 1.7.1):

- Each principal shell has n subshells. For $n = 1$, only a single subshell is possible (1s); for $n = 2$, there are two subshells (2*s* and 2*p*); for $n = 3$, there are three subshells (3s, 3*p*, and 3*d*); and so forth. Every shell has an *ns* subshell, any shell with $n \geq 2$ also has an *np* subshell, and any shell with $n \geq 3$ also has an *nd* subshell. Because a 2*d* subshell would require both $n = 2$ and $l = 2$, which is not an allowed value of l for $n = 2$, a 2*d* subshell does not exist.
- Each subshell has $2l + 1$ orbitals. This means that all *ns* subshells contain a single *s* orbital, all *np* subshells contain three *p* orbitals, all *nd* subshells contain five *d* orbitals, and all *nf* subshells contain seven *f* orbitals.

Note

Each principal shell has n subshells, and each subshell has $2l + 1$ orbitals.

Table 1.7.1 *Values of n, l, and ml through n = 4*

n	*l*	Subshell Designation	m_l	Number of Orbitals in Subshell	Number of Orbitals in Shell
1	0	1s	0	1	1
2	0	2s	0	1	4
	1	2p	–1, 0, 1	3	
3	0	3s	0	1	9
	1	3p	–1, 0, 1	3	
	2	3d	–2, –1, 0, 1, 2	5	
4	0	4s	0	1	16
	1	4p	–1, 0, 1	3	
	2	4d	–2, –1, 0, 1, 2	5	
	3	4f	–3, –2, –1, 0, 1, 2, 3	7	

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Magnetic Quantum Number (m_l) & Spin Quantum Number (m_s): https://youtu.be/gbmGVUXBOBk

Summary

- There is a relationship between the motions of electrons in atoms and molecules and their energies that is described by quantum mechanics.

Because of wave–particle duality, scientists must deal with the probability of an electron being at a particular point in space. To do so required the development of **quantum mechanics**, which uses **wave functions (Ψ)** to describe the mathematical relationship between the motion of electrons in atoms and molecules and their energies. Wave functions have five important properties:

1. the wave function uses three variables (Cartesian axes *x*, *y*, and *z*) to describe the position of an electron;
2. the magnitude of the wave function is proportional to the intensity of the wave;
3. the probability of finding an electron at a given point is proportional to the square of the wave function at that point, leading to a distribution of probabilities in space that is often portrayed as an **electron density** plot;
4. describing electron distributions as standing waves leads naturally to the existence of sets of **quantum numbers** characteristic of each wave function; and
5. each spatial distribution of the electron described by a wave function with a given set of quantum numbers has a particular energy.

Quantum numbers provide important information about the energy and spatial distribution of an electron. The **principal quantum number** *n* can be any positive integer; as *n* increases for an atom, the average distance of the electron from the nucleus also increases. All wave functions with the same value of *n* constitute a **principal shell** in which the electrons have similar average distances from the nucleus. The **azimuthal quantum number** *l* can have integral values between 0 and *n* – 1; it describes the shape of the electron distribution. Wave functions that have the same values of both *n* and *l* constitute a **subshell**, corresponding to electron distributions that usually differ in orientation rather than in shape or average distance from the nucleus. The **magnetic**

quantum number m_l can have $2l + 1$ integral values, ranging from $-l$ to $+l$, and describes the orientation of the electron distribution. Each wave function with a given set of values of n, l, and m_l describes a particular spatial distribution of an electron in an atom, an **atomic orbital**.

This page titled 1.7: Wave Mechanics and Quantum Numbers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.6: Wave Mechanics is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.8: Electron Spin- A Fourth Quantum Number

Learning Objectives

- To introduce the concept of electron spin and demonstrated it is quantized

The process of describing each atom's electronic structure consists, essentially, of beginning with hydrogen and adding one proton and one electron at a time to create the next heavier element in the table. All stable nuclei other than hydrogen also contain one or more neutrons. Because neutrons have no electrical charge, however, they can be ignored in the following discussion. Before demonstrating how to do this, however, we must introduce the concept of electron spin.

The Stern-Gerlach Experiment

The quantum numbers $n,\ l,\ m$ are not sufficient to fully characterize the physical state of the electrons in an atom. In 1926, Otto Stern and Walther Gerlach carried out an experiment that could not be explained in terms of the three quantum numbers $n,\ l,\ m$ and showed that there is, in fact, another quantum-mechanical degree of freedom that needs to be included in the theory. The experiment is illustrated in the figure 8.9.1. A beam of atoms (e.g. hydrogen or silver atoms) is sent through a spatially inhomogeneous magnetic field with a definite field gradient toward one of the poles. It is observed that the beam splits into two beams as it passes through the field region.

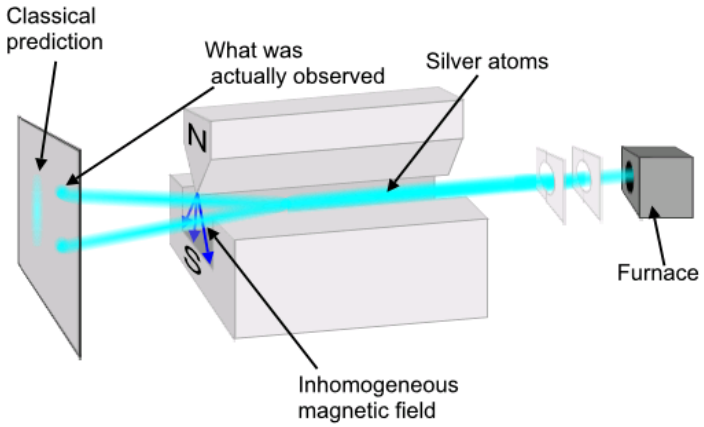


Figure 1.8.1: The Stern-Gerlach apparatus. from Wikipedia

The fact that the beam splits into 2 beams suggests that the electrons in the atoms have a degree of freedom capable of coupling to the magnetic field. That is, an electron has an *intrinsic magnetic moment* M arising from a degree of freedom that has no classical analog. The magnetic moment must take on only 2 values according to the Stern-Gerlach experiment. The intrinsic property that gives rise to the magnetic moment must have some analog to a *spin*, S; unlike position and momentum, which have clear classical analogs, spin does not.

The implication of the Stern-Gerlach experiment is that we need to include a fourth quantum number, m_s in our description of the physical state of the electron. That is, in addition to give its principle, angular, and magnetic quantum numbers, we also need to say if it is a spin-up electron or a spin-down electron.

Electron Spin

When scientists analyzed the emission and absorption spectra of the elements more closely, they saw that for elements having more than one electron, nearly all the lines in the spectra were actually *pairs* of very closely spaced lines. Because each line represents an energy level available to electrons in the atom, there are twice as many energy levels available as would be predicted solely based on the quantum numbers *n*, *l*, and m_l. Scientists also discovered that applying a magnetic field caused

the lines in the pairs to split farther apart. In 1925, two graduate students in physics in the Netherlands, George Uhlenbeck (1900–1988) and Samuel Goudsmit (1902–1978), proposed that the splittings were caused by an electron spinning about its axis, much as Earth spins about its axis. When an electrically charged object spins, it produces a magnetic moment parallel to the axis of rotation, making it behave like a magnet. Although the electron cannot be viewed solely as a particle, spinning or otherwise, it is indisputable that it does have a magnetic moment. This magnetic moment is called electron spin.

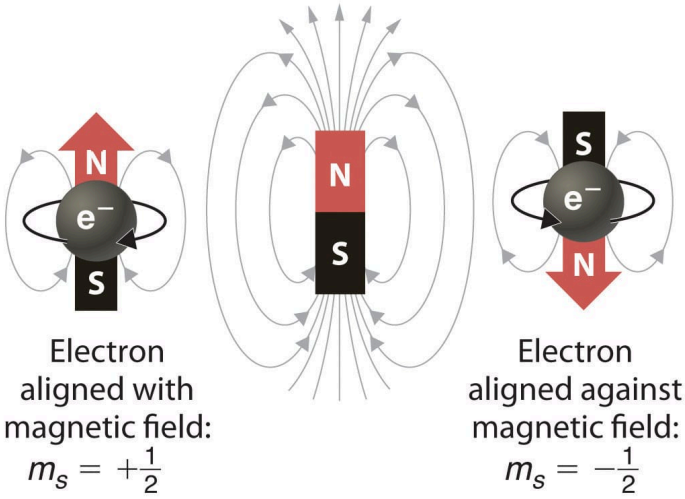


Figure 1.8.2: Electron Spin. In a magnetic field, an electron has two possible orientations with different energies, one with spin up, aligned with the magnetic field, and one with spin down, aligned against it. All other orientations are forbidden.

In an external magnetic field, the electron has two possible orientations (Figure 1.8.2). These are described by a fourth quantum number (m_s), which for any electron can have only two possible values, designated +½ (up) and –½ (down) to indicate that the two orientations are opposites; the subscript s is for spin. An electron behaves like a magnet that has one of two possible orientations, aligned either with the magnetic field or against it.

The implications of electron spin for chemistry were recognized almost immediately by an Austrian physicist, Wolfgang Pauli (1900–1958; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1945), who determined that each orbital can contain no more than two electrons. He developed the Pauli exclusion principle: *No two electrons in an atom can have the same values of all four quantum numbers (n, l, m_l, m_s).*

By giving the values of *n*, *l*, and m_l, we also specify a particular orbital (e.g., 1s with $n = 1$, $l = 0$, $m_l = 0$). Because m_s has only two possible values (+½ or –½), two electrons, *and only two electrons*, can occupy any given orbital, one with spin up and one with spin down. With this information, we can proceed to construct the entire periodic table, which was originally based on the physical and chemical properties of the known elements.

Example 1.8.2

List all the allowed combinations of the four quantum numbers (*n*, *l*, m_l, m_s) for electrons in a 2*p* orbital and predict the maximum number of electrons the 2*p* subshell can accommodate.

Given: orbital

Asked for: allowed quantum numbers and maximum number of electrons in orbital

Strategy:

A. List the quantum numbers (*n*, *l*, m_l) that correspond to an $n = 2p$ orbital. List all allowed combinations of (*n*, *l*, m_l).
B. Build on these combinations to list all the allowed combinations of (*n*, *l*, m_l, m_s).
C. Add together the number of combinations to predict the maximum number of electrons the 2*p* subshell can accommodate.

Solution:

A For a 2*p* orbital, we know that $n = 2$, $l = n - 1 = 1$, and $m_l = -l, (-l + 1), \ldots, (l - 1), l$. There are only three possible combinations of (n, l, m_l): (2, 1, 1), (2, 1, 0), and (2, 1, –1).

B Because m_s is independent of the other quantum numbers and can have values of only +½ and –½, there are six possible combinations of (n, l, m_l, m_s): (2, 1, 1, +½), (2, 1, 1, –½), (2, 1, 0, +½), (2, 1, 0, –½), (2, 1, –1, +½), and (2, 1, –1, –½).

C Hence the 2*p* subshell, which consists of three 2*p* orbitals ($2p_x$, $2p_y$, and $2p_z$), can contain a total of six electrons, two in each orbital.

Exercise 1.8.2

List all the allowed combinations of the four quantum numbers (n, l, m_l, m_s) for a 6s orbital, and predict the total number of electrons it can contain.

Answer: (6, 0, 0, +½), (6, 0, 0, –½); two electrons

Summary

In addition to the three quantum numbers (n, l, m_l) dictated by quantum mechanics, a fourth quantum number is required to explain certain properties of atoms. This is the **electron spin** quantum number (m_s), which can have values of +½ or –½ for any electron, corresponding to the two possible orientations of an electron in a magnetic field. The concept of electron spin has important consequences for chemistry because the **Pauli exclusion principle** implies that no orbital can contain more than two electrons (with opposite spin).

This page titled 1.8: Electron Spin- A Fourth Quantum Number is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.9: Electron Spin: A Fourth Quantum Number is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.9: Orbital Shapes and Energies

An atom is composed of a nucleus containing neutrons and protons with electrons dispersed throughout the remaining space. Electrons, however, are not simply floating within the atom; instead, they are fixed within electronic orbitals. Electronic orbitals are regions within the atom in which electrons have the highest probability of being found.

Quantum Numbers describing Electronic Orbitals

There are multiple orbitals within an atom. Each has its own specific energy level and properties. Because each orbital is different, they are assigned specific quantum numbers: 1s, 2s, 2p 3s, 3p,4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p, 6s, 4f, 5d, 6p, 7s, 5f, 6d, 7p. The numbers, (n=1,2,3, etc.) are called *principal quantum numbers* and can only be positive numbers. The letters (*s,p,d,f*) represent the *orbital angular momentum quantum number* (ℓ) and the orbital angular momentum quantum number may be 0 or a positive number, but can never be greater than n-1. Each letter is paired with a specific ℓ value:

s: subshell = 0
p: subshell = 1
d: subshell = 2
f: subshell = 3

An orbital is also described by its *magnetic quantum number* (m_ℓ). The magnetic quantum number can range from $-\ell$ to $+\ell$. This number indicates how many orbitals there are and thus how many electrons can reside in each atom.

Orbitals that have the same or identical energy levels are referred to as **degenerate.** An example is the 2p orbital: $2p_x$ has the same energy level as $2p_y$. This concept becomes more important when dealing with molecular orbitals. The **Pauli exclusion principle** states that no two electrons can have the same exact orbital configuration; in other words, the same quantum numbers. However, the electron can exist in spin up (m_s = +1/2) or with spin down (m_s = -1/2) configurations. This means that the s orbital can contain up to two electrons, the p orbital can contain up to six electrons, the d orbital can contain up to 10 electrons, and the f orbital can contain up to 14 electrons.

Table 1: Breakdown and Properties of Subshells

s subshell	p subshell	d subshell	f subshell
ℓ = 0	ℓ = 1	ℓ = 2	ℓ = 3
m_ℓ = 0	m_ℓ= -1, 0, +1	m_ℓ= -2, -1, 0, +1, +2	m_ℓ= -3, -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, +3
One s orbital	Three p orbitals	Five d orbitals	Seven f orbitals
2 s orbital electrons	6 p orbital electrons	10 d orbital electrons	14 f orbital electrons

Visualizing Electron Orbitals

As discussed in the previous section, the magnetic quantum number (m_l) can range from –l to +l. The number of possible values is the number of lobes (orbitals) there are in the s, p, d, and f subshells. As shown in Table 1, the s subshell has one lobe, the p subshell has three lobes, the d subshell has five lobes, and the f subshell has seven lobes. Each of these lobes is labeled differently and is named depending on which plane the lobe is resting in. If the lobe lies along the x plane, then it is labeled with an x, as in $2p_x$. If the lobe lies along the xy plane, then it is labeled with a xy such as d_{xy}. Electrons are found within the lobes. The plane (or planes) that the orbitals do not fill are called nodes. These are regions in which there is a 0 probability density of finding electrons. For example, in the d_{yx} orbital, there are nodes on planes xz and yz. This can be seen in Figure 1.9.1.

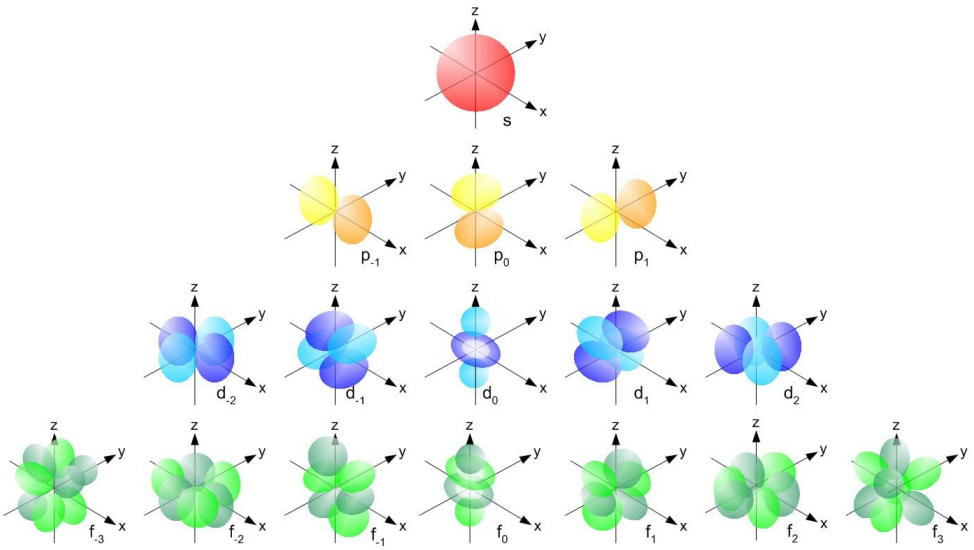


Figure 1.9.1: The 1s orbital (red), the 2p orbitals (yellow), the 3d orbitals (blue) and the 4f orbitals (green) are contrasted.

Radial and Angular Nodes

There are two types of nodes, angular and radial nodes. **Angular nodes** are typically flat plane (at fixed angles), like those in the diagram above. The ℓ quantum number determines the number of angular nodes in an orbital. **Radial nodes** are spheres (at fixed radius) that occurs as the principal quantum number increases. The total nodes of an orbital is the sum of angular and radial nodes and is given in terms of the n and l quantum number by the following equation:

$$N = n - l - 1 \tag{1.9.1}$$

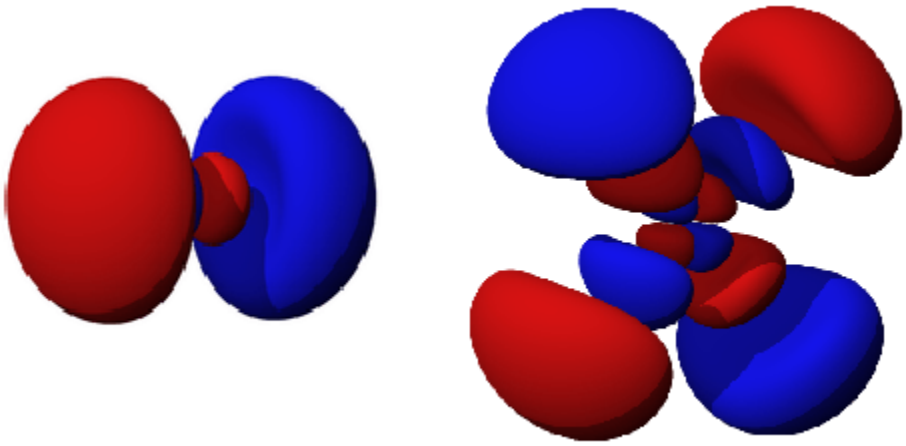


Figure 1.9.2: Two orbitals. (left) The $3p_x$ orbital has one radial node and one angular node. (right) The $5d_{xz}$ orbital has two radial nodes and two angular nodes. Images used with permission from Wikipedia

For example, determine the nodes in the $3p_z$ orbital, given that n = 3 and ℓ = 1 (because it is a p orbital). The total number of nodes present in this orbital is equal to n-1. In this case, 3-1=2, so there are 2 total nodes. The quantum number ℓ determines the number of angular nodes; there is 1 angular node, specifically on the xy plane because this is a p_z orbital. Because there is one node left, there must be one radial node. To sum up, the $3p_z$ orbital has 2 nodes: 1 angular node and 1 radial node. This is demonstrated in Figure 2.

Another example is the $5d_{xy}$ orbital. There are four nodes total (5-1=4) and there are two angular nodes (d orbital has a quantum

number ℓ=2) on the xz and zy planes. This means there there must be two radial nodes. The number of radial and angular nodes can only be calculated if the principal quantum number, type of orbital (s,p,d,f), and the plane that the orbital is resting on (x,y,z, xy, etc.) are known.

Electron Configuration within an Orbital

We can think of an atom like a hotel. The nucleus is the lobby where the protons and neutrons are, and in the floors above, we find the rooms (orbitals) with the electrons. The principal quantum number is the floor number, the subshell type lets us know what type of room it is (s being a closet, p being a single room, d having two adjoining rooms, and f being a suit with three rooms) , the magnetic quantum number lets us know how many beds there are in the room, and two electrons can sleep in one bed (this is because each has a different spin; -1/2 and 1/2). For example, on the first floor we have the s orbital. The s orbital is a closet and has one bed in it so the first floor can hold a total of two electrons. The second floor has the room styles s and p. The s is a closet with one bed as we know and the p room is a single with three beds in it so the second floor can hold a total of 8 electrons.

Each orbital, as previously mentioned, has its own energy level associated to it. The lowest energy level electron orbitals are filled first and if there are more electrons after the lowest energy level is filled, they move to the next orbital. The order of the electron orbital energy levels, starting from least to greatest, is as follows: 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p, 6s, 4f, 5d, 6p, 7s, 5f, 6d, 7p.

Since electrons all have the same charge, they stay as far away as possible because of repulsion. So, if there are open orbitals in the same energy level, the electrons will fill each orbital singly before filling the orbital with two electrons. For example, the 2p shell has three p orbitals. If there are more electrons after the 1s, and 2s orbitals have been filled, each p orbital will be filled with one electron first before two electrons try to reside in the same p orbital. This is known as **Hund's rule**.

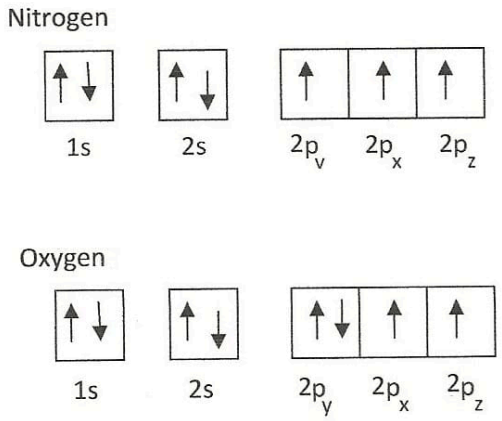


Figure 1.9.3: Electron configuration of nitrogen and oxygen atoms

The way electrons move from one orbital to the next is very similar to walking up a flight of stairs. When walking up stairs, you place one foot on the first stair and then another foot on the second stair. At any point in time, you can either stand with both feet on the first stair, or on the second stair but it is impossible to stand in between the two stairs. This is the way electrons move from one electron orbital to the next. Electrons can either jump to a higher energy level by absorbing, or gaining energy, or drop to a lower energy level by emitting, or losing energy. However, electrons will never be found in between two orbitals.

Problems

1. Which orbital would the electrons fill first? The 2s or 2p orbital?
2. How many d orbitals are there in the d subshell?
3. How many electrons can the p orbital hold?
4. Determine the number of angular and radial nodes of a 4f orbital.
5. What is the shape of an orbital with 4 radial nodes and 1 angular node in the xy plane?

Solutions

1. The 2s orbital would be filled before the 2p orbital because orbitals that are lower in energy are filled first. The 2s orbital is lower in energy than the 2p orbital.
2. There are 5 d orbitals in the d subshell.
3. A p orbital can hold 6 electrons.
4. Based off of the given information, n=4 and ℓ=3. Thus, there are 3 angular nodes present. The total number of nodes in this orbital is: 4-1=3, which means there are no radial nodes present.
5. 1 angular node means ℓ=1 which tells us that we have a p subshell, specifically the p_z orbital because the angular node is on the xy plane. The total number of nodes in this orbital is: 4 radial nodes +1 angular node=5 nodes. To find n, solve the equation: nodes=n-1; in this case, 5=n-1, so n=6. This gives us a: $6p_z$ orbital

References

- General Chemistry Principles & Modern Applications. 9th ed. New Jersey: Pearson Education, Inc, 2007. Print.
- A new Dictionary of Chemistry. 3rd ed. Great Britian: Longman Green & Co., 1961. Print.
- General Chemistry. USA: Linus Pauling, 1947. Print.

This page titled 1.9: Orbital Shapes and Energies is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- Electronic Orbitals is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.10: Electron Configurations

Learning Objectives

- To understand the basics of adding electrons to atomic orbitals
- To understand the basics of the Aufbau principle

The electron configuration of an element is the arrangement of its electrons in its atomic orbitals. By knowing the electron configuration of an element, we can predict and explain a great deal of its chemistry.

The Aufbau Principle

We construct the periodic table by following the aufbau principle (from German, meaning "building up"). First we determine the number of electrons in the atom; then we add electrons one at a time to the lowest-energy orbital available *without violating the Pauli principle*. We use the orbital energy diagram of Figure 6.29, recognizing that each orbital can hold two electrons, one with spin up ↑, corresponding to $m_S = +½$, which is arbitrarily written first, and one with spin down ↓, corresponding to $m_S = –½$. A filled orbital is indicated by ↑↓, in which the electron spins are said to be *paired*. Here is a schematic orbital diagram for a hydrogen atom in its ground state:

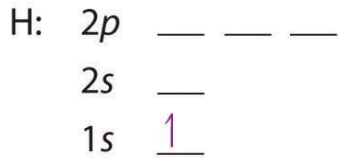
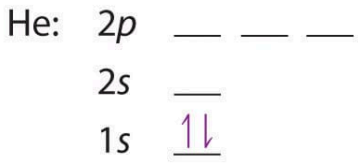


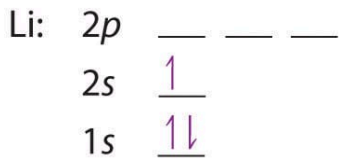
Figure 6.29"), and the electron configuration is written as $1s^1$ and read as "one-s-one."

A neutral helium atom, with an atomic number of 2 ($Z = 2$), has two electrons. We place one electron in the orbital that is lowest in energy, the 1s orbital. From the Pauli exclusion principle, we know that an orbital can contain two electrons with opposite spin, so we place the second electron in the same orbital as the first but pointing down, so that the electrons are paired. The orbital diagram for the helium atom is therefore



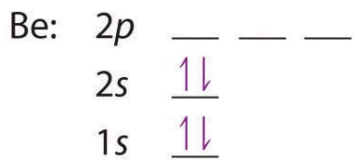
written as $1s^2$, where the superscript 2 implies the pairing of spins. Otherwise, our configuration would violate the Pauli principle.

The next element is lithium, with $Z = 3$ and three electrons in the neutral atom. We know that the 1s orbital can hold two of the electrons with their spins paired. Figure 6.29 tells us that the next lowest energy orbital is 2s, so the orbital diagram for lithium is

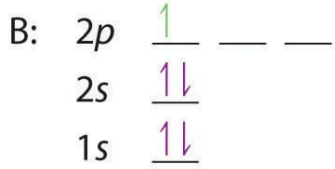


This electron configuration is written as $1s^2 2s^1$.

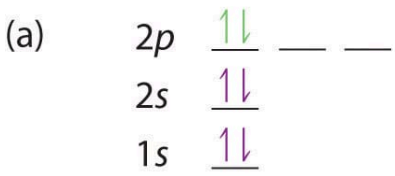
The next element is beryllium, with $Z = 4$ and four electrons. We fill both the 1s and 2s orbitals to achieve a $1s^2 2s^2$ electron configuration:

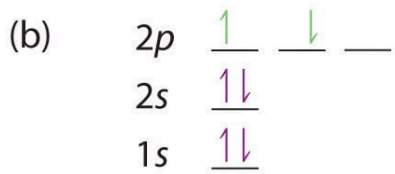


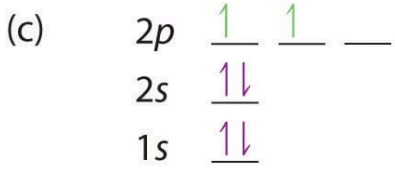
When we reach boron, with $Z = 5$ and five electrons, we must place the fifth electron in one of the 2*p* orbitals. Because all three 2*p* orbitals are degenerate, it doesn't matter which one we select. The electron configuration of boron is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$:



At carbon, with $Z = 6$ and six electrons, we are faced with a choice. Should the sixth electron be placed in the same 2*p* orbital that already has an electron, or should it go in one of the empty 2*p* orbitals? If it goes in an empty 2*p* orbital, will the sixth electron have its spin aligned with or be opposite to the spin of the fifth? In short, which of the following three orbital diagrams is correct for carbon, remembering that the 2*p* orbitals are degenerate?

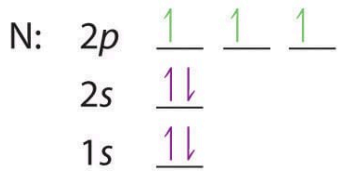






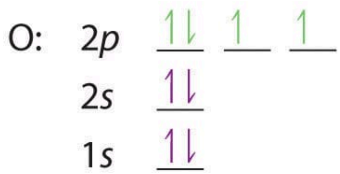
Because of electron-electron repulsions, it is more favorable energetically for an electron to be in an unoccupied orbital than in one that is already occupied; hence we can eliminate choice a. Similarly, experiments have shown that choice b is slightly higher in energy (less stable) than choice c because electrons in degenerate orbitals prefer to line up with their spins parallel; thus, we can eliminate choice b. Choice c illustrates Hund's rule (named after the German physicist Friedrich H. Hund, 1896–1997), which today says that the lowest-energy electron configuration for an atom is the one that has the maximum number of electrons with parallel spins in degenerate orbitals. By Hund's rule, the electron configuration of carbon, which is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$, is understood to correspond to the orbital diagram shown in c. Experimentally, it is found that the ground state of a neutral carbon atom does indeed contain two unpaired electrons.

When we get to nitrogen (Z = 7, with seven electrons), Hund's rule tells us that the lowest-energy arrangement is

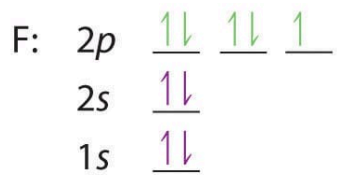


with three unpaired electrons. The electron configuration of nitrogen is thus $1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$.

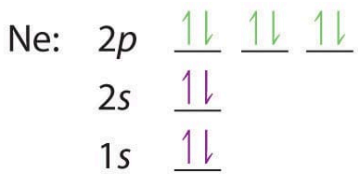
At oxygen, with Z = 8 and eight electrons, we have no choice. One electron must be paired with another in one of the 2*p* orbitals, which gives us two unpaired electrons and a $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$ electron configuration. Because all the 2*p* orbitals are degenerate, it doesn't matter which one has the pair of electrons.



Similarly, fluorine has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$:



When we reach neon, with Z = 10, we have filled the 2*p* subshell, giving a $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ electron configuration:



Notice that for neon, as for helium, all the orbitals through the 2*p* level are completely filled. This fact is very important in dictating both the chemical reactivity and the bonding of helium and neon, as you will see.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electron Configuration of Atoms: https://youtu.be/LlY-O3-bfnk

Valence Electrons

As we continue through the periodic table in this way, writing the electron configurations of larger and larger atoms, it becomes tedious to keep copying the configurations of the filled inner subshells. In practice, chemists simplify the notation by using a bracketed noble gas symbol to represent the configuration of the noble gas from the preceding row because all the orbitals in a noble gas are filled. For example, [Ne] represents the $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ electron configuration of neon (Z = 10), so the electron configuration of sodium, with Z = 11, which is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$, is written as $[Ne]3s^1$:

Neon	Z = 10	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$
Sodium	Z = 11	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 \mathbf{3}s^1 = [Ne]\mathbf{3}s^1$

Because electrons in filled inner orbitals are closer to the nucleus and more tightly bound to it, they are rarely involved in chemical reactions. This means that the chemistry of an atom depends mostly on the electrons in its outermost shell, which are called the valence electrons. The simplified notation allows us to see the valence-electron configuration more easily. Using this notation to compare the electron configurations of sodium and lithium, we have:

Sodium	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1 = [Ne]3s^1$
Lithium	$1s^2 2s^1 = [He]2s^1$

It is readily apparent that both sodium and lithium have one *s* electron in their valence shell. We would therefore predict that sodium and lithium have very similar chemistry, which is indeed the case.

As we continue to build the eight elements of period 3, the 3*s* and 3*p* orbitals are filled, one electron at a time. This row concludes with the noble gas argon, which has the electron configuration $[Ne]3s^2 3p^6$, corresponding to a filled valence shell.

Example 1.10.2

Draw an orbital diagram and use it to derive the electron configuration of phosphorus, Z = 15. What is its valence electron configuration?

Given: atomic number

Asked for: orbital diagram and valence electron configuration for phosphorus

Strategy:

A. Locate the nearest noble gas preceding phosphorus in the periodic table. Then subtract its number of electrons from those in phosphorus to obtain the number of valence electrons in phosphorus.
B. Referring to Figure 6.29, draw an orbital diagram to represent those valence orbitals. Following Hund's rule, place the valence electrons in the available orbitals, beginning with the orbital that is lowest in energy. Write the electron configuration from your orbital diagram.
C. Ignore the inner orbitals (those that correspond to the electron configuration of the nearest noble gas) and write the valence electron configuration for phosphorus.

Solution:

A Because phosphorus is in the third row of the periodic table, we know that it has a [Ne] closed shell with 10 electrons. We begin by subtracting 10 electrons from the 15 in phosphorus.

B The additional five electrons are placed in the next available orbitals, which Figure 6.29 tells us are the 3*s* and 3*p* orbitals:

P: [Ne] 3*p* ___ ___ ___
3*s* ___

Because the 3s orbital is lower in energy than the 3*p* orbitals, we fill it first:

P: [Ne] 3*p* ___ ___ ___
3*s* ⇅

Hund's rule tells us that the remaining three electrons will occupy the degenerate 3*p* orbitals separately but with their spins aligned:

P: [Ne] 3*p* 1 1 1
3*s* ⇅

The electron configuration is $[Ne]3s^2 3p^3$.

C We obtain the valence electron configuration by ignoring the inner orbitals, which for phosphorus means that we ignore the [Ne] closed shell. This gives a valence-electron configuration of $3s^2 3p^3$.

Exercise 1.10.2

Draw an orbital diagram and use it to derive the electron configuration of chlorine, $Z = 17$. What is its valence electron configuration?

Answer: $[Ne]3s^2 3p^5$; $3s^2 3p^5$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Definition of Valence Electrons: https://youtu.be/_ldxOYwM2VM

The general order in which orbitals are filled is depicted in Figure 1.10.1. Subshells corresponding to each value of *n* are written from left to right on successive horizontal lines, where each row represents a row in the periodic table. The order in which the orbitals are filled is indicated by the diagonal lines running from the upper right to the lower left. Accordingly, the 4s orbital is filled prior to the 3*d* orbital because of shielding and penetration effects. Consequently, the electron configuration of potassium, which begins the fourth period, is $[Ar]4s^1$, and the configuration of calcium is $[Ar]4s^2$. Five 3*d* orbitals are filled by the next 10 elements, the transition metals, followed by three 4*p* orbitals. Notice that the last member of this row is the noble gas krypton ($Z = 36$), $[Ar]4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 = [Kr]$, which has filled 4s, 3*d*, and 4*p* orbitals. The fifth row of the periodic table is essentially the same as the fourth, except that the 5s, 4*d*, and 5*p* orbitals are filled sequentially.

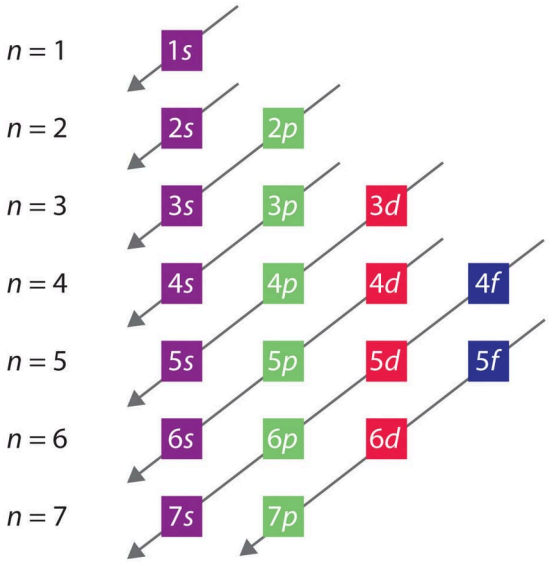


Figure 1.10.1 Predicting the Order in Which Orbitals Are Filled in Multielectron Atoms. If you write the subshells for each value of the principal quantum number on successive lines, the observed order in which they are filled is indicated by a series of diagonal lines running from the upper right to the lower left.

The sixth row of the periodic table will be different from the preceding two because the 4*f* orbitals, which can hold 14 electrons, are filled between the 6*s* and the 5*d* orbitals. The elements that contain 4*f* orbitals in their valence shell are the lanthanides. When the 6*p* orbitals are finally filled, we have reached the next (and last known) noble gas, radon (Z = 86), [Xe]$6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10} 6p^6$ = [Rn]. In the last row, the 5*f* orbitals are filled between the 7*s* and the 6*d* orbitals, which gives the 14 actinide elements. Because the large number of protons makes their nuclei unstable, all the actinides are radioactive.

Example 1.10.3

Write the electron configuration of mercury (Z = 80), showing all the inner orbitals.

Given: atomic number

Asked for: complete electron configuration

Strategy:

Using the orbital diagram in Figure 1.10.1 and the periodic table as a guide, fill the orbitals until all 80 electrons have been placed.

Solution:

By placing the electrons in orbitals following the order shown in Figure 1.10.1 and using the periodic table as a guide, we obtain

$1s^2$	row 1	2 electrons
$2s^2 2p^6$	row 2	8 electrons
$3s^2 3p^6$	row 3	8 electrons
$4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6$	row 4	18 electrons
$5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6$	row 5	18 electrons
	row 1–5	54 electrons

After filling the first five rows, we still have 80 – 54 = 26 more electrons to accommodate. According to Figure 1.10.2, we need to fill the 6s (2 electrons), 4*f* (14 electrons), and 5*d* (10 electrons) orbitals. The result is mercury's electron configuration:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10} = Hg = [Xe]6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10}$$

with a filled 5*d* subshell, a $6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10}$ valence shell configuration, and a total of 80 electrons. (You should always check to be sure that the total number of electrons equals the atomic number.)

Exercise 1.10.3

Although element 114 is not stable enough to occur in nature, two isotopes of element 114 were created for the first time in a nuclear reactor in 1999 by a team of Russian and American scientists. Write the complete electron configuration for element 114.

Answer: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10} 6p^6 7s^2 5f^{14} 6d^{10} 7p^2$

The electron configurations of the elements are presented in Figure 1.10.3, which lists the orbitals in the order in which they are filled. In several cases, the ground state electron configurations are different from those predicted by Figure 1.10.1. Some of these anomalies occur as the 3*d* orbitals are filled. For example, the observed ground state electron configuration of chromium is $[Ar]4s^1 3d^5$ rather than the predicted $[Ar]4s^2 3d^4$. Similarly, the observed electron configuration of copper is $[Ar]4s^1 3d^{10}$ instead of $[Ar]s^2 3d^9$. The actual electron configuration may be rationalized in terms of an added stability associated with a half-filled (ns^1, np^3, nd^5, nf^7) or filled (ns^2, np^6, nd^{10}, nf^{14}) subshell. Given the small differences between higher energy levels, this added stability is enough to shift an electron from one orbital to another. In heavier elements, other more complex effects can also be important, leading to some of the additional anomalies indicated in Figure 1.10.3. For example, cerium has an electron configuration of $[Xe]6s^2 4f^1 5d^1$, which is impossible to rationalize in simple terms. In most cases, however, these apparent anomalies do not have important chemical consequences.

Note

Additional stability is associated with half-filled or filled subshells.

Summary

Based on the Pauli principle and a knowledge of orbital energies obtained using hydrogen-like orbitals, it is possible to construct the periodic table by filling up the available orbitals beginning with the lowest-energy orbitals (the **aufbau principle**), which gives rise to a particular arrangement of electrons for each element (its **electron configuration**). **Hund's rule** says that the lowest-energy arrangement of electrons is the one that places them in degenerate orbitals with their spins parallel. For chemical purposes, the most important electrons are those in the outermost principal shell, the **valence electrons**.

This page titled 1.10: Electron Configurations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 8.10: Multielectron Atoms is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

Estimated Time to Read: 6 min

Basic Steps

Writing an electron configuration for a transition metal element follows the same basic steps as for writing an electron configuration for an element in the s-block or p-block. List each subshell, and then fill each subshell with an appropriate number of electrons until all electrons in the element are accounted for. Transition elements have electrons in the d orbital, which introduces some additional nuance in the electron configurations. First, recall that the n = 3 shell is the first shell to have a d subshell. Second, recall that the 4s subshell is lower in energy than the 3d subshell. Thus, when filling electrons into orbitals the correct order of filling is $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ \mathbf{4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6}$. Similarly, the 5s will be filled before the 4d, and the 6s will be filled before the 5d.

Some elements in the d block will also have electrons in the f subshell. The n = 4 shell is the first shell to have a f subshell. Thus, the 6s subshell is lower in energy than the 4f subshell, and the correct order of filling is $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6\ 5s^2\ 4d^{10}\ 5p^6\ \mathbf{6s^2\ 4f^{14}\ 5d^{10}\ 6p^6}$. Similarly, the 7s will be filled before the 5f, which will be filled before the 6d subshell.

Example 1.11.1

Write the ground state electron configuration for vanadium (V).

Solution: Method 1

1. Find the number of electrons in the atom: Vanadium has 23 electrons.
2. List the subshells following the model shown in Figure 1.6.3: 1s 2s 2p 3s 3p 4s 3d
3. Fill the subshells until all electrons have been accounted for. Remember: each s subshell can hold 2 electrons, each p subshell can hold six electrons, each d subshell can hold 10 electrons, and each f subshell can hold 14 electrons: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^3$

Solution: Method 2

1. Locate the atom on the periodic table.

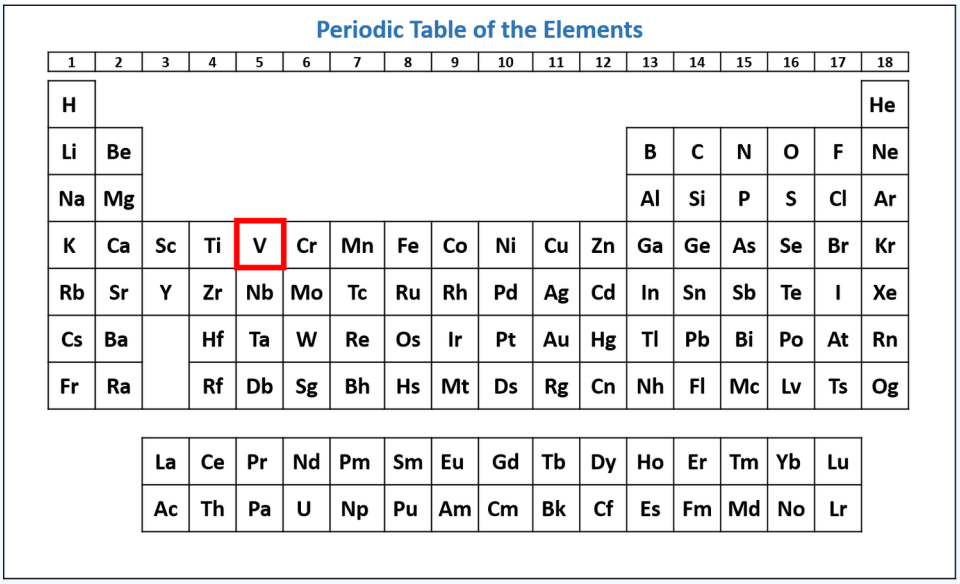


Figure 1.11.1: Periodic table of the elements with the location of vanadium (V) highlighted. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

2. Starting at hydrogen and the 1s subshell, read across each row of the periodic table until you get to your chosen element. As you read across each row, list each subshell and the number of electrons in the subshell.

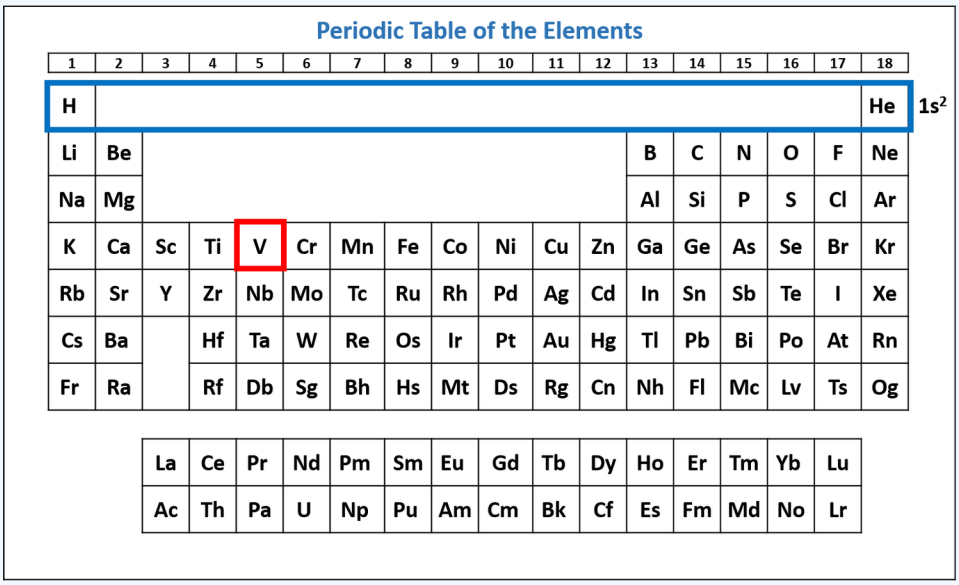


Figure 1.11.2: Periodic table of the elements with the $1s^2$ subshell highlighted. V has two electrons in the 1s subshell. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

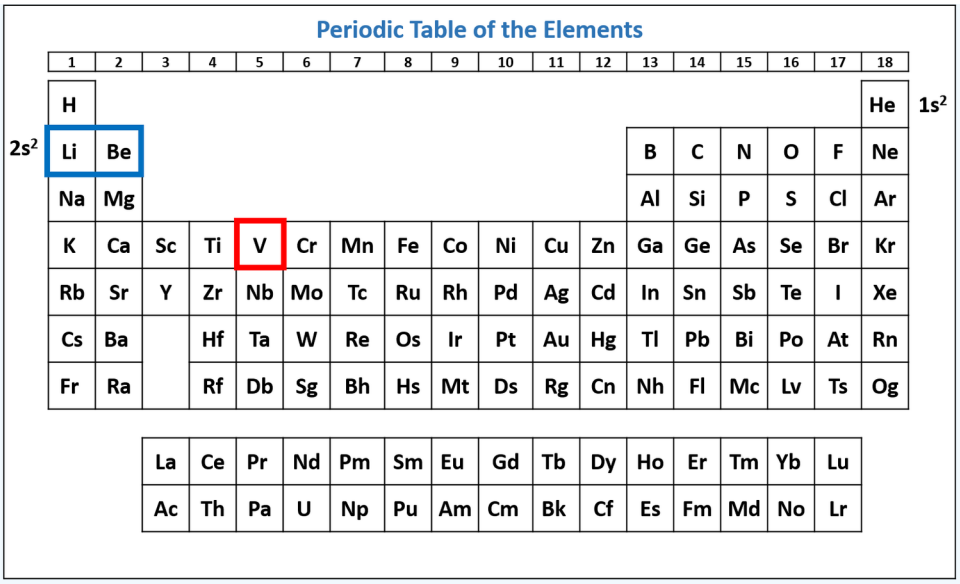


Figure 1.11.3: Periodic table of the elements with the $2s^2$ subshell highlighted. V has two electrons in the 2s subshell. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

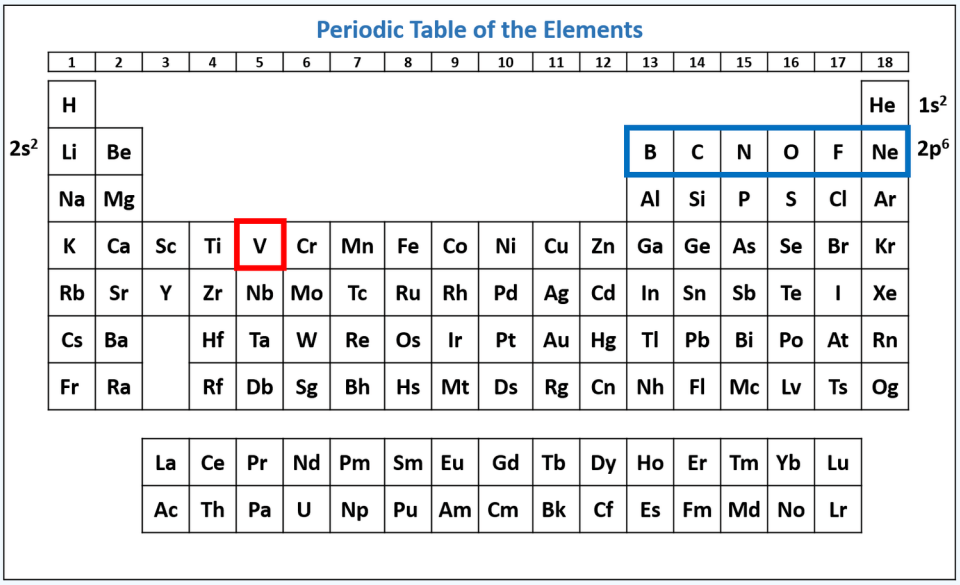


Figure 1.11.4: Periodic table of the elements with the $2p^6$ subshell highlighted. V has six electrons in the 2p subshell. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

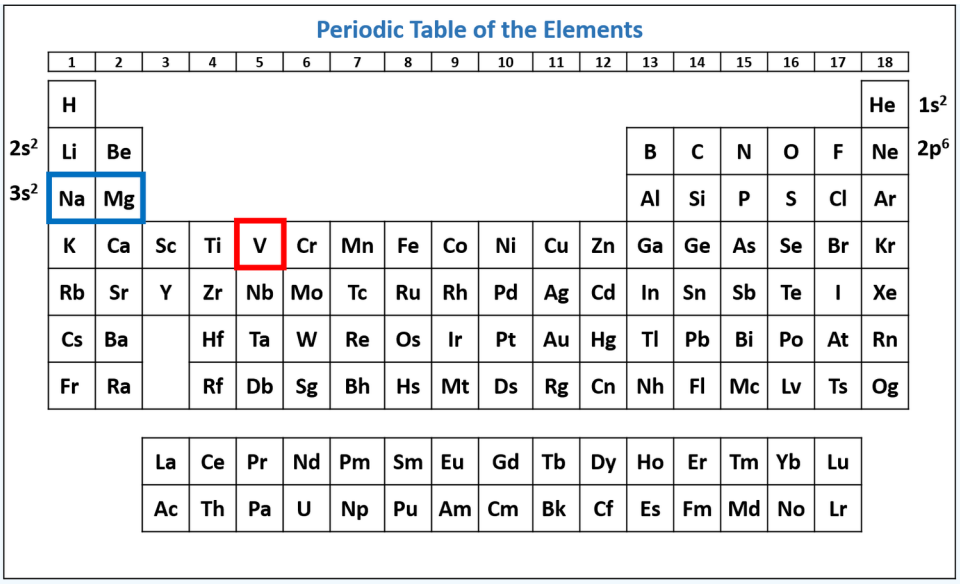


Figure 1.11.5: Periodic table of the elements with the $3s^2$ subshell highlighted. V has two electrons in the 3s subshell. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

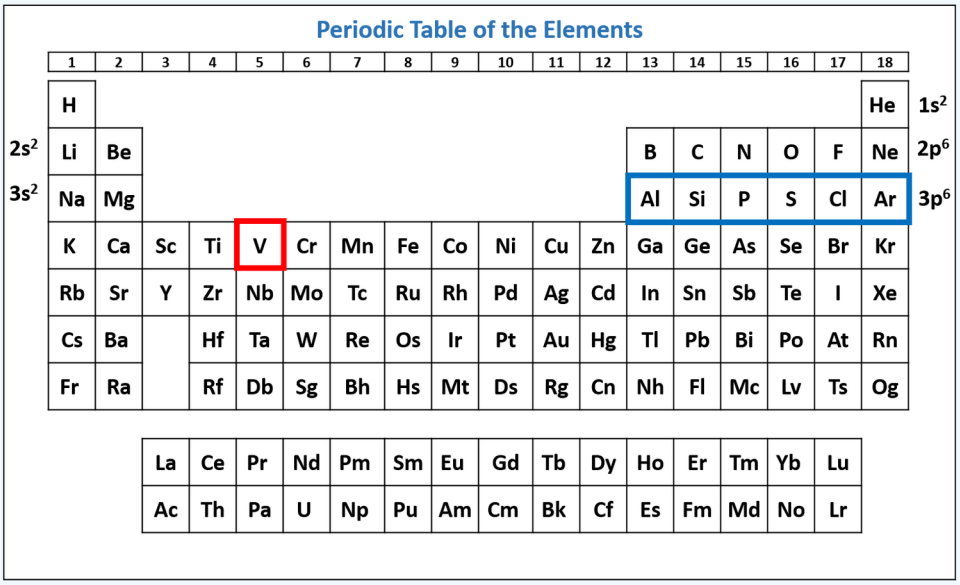


Figure 1.11.6: Periodic table of the elements with the $3p^6$ subshell highlighted. V has six electrons in the 3p subshell. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

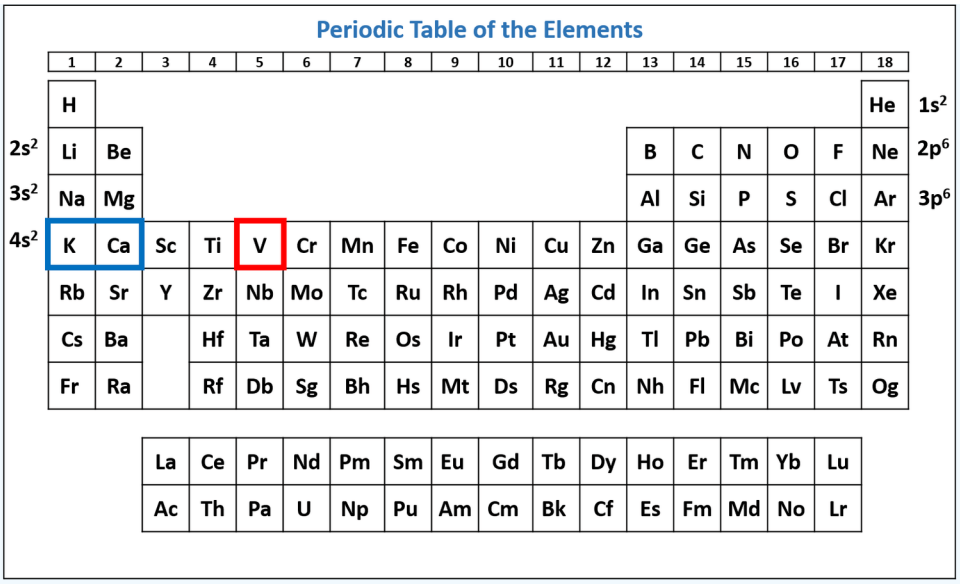


Figure 1.11.7: Periodic table of the elements with the $4s^2$ subshell highlighted. V has two electrons in the 4s subshell. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

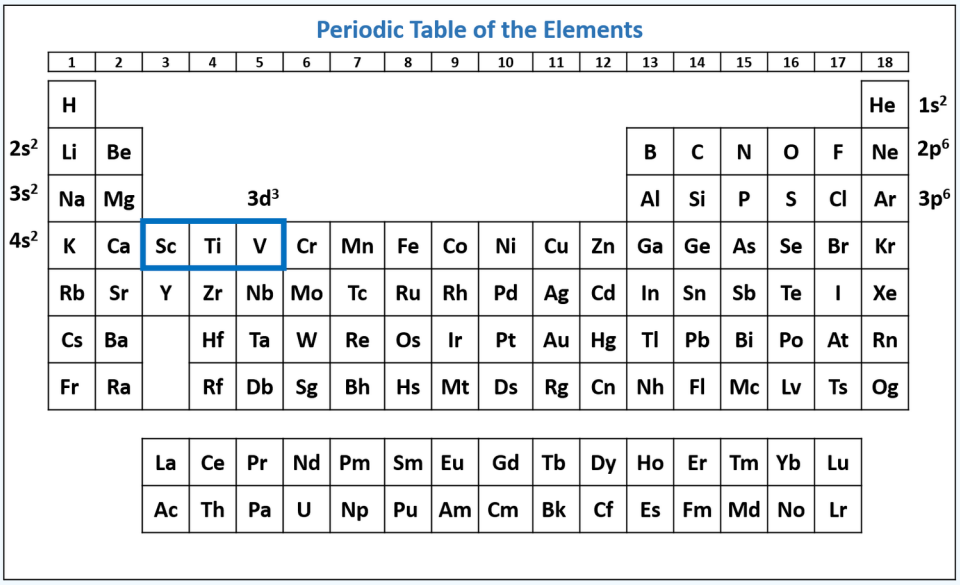


Figure 1.11.8: Periodic table of the elements with the $3d^3$ subshell highlighted. V has three electrons in the 3d subshell. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

3. Combine the list into a single electron configuration. V's electron configuration is $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^3$ or [Ar] $4s^2\ 3d^3$

Example 1.11.2

Write the ground state electron configuration for osmium (Os).

Solution

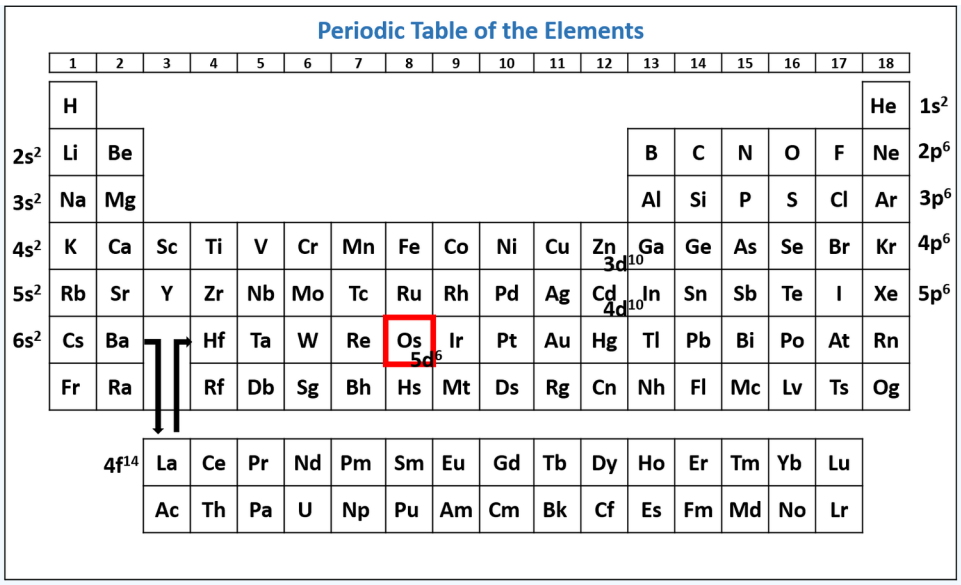


Figure 1.11.9: Periodic table of the elements showing the construction of the electron configuration of osmium (Os). (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

Exceptions to Expected Electron Configurations

There are some exceptions to the order of filling of orbitals that is shown in Figure 1.6.1. For example, the electron configurations of the transition metals chromium (Cr) and copper (Cu), are not those we would expect. Rather, Cr and Cu take on half-filled and fully-filled 3d configurations.

The electron configuration of chromium (Cr) includes a half-filled 3d subshell.

Cr: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^{\mathbf{1}}\ 3d^{\mathbf{5}}$

The electron configuration of copper (Cu) includes a fully-filled 3d subshell.

Cu: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^{\mathbf{1}}\ 3d^{\mathbf{10}}$

The actual electron configuration of these elements may be rationalized in terms of an added stability associated with a half-filled (ns^1, np^3, nd^5, nf^7) or filled (ns^2, np^6, nd^{10}, nf^{14}) subshell. In fact, this "special stability" is really another consequence of the *instability* caused by pairing an electron with another in the same orbital. (There are repulsive forces between two electrons in the same orbital.) Recall the small differences in energy between higher energy subshells. In the case of Cr, the repulsive forces between two electrons in the 4s would be greater than the energy gained by shifting an electron into the 3d. Thus, the added stability is enough to shift an electron from one orbital to another. In the case of Cu, the repulsive forces between two electrons in the 4s orbital is greater than between two electrons paired in a 3d orbital so one electron is shifted from the 4s to the 3d. In heavier elements, other more complex effects can also be important and lead to many additional anomalies. For example, cerium has an electron configuration of $[Xe]6s^2 4f^1 5d^1$, which is impossible to rationalize in simple terms. In most cases, however, these apparent anomalies do not have important chemical consequences. Figure 1.11.10 indicates which elements have a non-standard configuration.

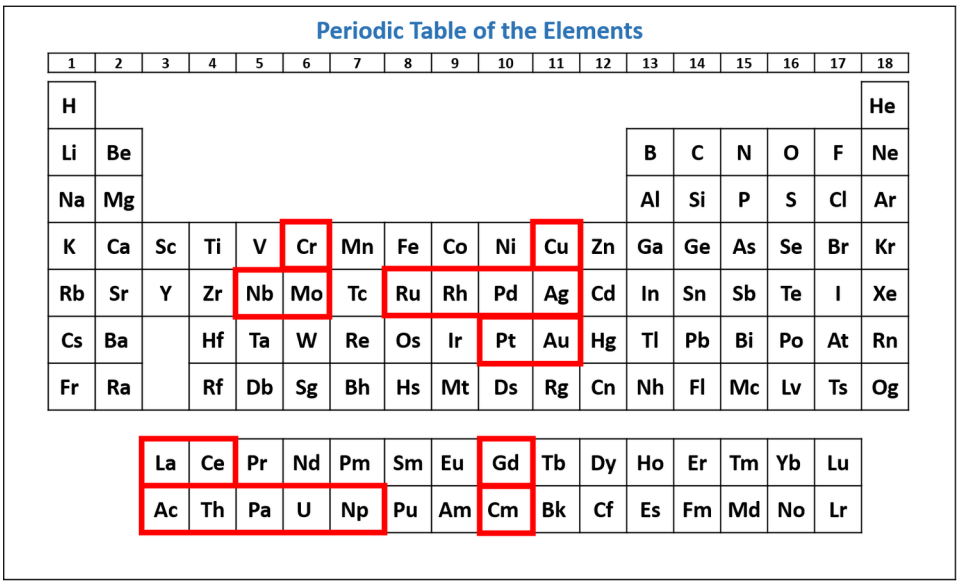


Figure 1.11.10: Periodic table of the elements. The highlighted elements have a non-standard electron configuration. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn A. Newton)

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electron Configuration of Transition Metals: Electron Configuration of Transition Metals, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Electron Configurations of Transition Metal Ions

Transition metal elements are unique in the sense that they can have multiple oxidation states. While negative oxidation states are possible for some transition metal elements, we will focus on the positive oxidation states, which are more common.

Writing an electron configuration for a transition metal ion starts with the same steps as writing the configuration of an s- or p-block cation: Write the electron configuration for the neutral atom and then determine the number of electrons that are lost to form the cation. The electrons will be removed from the highest energy shell in the neutral configuration. This means that electrons will be removed from the 4s subshell before any electrons are removed from the 3d subshell, and similarly electrons will be removed from the 5s subshell before they are removed from the 4d subshell. If the highest energy s subshell is empty, then additional electrons will be removed from the highest energy d subshell.

Example 1.11.3

Write an electron configuration for V^{4+}.

Solution

1. Write the configuration of the neutral atom. V: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^3$
2. Determine how many electrons were lost. V^{4+} was formed by the loss of four electrons.

3. Remove electrons from the highest shell, starting with the highest energy subshell.

   V^{+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^{\mathbf{1}}\ 3d^3$

   V^{2+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^{\mathbf{0}}\ 3d^3$

   V^{3+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^{\mathbf{0}}\ 3d^{\mathbf{2}}$

   V^{4+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^{\mathbf{0}}\ 3d^{\mathbf{1}}$, which is typically written as $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 3d^{\mathbf{1}}$ or [Ar] $3d^1$

Problems

Exercise 1.11.1

Write the expanded and shortened ground state electron configuration for nickel (Ni).

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.11.2

Write the expanded and shortened ground state electron configuration for rhodium (Rh).

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.11.3

Write the ground state electron configuration for Ni^{2+}.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.11.4

Write the ground state electron configuration for Rh^{3+}.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.11.1

Osmium is stable with oxidation states of +2, +3, +4, and +8. Write the electron configuration for Os^{2+} and Os^{3+}.

Answer available at the end of this section.

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph. Harwood, William. Herring, Geoffrey. Madura, Jeffery. *General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications, 9th Edition*. Pearson Education, Inc. New Jersey, 2007.
2. Hein, et al. Introduction to General, Organic, and Biochemistry. 9th ed. Hoboken, NJ 2009.

Contributors

- Liza Chu (UCD)

Answers

Exercise 1.11.1

Expanded: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^8$

Noble Gas: [Ar] $4s^2\ 3d^8$

Exercise 1.11.2

Expanded: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6\ 5s^2\ 4d^7$

Noble Gas: [Kr] $5s^2\ 4d^7$

Exercise 1.11.3

Neutral Ni: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^8$

Ni^{2+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 3d^8$ or [Ar] $3d^8$

Exercise 1.11.4

Neutral Rh: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6\ 5s^2\ 4d^7$

Rh^{3+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6\ 4d^6$ or [Kr] $4d^6$

Exercise 1.11.1

Neutral Os: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6\ 5s^2\ 4d^{10}\ 5p^6\ 6s^2\ 4f^{14}\ 5d^6$

Os^{2+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6\ 5s^2\ 4d^{10}\ 5p^6\ \mathbf{6s^0}\ 4f^{14}\ 5d^6$ or [Xe] $4f^{14}\ 5d^6$

Os^{3+}: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^6\ 5s^2\ 4d^{10}\ 5p^6\ \mathbf{6s^0}\ 4f^{14}\ 5d^{\mathbf{5}}$ or [Xe] $4f^{14}\ 5d^{\mathbf{5}}$

This page titled 1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Kathryn A. Newton, Northern Michigan University.

- 2.2.3: Aufbau Principle by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.
- 6.8: Electron Configurations is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.
- Electron Configuration of Transition Metals is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.12: Magnetic Properties

Learning Objectives

- To predict the magnetic properties of atoms and molecules based on their electronic configurations.

The magnetic moment of a system measures the strength and the direction of its magnetism. The term itself usually refers to the magnetic dipole moment. Anything that is magnetic, like a bar magnet or a loop of electric current, has a magnetic moment. A magnetic moment is a vector quantity, with a magnitude and a direction. An electron has an electron magnetic dipole moment, generated by the electron's intrinsic spin property, making it an electric charge in motion. There are many different magnetic forms: including paramagnetism, and diamagnetism, ferromagnetism, and anti-ferromagnetism. Only paramagnetism, and diamagnetism are discussed here.

Paramagnetism

Paramagnetism refers to the magnetic state of an atom with one or more unpaired electrons. The unpaired electrons are attracted by a magnetic field due to the electrons' magnetic dipole moments. Hund's Rule states that electrons must occupy every orbital singly before any orbital is doubly occupied. This may leave the atom with many unpaired electrons. Because unpaired electrons can orient in either direction, they exhibit magnetic moments that can align with a magnet. This capability allows paramagnetic atoms to be attracted to magnetic fields. Diatomic oxygen, O_2 is a good example of paramagnetism (that is best understood with molecular orbital theory). The following video shows liquid oxygen attracted into a magnetic field created by a strong magnet:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video $1.12.1$***:*** *A chemical demonstration of the paramagnetism of molecular oxygen, as shown by the attraction of liquid oxygen to magnets.*

As shown in Video $1.12.1$, since molecular oxygen (O_2 is paramagnetic, it is attracted to the magnet. In contrast, molecular nitrogen, N_2, has no unpaired electrons and it is diamagnetic (discussed below); it is therefore unaffected by the magnet.

Note

Paramagnetism is a form of magnetism whereby materials are **attracted** by an externally applied magnetic field.

There are some exceptions to the paramagnetism rule; these concern some transition metals, in which the unpaired electron is not in a d-orbital. Examples of these metals include Sc^{3+}, Ti^{4+}, Zn^{2+}, and Cu^{+}. These metals are the not defined as paramagnetic: they are considered diamagnetic because all d-electrons are paired. Paramagnetic compounds sometimes display bulk magnetic properties due to the clustering of the metal atoms. This phenomenon is known as ferromagnetism, but this property is not discussed here.

Diamagnetism

Diamagnetic substances are characterized by paired electrons—except in the previously-discussed case of transition metals,

there are no unpaired electrons. According to the Pauli Exclusion Principle which states that no two identical electrons may take up the same quantum state at the same time, the electron spins are oriented in opposite directions. This causes the magnetic fields of the electrons to cancel out; thus there is no net magnetic moment, and the atom cannot be attracted into a magnetic field. In fact, diamagnetic substances are weakly ***repelled*** by a magnetic field as demonstrated with the pyrolytic carbon sheet in Figure 1.12.1.

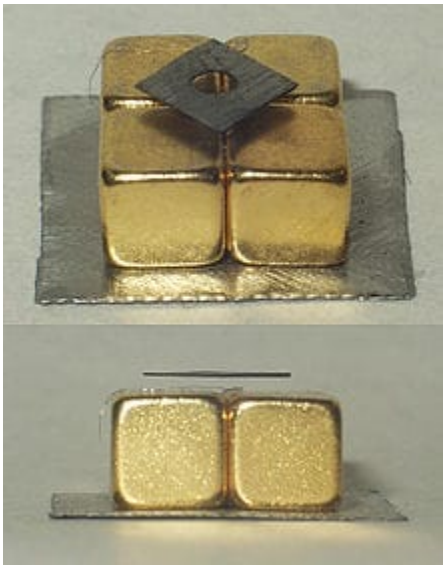


Figure 1.12.1: Levitating pyrolytic carbon: A small (~6 mm) piece of pyrolytic graphite levitating over a permanent neodymium magnet array (5 mm cubes on a piece of steel). Note that the poles of the magnets are aligned vertically and alternate (two with north facing up, and two with south facing up, diagonally). from Wikipedia.

Note

Diamagnetic materials are **repelled** by the applied magnetic field.

Diamagnetism, to a greater or lesser degree, is a property of all materials and always makes a weak contribution to the material's response to a magnetic field. For materials that show some other form of magnetism (such paramagntism), the diamagnetic contribution becomes negligible.

How to tell if a substance is paramagnetic or diamagnetic

The magnetic form of a substance can be determined by examining its electron configuration: if it shows unpaired electrons, then the substance is paramagnetic; if all electrons are paired, the substance is diamagnetic. This process can be broken into four steps:

1. Find the electron configuration
2. Draw the valence orbitals
3. Look for unpaired electrons
4. Determine whether the substance is paramagnetic (one or more electrons unpaired) or diamagnetic (all electrons paired)

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Determining Magnetic Properties from Orbital Diagrams: https://youtu.be/lun_w5VKD8k

Example 1.12.1: Chlorine atoms

Are chlorine atoms paramagnetic or diamagnetic?

Solution

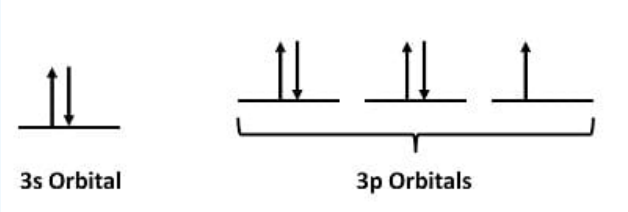
Follow the four steps outlines above.

Step 1: Find the electron configuration

For Cl atoms, the electron configuration is $3s^2 3p^5$

Step 2: Draw the valence orbitals

Ignore the core electrons and focus on the valence electrons only.



Step 3: Look for unpaired electrons

There is one unpaired electron.

Step 4: Determine whether the substance is paramagnetic or diamagnetic

Since there is an unpaired electron, Cl atoms are paramagnetic (but weakly since only one electron is unpaired).

Exercise 1.12.1

Indicate whether boron atoms are paramagnetic or diamagnetic.

Answer:

The B atom has $2s^2 2p^1$ as the electron configuration. Because it has one unpaired electron, it is paramagnetic.

Example 1.12.2: Zinc Atoms

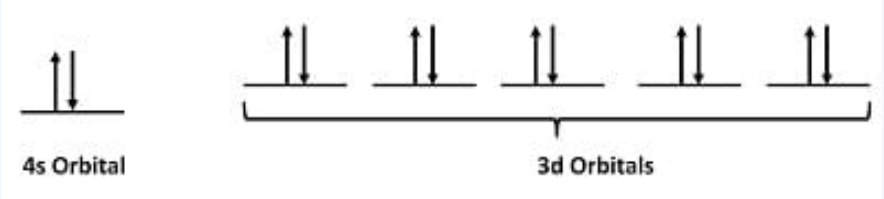
Are zinc atoms paramagnetic or diamagnetic?

Solution

Step 1: Find the electron configuration

For Zn atoms, the electron configuration is $4s^2 3d^{10}$

Step 2: Draw the valence orbitals



Step 3: Look for unpaired electrons

There are no unpaired electrons.

Step 4: Determine whether the substance is paramagnetic or diamagnetic

Because there are no unpaired electrons, Zn atoms are diamagnetic.

Exercise 1.12.2

Indicate whether F^- ions are paramagnetic or diamagnetic.

Answer

The F^- ion has $2s^2 2p^6$ has the electron configuration. Because it has no unpaired electrons, it is diamagnetic.

Problems

1. How many unpaired electrons are found in oxygen atoms ?
2. How many unpaired electrons are found in bromine atoms?
3. Indicate whether Fe^{2+} ions are paramagnetic or diamagnetic.

Answers

1. The O atom has $2s^2 2p^4$ as the electron configuration. Therefore, O has 2 unpaired electrons.
2. The Br atom has $4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^5$ as the electron configuration. Therefore, Br has 1 unpaired electron.
3. The Fe^{2+} ion has $3d^6$ has the electron configuration. Because it has 4 unpaired electrons, it is paramagnetic.

References

1. Pettrucci, Ralph H. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. 9th. Upper Saddle River: Pearson Prentice Hall, 2007

2. Sherman, Alan, Sharon J. Sherman, and Leonard Russikoff. Basic Concepts of Chemistry Fifth Edition. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1992. Print.

This page titled 1.12: Magnetic Properties is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 9.6: Magnetic Properties is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

Learning Objectives

- To understand the basics of electron shielding and penetration

For an atom or an ion with only a single electron, we can calculate the potential energy by considering only the electrostatic attraction between the positively charged nucleus and the negatively charged electron. When more than one electron is present, however, the total energy of the atom or the ion depends not only on attractive electron-nucleus interactions but also on repulsive electron-electron interactions. When there are two electrons, the repulsive interactions depend on the positions of *both* electrons at a given instant, but because we cannot specify the exact positions of the electrons, it is impossible to exactly calculate the repulsive interactions. Consequently, we must use approximate methods to deal with the effect of electron-electron repulsions on orbital energies. These effects are the underlying basis for the periodic trends in elemental properties that we will explore in this chapter.

Electron Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

If an electron is far from the nucleus (i.e., if the distance r between the nucleus and the electron is large), then at any given moment, many of the other electrons will be *between* that electron and the nucleus (Figure $1.13.1$). Hence the electrons will cancel a portion of the positive charge of the nucleus and thereby decrease the attractive interaction between it and the electron farther away. As a result, the electron farther away experiences an effective nuclear charge (Z_{eff}) that is less than the actual nuclear charge Z. This effect is called **electron shielding**.

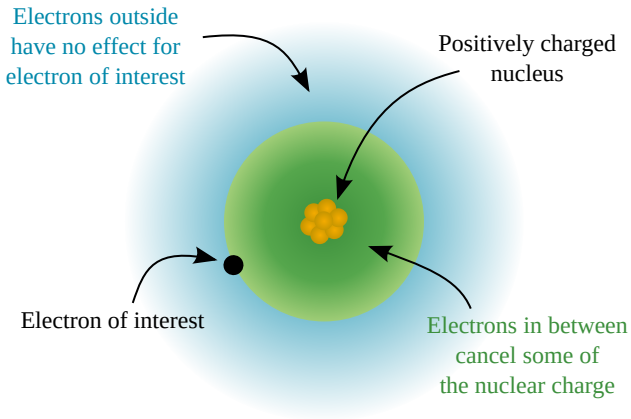


Figure $1.13.1$: This image shows how inner electrons can shield outer electrons from the nuclear charge. (CC BY-SA 3.0; NikNaks via Wikipedia).

As the distance between an electron and the nucleus approaches infinity, Z_{eff} approaches a value of 1 because all the other ($Z-1$) electrons in the neutral atom are, on the average, between it and the nucleus. If, on the other hand, an electron is very close to the nucleus, then at any given moment most of the other electrons are farther from the nucleus and do not shield the nuclear charge. At $r \approx 0$, the positive charge experienced by an electron is approximately the full nuclear charge, or $Z_{eff} \approx Z$. At intermediate values of r, the effective nuclear charge is somewhere between 1 and Z:

$$1 \leq Z_{eff} \leq Z.$$

Notice that $Z_{eff} = Z$ only for hydrogen (Figure 1.13.2).

Definition: Shielding

Shielding refers to the core electrons repelling the outer electrons, which lowers the effective charge of the nucleus on the outer electrons. Hence, the nucleus has "less grip" on the outer electrons insofar as it is shielded from them.

Z_{eff} can be calculated by subtracting the magnitude of shielding from the total nuclear charge and the effective nuclear charge of an atom is given by the equation:

$$Z_{eff} = Z - S \tag{1.13.1}$$

where Z is the atomic number (number of protons in nucleus) and S is the shielding constant and is approximated by number of electrons between the nucleus and the electron in question (*the number of nonvalence electrons*). The value of Z_{eff} will provide information on how much of a charge an electron actually experiences.

We can see from Equation 1.13.1 that the effective nuclear charge of an atom increases as the number of protons in an atom increases (Figure 1.13.2). As we will discuss later on in the chapter, this phenomenon can explain the decrease in atomic radii we see as we go across the periodic table as electrons are held closer to the nucleus due to increase in number of protons and increase in effective nuclear charge.

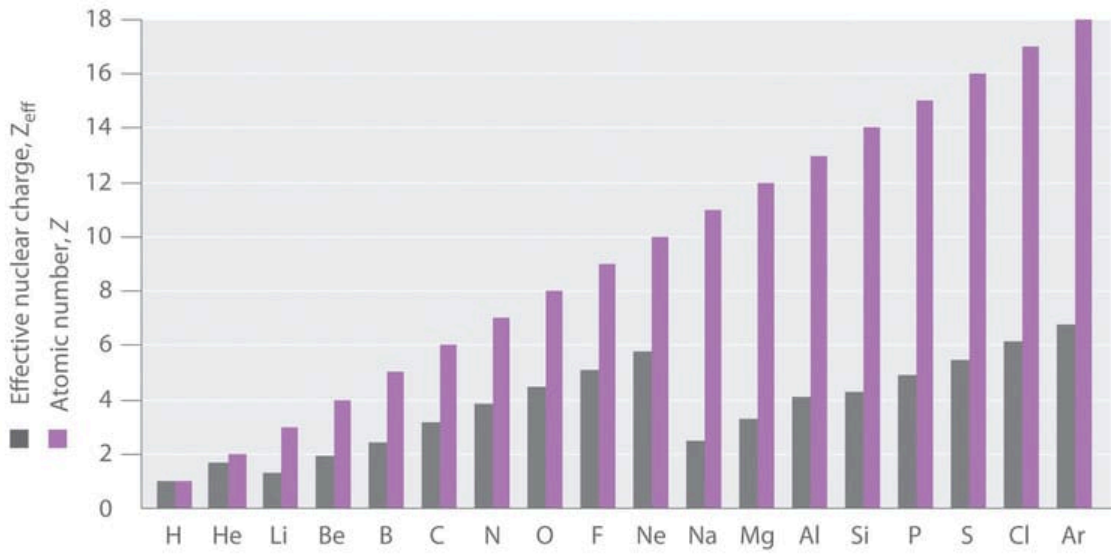


Figure 1.13.2: Relationship between the Effective Nuclear Charge Z_{eff} and the Atomic Number Z for the Outer Electrons of the Elements of the First Three Rows of the (CC BY-SA-NC 3.0; anonynous)

The shielding constant can be estimated by totaling the screening by **all nonvalence electrons** (n) except the one in question.

$$S = \sum_{i}^{n-1} S_i \tag{1.13.2}$$

where S_i is the shielding of the ith electron.

> Electrons that are shielded from the full charge of the nucleus experience an *effective nuclear charge* (Z_{eff}) of the nucleus, which is some degree less than the full nuclear charge an electron would feel in a hydrogen atom or hydrogenlike ion.

From Equations 1.13.1 and 1.13.2, Z_{eff} for a specific electron can be estimated is the shielding constants for that electron of all other electrons in species is known. A simple approximation is that all other non-valence electrons shield equally and fully:

$$S_i = 1 \tag{1.13.3}$$

This crude approximation is demonstrated in Example 1.13.1.

Example 1.13.1: Fluorine, Neon, and Sodium

What is the effective attraction Z_{eff} experienced by the valence electrons in the three isoelectronic species: the fluorine anion, the neutral neon atom, and sodium cation?

Solution

Each species has 10 electrons, and the number of nonvalence electrons is 2 (10 total electrons - 8 valence), but the effective nuclear charge varies because each has a different atomic number A. This is an application of Equations 1.13.1 and 1.13.2. We use the simple assumption that all electrons shield equally and fully the valence electrons (Equation 1.13.3).

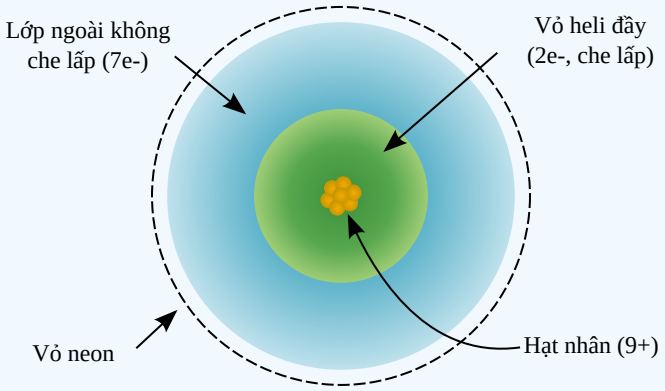


Diagram of a fluorine atom showing the extent of effective nuclear charge. (CC BY-SA 3.0; NikNaks via Wikipedia).

The charge Z of the nucleus of a fluorine atom is 9, but the valence electrons are screened appreciably by the core electrons (four electrons from the 1s and 2s orbitals) and partially by the 7 electrons in the 2p orbitals.

- $Z_{\text{eff}}(\text{F}^-) = 9 - 2 = 7+$
- $Z_{\text{eff}}(\text{Ne}) = 10 - 2 = 8+$
- $Z_{\text{eff}}(\text{Na}^+) = 11 - 2 = 9+$

So the sodium cation has the greatest effective nuclear charge. This also suggests that Na^+ has the smallest radius of these species and that is correct.

Exercise 1.13.1: Magnesium Species

What is the effective attraction Z_{eff} experienced by the valence electrons in the magnesium anion, the neutral magnesium atom, and magnesium cation? Use the simple approximation for shielding constants. Compare your result for the magnesium atom to the more accurate value in Figure 1.13.2 and proposed an origin for the difference.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Electron Penetration

The approximation in Equation 1.13.3 is a good first order description of electron shielding, but the actual Z_{eff} experienced by an electron in a given orbital depends not only on the spatial distribution of the electron in that orbital but also on the distribution of all the other electrons present. This leads to large differences in Z_{eff} for different elements, as shown in Figure 1.13.2 for the elements of the first three rows of the periodic table.

Penetration describes the proximity to which an electron can approach to the nucleus. In a multi-electron system, electron penetration is defined by an electron's relative electron density (probability density) near the nucleus of an atom (Figure 1.13.3).

Electrons in different orbitals have different electron densities around the nucleus. In other words, penetration depends on the shell (n) and subshell (l).

For example, a 1s electron (Figure $1.13.3$; purple curve) has greater electron density near the nucleus than a 2p electron (Figure $1.13.3$; red curve) and has a greater penetration. This related to the shielding constants since the 1s electrons are closer to the nucleus than a 2p electron, hence the 1s screens a 2p electron almost perfectly ($S = 1$. However, the 2s electron has a lower shielding constant ($S < 1$ because it can penetrate close to the nucleus in the small area of electron density within the first spherical node (Figure $1.13.3$; green curve). In this way the 2s electron can "avoid" some of the shielding effect of the inner 1s electron.

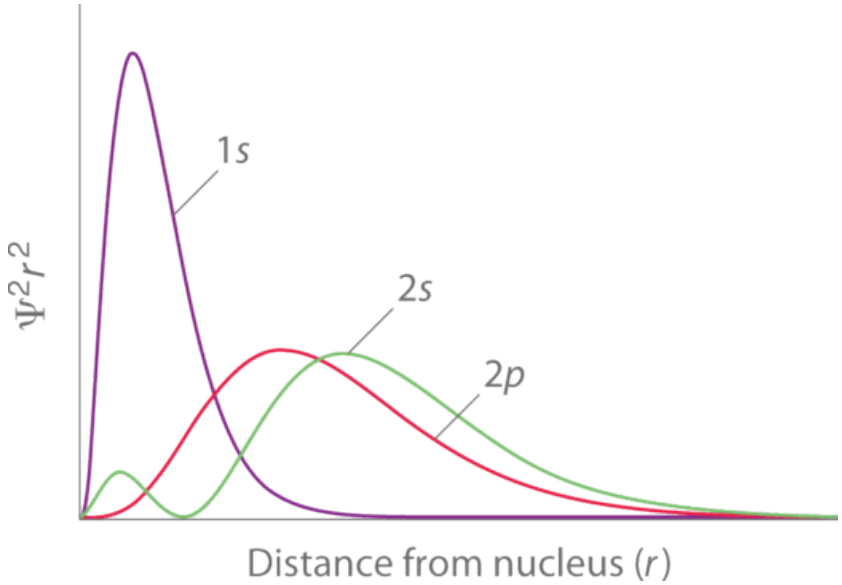


Figure $1.13.3$: Orbital Penetration. A comparison of the radial probability distribution of the 2*s* and 2*p* orbitals for various states of the hydrogen atom shows that the 2*s* orbital penetrates inside the 1*s* orbital more than the 2*p* orbital does. Consequently, when an electron is in the small inner lobe of the 2*s* orbital, it experiences a relatively large value of Z_{eff}, which causes the energy of the 2*s* orbital to be lower than the energy of the 2*p* orbital. (CC BY-NC-SA 3.0; Anonymous)

For the same shell value (n) the penetrating power of an electron follows this trend in subshells (Figure $1.13.3$):

$$s > p > d \approx f. \tag{1.13.4}$$

for different values of shell (n) and subshell (l), penetrating power of an electron follows this trend:

$$1\text{s} > 2\text{s} > 2\text{p} > 3\text{s} > 3\text{p} > 4\text{s} > 3\text{d} > 4\text{p} > 5\text{s} > 4\text{d} > 5\text{p} > 6\text{s} > 4\text{f} \ \ldots \tag{1.13.5}$$

Definition: Penetration

Penetration describes the proximity of electrons in an orbital to the nucleus. Electrons that have greater penetration can get closer to the nucleus and effectively block out the charge from electrons that have less proximity.

Table $1.13.1$: Effective Nuclear Charges for Selected Atoms

Atom	Sublevel	Z	Z_{eff}
H	1s	1	1
He	1s	2	1.69
Li	1s, 2s	3	2.69, 1.28
Be	1s, 2s	4	3.68, 1.91
B	1s, 2s, 2p	5	4.68, 2.58, 2.42

Atom	Sublevel	Z	Z_{eff}
F	1s, 2s, 2p	9	8.65, 5.13, 5.10
Na	1s, 2s, 2p, 3s	11	10.63, 6.57, 6.80, 2.51

Data from E. Clementi and D. L. Raimondi; The Journal of Chemical Physics 38, 2686 (1963).

Because of the effects of shielding and the different radial distributions of orbitals with the same value of *n* but different values of *l*, the different subshells are not degenerate in a multielectron atom. For a given value of *n*, the *ns* orbital is always lower in energy than the *np* orbitals, which are lower in energy than the *nd* orbitals, and so forth. As a result, some subshells with higher principal quantum numbers are actually lower in energy than subshells with a lower value of *n*; for example, the 4s orbital is lower in energy than the 3*d* orbitals for most atoms.

A Better Estimation of Shielding: Slater Rules

The concepts of electron shielding, orbital penetration and effective nuclear charge were introduced above, but we did so in a qualitative manner (e.g., Equations 1.13.4 and 1.13.5). A more accurate model for estimating electron shielding and corresponding effective nuclear charge experienced is Slater's Rules. However, the application of these rules is outside the scope of this text.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Zeff and Electron Shielding: Zeff and Electron Shielding(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

The calculation of orbital energies in atoms or ions with more than one electron (multielectron atoms or ions) is complicated by repulsive interactions between the electrons. The concept of **electron shielding**, in which intervening electrons act to reduce the positive nuclear charge experienced by an electron, allows the use of hydrogen-like orbitals and an **effective nuclear charge** (Z_{eff}) to describe electron distributions in more complex atoms or ions. The degree to which orbitals with different values of *l* and the same value of *n* overlap or penetrate filled inner shells results in slightly different energies for different subshells in the same principal shell in most atoms.

Answers

Exercise 1.13.1**: Magnesium Species**

- $Z_{\text{eff}}(\text{Mg}^{-}) = 12 - 10 = 2+$
- $Z_{\text{eff}}(\text{Mg}) = 12 - 10 = 2+$
- $Z_{\text{eff}}(\text{Mg}^{+}) = 12 - 10 = 2+$

Remember that the simple approximations in Equations 1.13.2 and 1.13.3 suggest that valence electrons **do not shield** other valence electrons. Therefore, each of these species has the same number of non-valence electrons and Equation 1.13.1 suggests the effective charge on each valence electron is identical for each of the three species.

This is not correct and a more complex model is needed to predict the experimental observed Z_{eff} value. The ability of valence electrons to shield other valence electrons or in partial amounts (e.g., $S_i \neq 1$) is in violation of Equations 1.13.2 and 1.13.3. That fact that these approximations are poor is suggested by the experimental Z_{eff} value shown in Figure 1.13.2 for Mg of 3.2+. This is appreciably larger than the +2 estimated above, which means these simple approximations overestimate the total shielding constant S. A more sophisticated model is needed.

This page titled 1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 7.2: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/principles-of-general-chemistry-v1.0/s10-05-atomic-orbitals-and-their-ener.html.

1.14: Slater's Rules

Estimated Time to Read: 7 min

We have previously described the concepts of electron shielding, orbital penetration and effective nuclear charge, but we did so in a qualitative manner. In this section, we explore one model for quantitatively estimating electron shielding and calculating the effective nuclear charge experienced by an electron in an atom. The model we will use is known as Slater's Rules (J.C. Slater, *Phys Rev* **1930**, *36*, 57).

Effective Nuclear Charge

The effective nuclear charge Z_{eff} is less than the actual nuclear charge (Z) because of the repulsive interaction between core and valence electrons. We can quantitatively represent this difference between Z and Z_{eff} as follows:

Equation $1.14.1$

$$S = Z - Z_{eff} \tag{1.14.1}$$

Rearranging this formula to solve for Z_{eff} we obtain Equation $1.14.1$

$$Z_{eff} = Z - S \tag{1.14.2}$$

The shielding constant S is estimated using Slater's Rules. Then the shielding constant is substituted into Equation $1.14.2$ to calculate an estimate of Z_{eff} for the corresponding atomic electron.

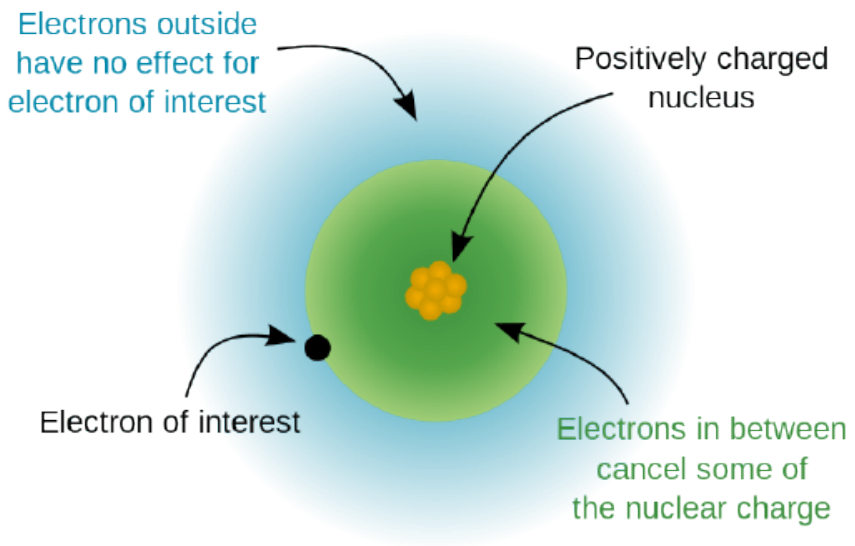


Figure 1.14.1: Shielding by electrons closer to the nucleus results in a lower effective nuclear charge. (Copyright; author via source)

Slater's Rules

Shielding is calculated for an electron-of-interest. Shielding occurs when "other" electrons in lower energy shells (or the same energy shell) provide a repulsive force to an electron-of-interest in a higher energy shell. The repulsive force negates some of the attractive force from the positive nucleus on the electron-of-interest. The "other" electrons in the same shell as the electron-of-interest shield least effectively, while those closest to the nucleus shield the most effectively. Slater's rules specify the degree of shielding for each inner shell electron and are used to calculate the overall shielding experienced by an electron in an s-, p-, d-, or f- orbital.

The shielding numbers in Table 1.14.1 were derived semi-empirically (i.e., derived from experiments) as opposed to theoretical calculations. This is because quantum mechanics makes calculating shielding effects quite difficult and outside the scope of this text.

Slater's Rules estimate effective nuclear charge for an electron-of-interest based on how many other electrons exist in the atom and on the location of the electron-of-interest. In the calculation of the shielding constant S, it is assumed that electrons closer to the nucleus than the electron-of-interest cancel some of the nuclear charge; those farther from the nucleus have no effect. For an electron-of-interest in an s or p orbital, electrons in the same shell (with the same principle quantum number *n*)will shield the electron-of-interest 0.35 units. *Conceptually, this means electrons in the same shell shield each other 35%.* Electrons in the lower energy shell *n-1* contribute 0.85 to S. All the electrons in even lower shells contribute 1.00 to S. *Conceptually, this means that s and p electrons are shielded 85% by the electrons one shell lower, and 100% by all electrons in shells n - 2 or lower.* For an electron-of-interest in a d or f orbital, all electrons in the same shell (with the same principle quantum number *n*) and subshell (with the same angular momentum quantum number *l*) will shield the electron-of-interest 0.35 units. All other electrons contribute 1.00 to S. *Conceptually, this means that electrons in the same subshell shield each other 35%, and all other electrons shield 100%.* Note: The shielding constant S of a 1s electron is just S=0.3, no matter the element.

Table 1.14.1: Shielding values for electrons in inner orbitals based on their principle and angular moment quantum numbers relative to the orbital-of-interest.

Orbital of Electron-of-Interest	*n* and *l*	*n* and *l-1*	*n* and *l-2*	*n-1*	*n-2, n-3, etc.*
1s	0.30	-	-	-	-
ns, np	0.35	0.35	-	0.85	1.0
nd, nf	0.35	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

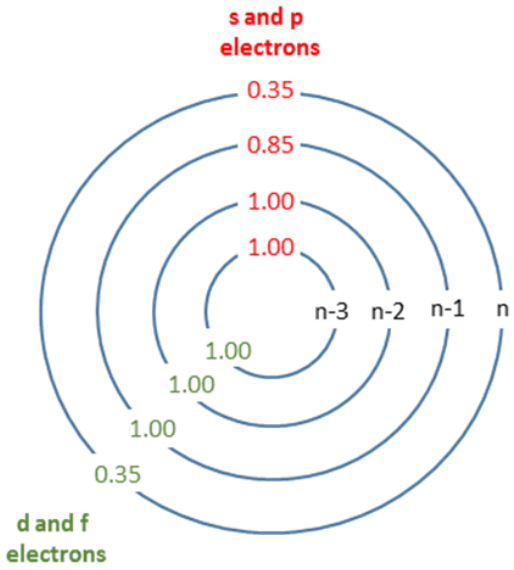


Figure 1.14.2: Graphical depiction of Slater's rules with shielding constants indicated. (CC-BY-NC-SA, Brett McCollum)

Calculating Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

Steps to Calculate Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

1. Write the electron configuration of the atom with orbitals arranged by increasing principle quantum number *n*, as shown here:

(1s) (2s, 2p) (3s, 3p) (3d) (4s, 4p) (4d) (4f) (5s, 5p) . . .

2. Identify the electron of interest, and ignore all electrons that are higher in energy (to the right in the list). Higher energy electrons do not shield lower energy electrons.
3. Identify the principle quantum number *n* and angular momentum quantum number *l* of the electron-of-interest.
4. Assign shielding values to all other electrons that are lower in energy (to the right in the list).
   a. When the electron-of-interest is in a 1s orbital, the other electrons shield **0.30**.
   b. When the electron of interest is in a *ns* or *np* orbital
      - electrons in the same orbital shield **0.35**
      - electrons with *n* and *l-1* shield **0.35**
      - electrons with *n-1* shield **0.85**
      - all other electrons shield **1.00**
   c. When the electron-of-interest is in a *nd* or *nf* orbital
      - electrons in the same orbital shield **0.35**
      - all other electrons shield **1.00**
5. Sum the contributions of all electrons (except the electron-of-interest) to obtain the shielding constant S from the shielding values assigned to each electron, S_i.

   Equation 1.14.3

$$S = \sum n_i S_i \tag{1.14.3}$$

6. Subtract the shielding constant S from the nuclear charge Z to obtain the effective nuclear charge, as shown in Equation 1.14.2

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 1.14.1: Shielding of a 2*p* Electron on Nitrogen

What is the shielding constant experienced by a 2*p* electron in the nitrogen atom? What is the effective nuclear charge experienced by this electron?

Strategy:

1. Determine the electron configuration of nitrogen, then write it in the appropriate form.
2. Use the appropriate Slater Rules to calculate the shielding constant for the electron.
3. Subtract the shielding contant from the nuclear charge to find the effective nuclear charge.

Solution:

N: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^3$

N: $(1s^2)(2s^2,2p^3)$

From Table 1.14.1:

- There are four 2s and 2p electrons that shield the 2p electron-of-interest equally at 0.35 units. The electron of interest does not shield itself!
- There are two 1s electrons that shield the 2p electron-of-interest at 0.85 units.

$$S[2p] = \underbrace{0.35(4)}_{\text{the 2s and 2p electrons}} + \underbrace{0.85(2)}_{\text{the 1s electrons}} = 3.10$$

For N, Z = 7

$$Z_{eff} = 7 - 3.1 = 3.9 \tag{1.14.4}$$

Example 1.14.2: Shielding of a 3d Electron on Bromine

What is the shielding constant experienced by a 3*d* electron in the bromine atom? What is the effective nuclear charge experienced by this electron?

Strategy:

1. Determine the electron configuration of nitrogen, then write it in the appropriate form.
2. Use the appropriate Slater Rules to calculate the shielding constant for the electron.
3. Subtract the shielding contant from the nuclear charge to find the effective nuclear charge.

Solution:

Br: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}\ 4p^5$

Br: $(1s^2)(2s^2,2p^6)(3s^2,3p^6)(3d^{10})(4s^2,4p^5)$

Ignore the group to the right of the 3d electrons. These are in higher energy orbtials and do not contribute to the shielding constant.

From Table 1.14.1:

- There are nine 3d electrons that shield the 3d electron-of-interest equally at 0.35 units.
- There are eight 3s and 3p electrons that shield the 4d electron-of-interest equally at 1.00 units.
- There are eight 2s and 2p electrons that shield the 4d electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.
- There are two 1s electrons that shield the 4p electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.

$$S[3d] = \underbrace{0.35(9)}_{\text{the 3d electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(8)}_{\text{the 3s and 3p electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(8)}_{\text{the 2s and 2p electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(2)}_{\text{the 1s electrons}} = 21.15$$

For Br, Z = 35

$$Z_{eff} = 35 - 21.15 = 13.85 \tag{1.14.5}$$

Problems

Exercise 1.14.1: Shielding of a Valence Electron on Boron

What is the shielding constant experienced by a valence *p*-electron in the boron atom? What is the effective nuclear charge experienced by this electron?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.14.2: Shielding of a Valence Electron on Bromine

What is the shielding constant experienced by a valence *p*-electron in the bromine atom? What is the effective nuclear charge experienced by this electron?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.14.3: Shielding of a Valence Electron on Isoelectronic Species

What is the shielding constant experienced by the valence *p*-electrons in the three isoelectronic species: fluoride (F^-), neon (Ne), and sodium cation (Na^+)? What is the effective nuclear charge experienced by these electrons?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.14.4: Shielding of a 3d Electron on Copper

What is the shielding constant experienced by a valence *d*-electron in the copper atom?What is the effective nuclear charge experienced by this electron?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.14.5: Shielding of a 3*d* Electron on Zinc

What is the shielding constant experienced by a valence *d*-electron in the zinc atom? What is the effective nuclear charge experienced by this electron?

Answer available at the end of this section.

References

- James L. Reed, "The Genius of Slater's Rules" , J. Chem. Educ., 1999, 76 (6), p 802
- David Tudela, "Slater's rules and electron configurations", J. Chem. Educ., 1993, 70 (11), p 956
- Kimberley A. Waldron, Erin M. Fehringer, Amy E. Streeb, Jennifer E. Trosky and Joshua J. Pearson, "Screening Percentages Based on Slater Effective Nuclear Charge as a Versatile Tool for Teaching Periodic Trends", J. Chem. Educ., 2001, 78 (5), p 635

Answers

Exercise 1.14.1: Shielding of a Valence Electron on Boron

B: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^1$

B: $(1s^2)(2s^1)$

From Table 1.14.1:

- There are two 2s electrons that shield the 2p electron-of-interest equally at 0.35 units. The electron of interest does not shield itself!
- There are two 1s electrons that shield the 2p electron-of-interest at 0.85 units.

$$S[2p] = \underbrace{0.35(2)}_{\text{the 2s electrons}} + \underbrace{0.85(2)}_{\text{the 1s electrons}} = 2.40$$

For B, Z = 5

$$Z_{eff} = 5 - 2.4 = 2.6 \tag{1.14.6}$$

Exercise 1.14.2: Shielding of a Valence Electron on Bromine

Br: $(1s^2)(2s^2,2p^6)(3s^2,3p^6,3d^{10})(4s^2,4p^5)$

From Table 1.14.1:

- There are six 4s and 4p electrons that shield the 4p electron-of-interest equally at 0.35 units.
- There are 18 3s, 3p, and 3d electrons that shield the 4p electron-of-interest equally at 0.85 units.
- There are eight 2s and 2p electrons that shield the 4p electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.
- There are two 1s electrons that shield the 4p electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.

$$S[4p] = \underbrace{0.35(6)}_{\text{the 4s and 4p electrons}} + \underbrace{0.85(18)}_{\text{the 3s, 3p, and 3d electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(8)}_{\text{the 2s and 2p electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(2)}_{\text{the 1s electrons}} = 27.4$$

For Br, Z = 35

$$Z_{eff} = 35 - 27.4 = 7.6 \tag{1.14.7}$$

Exercise 1.14.3**: Shielding of a Valence Electron on Isoelectronic Species**

F^-, Ne, Na^+: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6$

F^-, Ne, Na^+:: $(1s^2)(2s^2,2p^6)$

From Table 1.14.1:

- There are five 2s and 2p electrons that shield the 2p electron-of-interest equally at 0.35 units.
- The electron of interest does not shield itself! There are two 1s electrons that shield the 2p electron-of-interest at 0.85 units.

$$S[2p] = \underbrace{0.35(6)}_{\text{the 2s and 2p electrons}} + \underbrace{0.85(2)}_{\text{the 1s electrons}} = 3.80$$

For F, Z = 9

$$Z_{eff} = 9 - 3.8 = 5.2 \tag{1.14.8}$$

For Ne, Z = 10

$$Z_{eff} = 10 - 3.8 = 6.2 \tag{1.14.9}$$

For Na, Z = 11

$$Z_{eff} = 11 - 3.8 = 7.2 \tag{1.14.10}$$

Exercise 1.14.4**: Shielding of a 3d Electron on Copper**

Cu: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^1\ 3d^{10}$

Cu: $(1s^2)(2s^2,2p^6)(3s^2,3p^6)(3d^{10})(4s^1)$

Ignore the group to the right of the 3d electrons. These are in higher energy orbtials and do not contribute to the shielding constant.

From Table 1.14.1

- There are nine 3d electrons that shield the 3d electron-of-interest equally at 0.35 units.
- There are eight 3s and 3p electrons that shield the 4d electron-of-interest equally at 1.00 units.
- There are eight 2s and 2p electrons that shield the 4d electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.
- There are two 1s electrons that shield the 4p electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.

$$S[3d] = \underbrace{0.35(9)}_{\text{the 3d electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(8)}_{\text{the 3s and 3p electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(8)}_{\text{the 2s and 2p electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(2)}_{\text{the 1s electrons}} = 21.15$$

For Cu, Z = 29

$$Z_{eff} = 29 - 21.15 = 7.85 \tag{1.14.11}$$

Exercise 1.14.5**: Shielding of a 3*d* Electron on Zinc**

Zn: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 4s^2\ 3d^{10}$

Zn: $(1s^2)(2s^2,2p^6)(3s^2,3p^6)(3d^{10})(4s^2)$

Ignore the group to the right of the 3d electrons. These are in higher energy orbtials and do not contribute to the shielding constant.

From Table 1.14.1

- There are nine 3d electrons that shield the 3d electron-of-interest equally at 0.35 units.
- There are eight 3s and 3p electrons that shield the 4d electron-of-interest equally at 1.00 units.
- There are eight 2s and 2p electrons that shield the 4d electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.
- There are two 1s electrons that shield the 4p electron-of-interest at 1.00 units.

$$S[3d] = \underbrace{0.35(9)}_{\text{the 3d electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(8)}_{\text{the 3s and 3p electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(8)}_{\text{the 2s and 2p electrons}} + \underbrace{1.00(2)}_{\text{the 1s electrons}} = 21.15$$

For Cu, Z = 30

$$Z_{eff} = 30 - 21.15 = 8.85 \tag{1.14.12}$$

This page titled 1.14: Slater's Rules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Kathryn A. Newton, Northern Michigan University.

- 2.6: Slater's Rules by Brett McCollum is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.
- 2.2.4: Shielding by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2: SIMPLE BONDING THEORY

2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry

2.2: Ionic Bonding

2.3: Covalent Bonding

2.4: Electronegativity

2.5: Lewis Theory- An Overview

2.6: Writing Lewis Structures

2.7: Resonance

2.8: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

2.9: Shapes of Molecules

2.10: Multiple Bonds

2.11: Electronegativity and Atomic Size Effects

This page titled 2: Simple Bonding Theory is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry

It has long been known that pure carbon occurs in different forms (allotropes) including graphite and diamonds. But it was not until 1985 that a new form of carbon was recognized: buckminsterfullerene, commonly known as a “buckyball.” This molecule was named after the architect and inventor R. Buckminster Fuller (1895–1983), whose signature architectural design was the geodesic dome, characterized by a lattice shell structure supporting a spherical surface. Experimental evidence revealed the formula, C_{60}, and then scientists determined how 60 carbon atoms could form one symmetric, stable molecule. They were guided by bonding theory—the topic of this chapter—which explains how individual atoms connect to form more complex structures.



Figure 2.1.1: Nicknamed “buckyballs,” buckminsterfullerene molecules (C_{60}) contain only carbon atoms. Here they are shown in a ball-and-stick model (left). These molecules have single and double carbon-carbon bonds arranged to form a geometric framework of hexagons and pentagons, similar to the pattern on a soccer ball (center). This unconventional molecular structure is named after architect R. Buckminster Fuller, whose innovative designs combined simple geometric shapes to create large, strong structures such as this weather radar dome near Tucson, Arizona (right). (credit middle: modification of work by “Petey21”/Wikimedia Commons; credit right: modification of work by Bill Morrow).

Three figures are shown. The left figure is a many-sides spherical ball composed of hexagonal rings which have carbon atoms at each corner. The center picture shows a soccer ball. The right picture shown as water tower with sides shaped like hexagonal rings.

This page titled 2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 7.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.2: Ionic Bonding

Learning Objectives

- Explain the formation of cations, anions, and ionic compounds
- Predict the charge of common metallic and nonmetallic elements, and write their electron configurations

As you have learned, ions are atoms or molecules bearing an electrical charge. A cation (a positive ion) forms when a neutral atom loses one or more electrons from its valence shell, and an anion (a negative ion) forms when a neutral atom gains one or more electrons in its valence shell.

Compounds composed of ions are called ionic compounds (or salts), and their constituent ions are held together by ionic bonds: electrostatic forces of attraction between oppositely charged cations and anions. The properties of ionic compounds shed some light on the nature of ionic bonds. Ionic solids exhibit a crystalline structure and tend to be rigid and brittle; they also tend to have high melting and boiling points, which suggests that ionic bonds are very strong. Ionic solids are also poor conductors of electricity for the same reason—the strength of ionic bonds prevents ions from moving freely in the solid state. Most ionic solids, however, dissolve readily in water. Once dissolved or melted, ionic compounds are excellent conductors of electricity and heat because the ions can move about freely.

Neutral atoms and their associated ions have very different physical and chemical properties. Sodium *atoms* form sodium metal, a soft, silvery-white metal that burns vigorously in air and reacts explosively with water. Chlorine *atoms* form chlorine gas, Cl_2, a yellow-green gas that is extremely corrosive to most metals and very poisonous to animals and plants. The vigorous reaction between the elements sodium and chlorine forms the white, crystalline compound sodium chloride, common table salt, which contains sodium *cations* and chloride *anions* (Figure Figure 2.2.1). The compound composed of these ions exhibits properties entirely different from the properties of the elements sodium and chlorine. Chlorine is poisonous, but sodium chloride is essential to life; sodium atoms react vigorously with water, but sodium chloride simply dissolves in water.



Figure 2.2.1: (a) Sodium is a soft metal that must be stored in mineral oil to prevent reaction with air or water. (b) Chlorine is a pale yellow-green gas. (c) When combined, they form white crystals of sodium chloride (table salt). (credit a: modification of work by "Jurii"/Wikimedia Commons)

The Formation of Ionic Compounds

Binary ionic compounds are composed of just two elements: a metal (which forms the cations) and a nonmetal (which forms the anions). For example, NaCl is a binary ionic compound. We can think about the formation of such compounds in terms of the periodic properties of the elements. Many metallic elements have relatively low ionization potentials and lose electrons easily. These elements lie to the left in a period or near the bottom of a group on the periodic table. Nonmetal atoms have relatively high electron affinities and thus readily gain electrons lost by metal atoms, thereby filling their valence shells. Nonmetallic elements are found in the upper-right corner of the periodic table.

As all substances must be electrically neutral, the total number of positive charges on the cations of an ionic compound must equal the total number of negative charges on its anions. The formula of an ionic compound represents the simplest ratio of the numbers of ions necessary to give identical numbers of positive and negative charges. For example, the formula for aluminum oxide, Al_2O_3, indicates that this ionic compound contains two aluminum cations, Al^{3+}, for every three oxide anions, O^{2-} [thus, (2 × +3) + (3 × –2) = 0].

It is important to note, however, that the formula for an ionic compound does *not* represent the physical arrangement of its ions. It is incorrect to refer to a sodium chloride (NaCl) "molecule" because there is not a single ionic bond, per se, between any specific pair of sodium and chloride ions. The attractive forces between ions are isotropic—the same in all directions—meaning that any particular ion is equally attracted to all of the nearby ions of opposite charge. This results in the ions arranging themselves into a tightly bound, three-dimensional lattice structure. Sodium chloride, for example, consists of a regular arrangement of equal numbers of Na^+ cations and Cl^- anions (Figure Figure 2.2.2).

Two diagrams are shown and labeled "a" and "b." Diagram a shows a cube made up of twenty-seven alternating purple and green spheres. The purple spheres are smaller than the green spheres. Diagram b shows the same spheres, but this time, they are spread out and connected in three dimensions by white rods. The purple spheres are labeled "N superscript postive sign" while the green are labeled "C l superscript negative sign."

Figure 2.2.2: The atoms in sodium chloride (common table salt) are arranged to (a) maximize opposite charges interacting. The smaller spheres represent sodium ions, the larger ones represent chloride ions. In the expanded view (b), the geometry can be seen more clearly. Note that each ion is "bonded" to all of the surrounding ions—six in this case.

The strong electrostatic attraction between Na^+ and Cl^- ions holds them tightly together in solid NaCl. It requires 769 kJ of energy to dissociate one mole of solid NaCl into separate gaseous Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathrm{NaCl}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na}^+(g) + \mathrm{Cl}^-(g) \quad \Delta H = 769\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{2.2.1}$$

Summary

Atoms gain or lose electrons to form ions with particularly stable electron configurations. The charges of cations formed by the representative metals may be determined readily because, with few exceptions, the electronic structures of these ions have either a noble gas configuration or a completely filled electron shell. The charges of anions formed by the nonmetals may also be readily determined because these ions form when nonmetal atoms gain enough electrons to fill their valence shells.

Glossary

inert pair effect
: tendency of heavy atoms to form ions in which their valence s electrons are not lost

ionic bond
: strong electrostatic force of attraction between cations and anions in an ionic compound

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 2.2: Ionic Bonding is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 7.2: Ionic Bonding by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.3: Covalent Bonding

Learning Objectives

- Describe the formation of covalent bonds
- Define electronegativity and assess the polarity of covalent bonds

In ionic compounds, electrons are transferred between atoms of different elements to form ions. But this is not the only way that compounds can be formed. Atoms can also make chemical bonds by sharing electrons between each other. Such bonds are called covalent bonds. Covalent bonds are formed between two atoms when both have similar tendencies to attract electrons to themselves (i.e., when both atoms have identical or fairly similar ionization energies and electron affinities). For example, two hydrogen atoms bond covalently to form an H_2 molecule; each hydrogen atom in the H_2 molecule has two electrons stabilizing it, giving each atom the same number of valence electrons as the noble gas He.

Compounds that contain covalent bonds exhibit different physical properties than ionic compounds. Because the attraction between molecules, which are electrically neutral, is weaker than that between electrically charged ions, covalent compounds generally have much lower melting and boiling points than ionic compounds. In fact, many covalent compounds are liquids or gases at room temperature, and, in their solid states, they are typically much softer than ionic solids. Furthermore, whereas ionic compounds are good conductors of electricity when dissolved in water, most covalent compounds, being electrically neutral, are poor conductors of electricity in any state.

Formation of Covalent Bonds

Nonmetal atoms frequently form covalent bonds with other nonmetal atoms. For example, the hydrogen molecule, H_2, contains a covalent bond between its two hydrogen atoms. Figure 2.3.1 illustrates why this bond is formed. Starting on the far right, we have two separate hydrogen atoms with a particular potential energy, indicated by the red line. Along the *x*-axis is the distance between the two atoms. As the two atoms approach each other (moving left along the *x*-axis), their valence orbitals (1s) begin to overlap. The single electrons on each hydrogen atom then interact with both atomic nuclei, occupying the space around both atoms. The strong attraction of each shared electron to both nuclei stabilizes the system, and the potential energy decreases as the bond distance decreases. If the atoms continue to approach each other, the positive charges in the two nuclei begin to repel each other, and the potential energy increases. The bond length is determined by the distance at which the lowest potential energy is achieved.

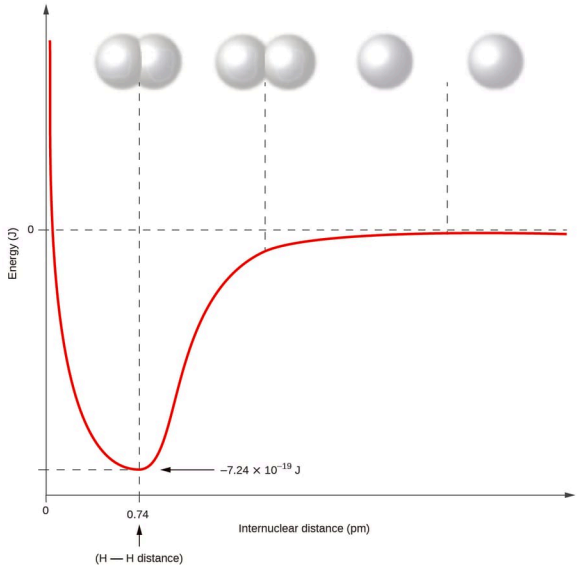


Figure 2.3.1: *The potential energy of two separate hydrogen atoms (right) decreases as they approach each other, and the single electrons on each atom are shared to form a covalent bond. The bond length is the internuclear distance at which the lowest potential energy is achieved.*

It is essential to remember that energy must be added to break chemical bonds (an endothermic process), whereas forming chemical bonds releases energy (an exothermic process). In the case of H_2, the covalent bond is very strong; a large amount of energy, 436 kJ, must be added to break the bonds in one mole of hydrogen molecules and cause the atoms to separate:

$$\mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H}(g) \quad \Delta H = 436\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Conversely, the same amount of energy is released when one mole of H_2 molecules forms from two moles of H atoms:

$$2\,\mathrm{H}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = -436\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Pure vs. Polar Covalent Bonds

If the atoms that form a covalent bond are identical, as in H_2, Cl_2, and other diatomic molecules, then the electrons in the bond must be shared equally. We refer to this as a pure covalent bond. Electrons shared in pure covalent bonds have an equal probability of being near each nucleus. In the case of Cl_2, each atom starts off with seven valence electrons, and each Cl shares one electron with the other, forming one covalent bond:

$$\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{Cl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl_2}$$

The total number of electrons around each individual atom consists of six nonbonding electrons and two shared (i.e., bonding) electrons for eight total electrons, matching the number of valence electrons in the noble gas argon. Since the bonding atoms are identical, Cl_2 also features a pure covalent bond.

When the atoms linked by a covalent bond are different, the bonding electrons are shared, but no longer equally. Instead, the bonding electrons are more attracted to one atom than the other, giving rise to a shift of electron density toward that atom. This unequal distribution of electrons is known as a polar covalent bond, characterized by a partial positive charge on one atom and a partial negative charge on the other. The atom that attracts the electrons more strongly acquires the partial negative charge and vice versa. For example, the electrons in the H–Cl bond of a hydrogen chloride molecule spend more time near the chlorine atom than near the hydrogen atom. Thus, in an HCl molecule, the chlorine atom carries a partial negative charge and the hydrogen atom has a partial positive charge. Figure 2.3.2 shows the distribution of electrons in the H–Cl bond. Note that the shaded area around Cl is much larger than it is around H. Compare this to Figure 2.3.1, which shows the even distribution of electrons in the H_2 nonpolar bond.

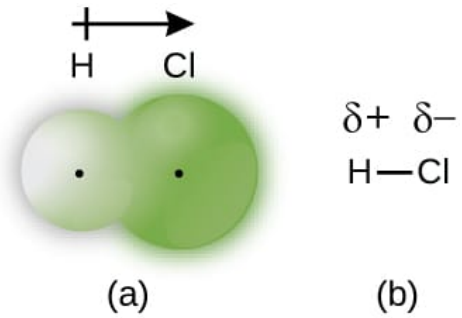


Figure 2.3.2: (a) The distribution of electron density in the HCl molecule is uneven. The electron density is greater around the chlorine nucleus. The small, black dots indicate the location of the hydrogen and chlorine nuclei in the molecule. (b) Symbols δ+ and δ– indicate the polarity of the H–Cl bond.

We sometimes designate the positive and negative atoms in a polar covalent bond using a lowercase Greek letter "delta," δ, with a plus sign or minus sign to indicate whether the atom has a partial positive charge (δ+) or a partial negative charge (δ–). This symbolism is shown for the H–Cl molecule in Figure 2.3.2*b*.

Electronegativity

Whether a bond is nonpolar or polar covalent is determined by a property of the bonding atoms called electronegativity. Electronegativity is a measure of the tendency of an atom to attract electrons (or electron density) towards itself. It determines how the shared electrons are distributed between the two atoms in a bond. The more strongly an atom attracts the electrons in its bonds, the larger its electronegativity. Electrons in a polar covalent bond are shifted toward the more electronegative atom;

thus, the more electronegative atom is the one with the partial negative charge. The greater the difference in electronegativity, the more polarized the electron distribution and the larger the partial charges of the atoms.

Figure 2.3.3 shows the electronegativity values of the elements as proposed by one of the most famous chemists of the twentieth century: Linus Pauling. In general, electronegativity increases from left to right across a period in the periodic table and decreases down a group. Thus, the nonmetals, which lie in the upper right, tend to have the highest electronegativities, with fluorine the most electronegative element of all (EN = 4.0). Metals tend to be less electronegative elements, and the group 1 metals have the lowest electronegativities. Note that noble gases are excluded from this figure because these atoms usually do not share electrons with others atoms since they have a full valence shell. (While noble gas compounds such as XeO_2 do exist, they can only be formed under extreme conditions, and thus they do not fit neatly into the general model of electronegativity.)

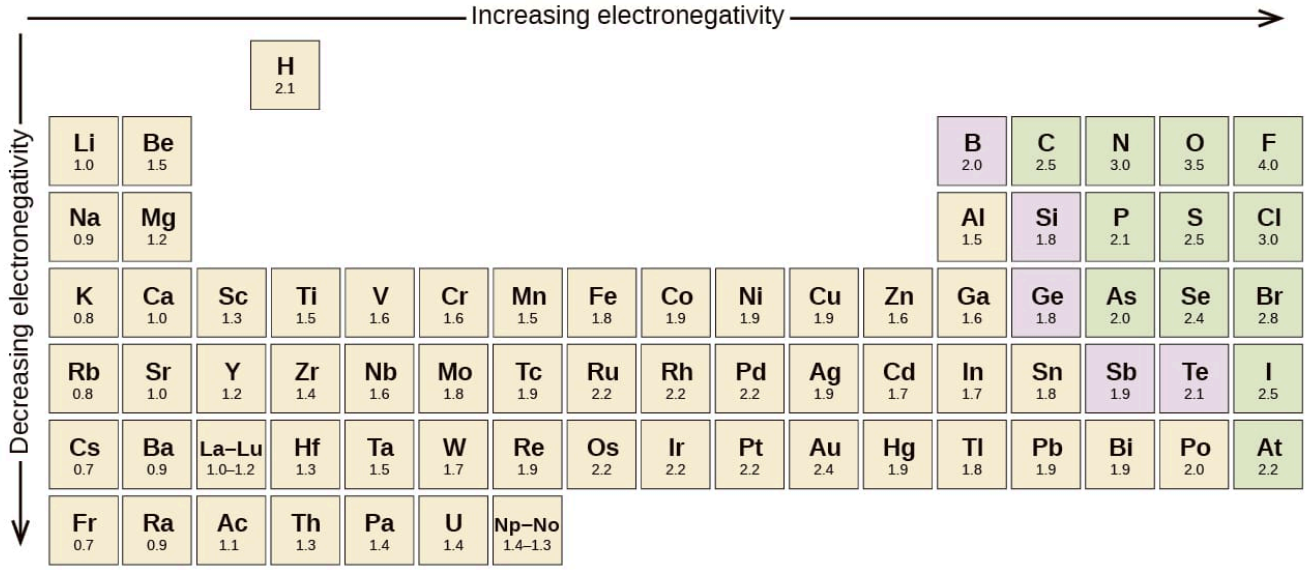


Figure 2.3.3: The electronegativity values derived by Pauling follow predictable periodic trends with the higher electronegativities toward the upper right of the periodic table.

Linus Pauling

Linus Pauling is the only person to have received two unshared (individual) Nobel Prizes: one for chemistry in 1954 for his work on the nature of chemical bonds and one for peace in 1962 for his opposition to weapons of mass destruction. He developed many of the theories and concepts that are foundational to our current understanding of chemistry, including electronegativity and resonance structures.



Linus Pauling (1901–1994) made many important contributions to the field of chemistry. He was also a prominent activist, publicizing issues related to health and nuclear weapons.

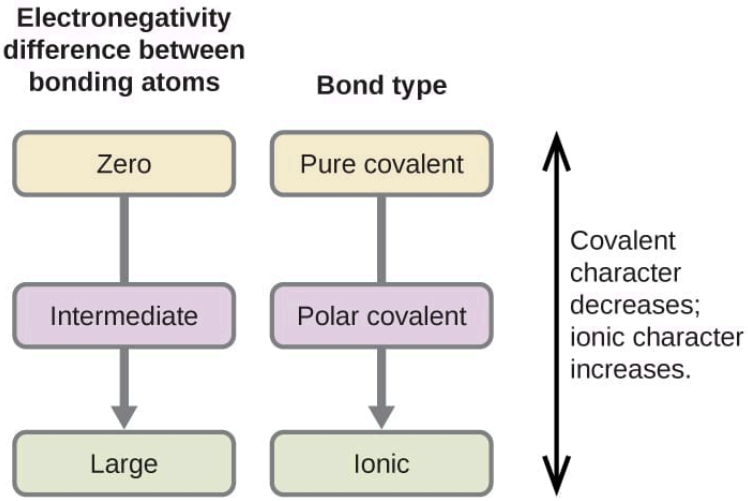
Pauling also contributed to many other fields besides chemistry. His research on sickle cell anemia revealed the cause of the disease—the presence of a genetically inherited abnormal protein in the blood—and paved the way for the field of molecular genetics. His work was also pivotal in curbing the testing of nuclear weapons; he proved that radioactive fallout from nuclear testing posed a public health risk.

Electronegativity versus Electron Affinity

We must be careful not to confuse electronegativity and electron affinity. The electron affinity of an element is a measurable physical quantity, namely, the energy released or absorbed when an isolated gas-phase atom acquires an electron, measured in kJ/mol. Electronegativity, on the other hand, describes how tightly an atom attracts electrons in a bond. It is a dimensionless quantity that is calculated, not measured. Pauling derived the first electronegativity values by comparing the amounts of energy required to break different types of bonds. He chose an arbitrary relative scale ranging from 0 to 4.

Electronegativity and Bond Type

The absolute value of the difference in electronegativity (ΔEN) of two bonded atoms provides a rough measure of the polarity to be expected in the bond and, thus, the bond type. When the difference is very small or zero, the bond is covalent and nonpolar. When it is large, the bond is polar covalent or ionic. The absolute values of the electronegativity differences between the atoms in the bonds H–H, H–Cl, and Na–Cl are 0 (nonpolar), 0.9 (polar covalent), and 2.1 (ionic), respectively. The degree to which electrons are shared between atoms varies from completely equal (pure covalent bonding) to not at all (ionic bonding). Figure 2.3.4 shows the relationship between electronegativity difference and bond type.



Bond Type	Electronegativity Difference
pure covalent	< 0.4
polar covalent	between 0.4 and 1.8
ionic	> 1.8

Figure 2.3.4: As the electronegativity difference increases between two atoms, the bond becomes more ionic.

A rough approximation of the electronegativity differences associated with covalent, polar covalent, and ionic bonds is shown in Figure 2.3.4. This table is just a general guide, however, with many exceptions. For example, the H and F atoms in HF have an electronegativity difference of 1.9, and the N and H atoms in NH_3 a difference of 0.9, yet both of these compounds form bonds that are considered polar covalent. Likewise, the Na and Cl atoms in NaCl have an electronegativity difference of 2.1, and the Mn and I atoms in MnI_2 have a difference of 1.0, yet both of these substances form ionic compounds.

The best guide to the covalent or ionic character of a bond is to consider the types of atoms involved and their relative positions in the periodic table. Bonds between two nonmetals are generally covalent; bonding between a metal and a nonmetal is often ionic.

Some compounds contain both covalent and ionic bonds. The atoms in polyatomic ions, such as OH^-, NO_3^-, and NH_4^+, are held together by polar covalent bonds. However, these polyatomic ions form ionic compounds by combining with ions of opposite charge. For example, potassium nitrate, KNO_3, contains the K^+ cation and the polyatomic NO_3^- anion. Thus, bonding in potassium nitrate is ionic, resulting from the electrostatic attraction between the ions K^+ and NO_3^-, as well as covalent between the nitrogen

and oxygen atoms in NO_3^-.

Example 2.3.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity

Bond polarities play an important role in determining the structure of proteins. Using the electronegativity values in Table A2, arrange the following covalent bonds—all commonly found in amino acids—in order of increasing polarity. Then designate the positive and negative atoms using the symbols δ+ and δ–:

C–H, C–N, C–O, N–H, O–H, S–H

Solution

The polarity of these bonds increases as the absolute value of the electronegativity difference increases. The atom with the δ– designation is the more electronegative of the two. Table 2.3.1 shows these bonds in order of increasing polarity.

Table 2.3.1: Bond Polarity and Electronegativity Difference

Bond	ΔEN	Polarity
C–H	0.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
S–H	0.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{S}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
C–N	0.5	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{N}}$
N–H	0.9	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{N}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
C–O	1.0	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{O}}$
O–H	1.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{O}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$

Exercise 2.3.1

Silicones are polymeric compounds containing, among others, the following types of covalent bonds: Si–O, Si–C, C–H, and C–C. Using the electronegativity values in Figure 2.3.3, arrange the bonds in order of increasing polarity and designate the positive and negative atoms using the symbols δ+ and δ–.

Answer

Answer to Exercise 7.2.1

Bond	Electronegativity Difference	Polarity
C–C	0.0	nonpolar
C–H	0.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
Si–C	0.7	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{Si}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{C}}$
Si–O	1.7	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{Si}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{O}}$

Summary

Covalent bonds form when electrons are shared between atoms and are attracted by the nuclei of both atoms. In pure covalent bonds, the electrons are shared equally. In polar covalent bonds, the electrons are shared unequally, as one atom exerts a stronger force of attraction on the electrons than the other. The ability of an atom to attract a pair of electrons in a chemical bond is called its electronegativity. The difference in electronegativity between two atoms determines how polar a bond will be. In a diatomic

molecule with two identical atoms, there is no difference in electronegativity, so the bond is nonpolar or pure covalent. When the electronegativity difference is very large, as is the case between metals and nonmetals, the bonding is characterized as ionic.

Glossary

bond length
: distance between the nuclei of two bonded atoms at which the lowest potential energy is achieved

covalent bond
: bond formed when electrons are shared between atoms

electronegativity
: tendency of an atom to attract electrons in a bond to itself

polar covalent bond
: covalent bond between atoms of different electronegativities; a covalent bond with a positive end and a negative end

pure covalent bond
: (also, nonpolar covalent bond) covalent bond between atoms of identical electronegativities

This page titled 2.3: Covalent Bonding is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 7.3: Covalent Bonding by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.4: Electronegativity

Electronegativity is a measure of the tendency of an atom to attract a bonding pair of electrons. The Pauling scale is the most commonly used. Fluorine (the most electronegative element) is assigned a value of 4.0, and values range down to cesium and francium which are the least electronegative at 0.7.

What if two atoms of equal electronegativity bond together?

Consider a bond between two atoms, A and B. If the atoms are equally electronegative, both have the same tendency to attract the bonding pair of electrons, and so it will be found on average half way between the two atoms:



To get a bond like this, A and B would usually have to be the same atom. You will find this sort of bond in, for example, H_2 or Cl_2 molecules. **Note:** It's important to realize that this is an average picture. The electrons are actually in a molecular orbital, and are moving around all the time within that orbital. This sort of bond could be thought of as being a "pure" covalent bond - where the electrons are shared evenly between the two atoms.

What if B is slightly more electronegative than A?

B will attract the electron pair rather more than A does.



That means that the B end of the bond has more than its fair share of electron density and so becomes slightly negative. At the same time, the A end (rather short of electrons) becomes slightly positive. In the diagram, "δ" (read as "delta") means "slightly" - so $\delta +$ means "slightly positive".

A polar bond is a covalent bond in which there is a separation of charge between one end and the other - in other words in which one end is slightly positive and the other slightly negative. Examples include most covalent bonds. The hydrogen-chlorine bond in HCl or the hydrogen-oxygen bonds in water are typical.



If B is a lot more electronegative than A, then the electron pair is dragged right over to B's end of the bond. To all intents and purposes, A has lost control of its electron, and B has complete control over both electrons. Ions have been formed. The bond is then an ionic bond rather than a covalent bond.

A "spectrum" of bonds

The implication of all this is that there is no clear-cut division between covalent and ionic bonds. In a pure covalent bond, the electrons are held on average exactly half way between the atoms. In a polar bond, the electrons have been dragged slightly towards one end. How far does this dragging have to go before the bond counts as ionic? There is no real answer to that. Sodium chloride is typically considered an ionic solid, but even here the sodium has not completely lost control of its electron. Because of the properties of sodium chloride, however, we tend to count it as if it were purely ionic. Lithium iodide, on the other hand, would be described as being "ionic with some covalent character". In this case, the pair of electrons has not moved entirely over to the iodine end of the bond. Lithium iodide, for example, dissolves in organic solvents like ethanol - not something which ionic substances normally do.

Summary

- No electronegativity difference between two atoms leads to a pure non-polar covalent bond.
- A small electronegativity difference leads to a polar covalent bond.
- A large electronegativity difference leads to an ionic bond.

Example 1: Polar Bonds vs. Polar Molecules

In a simple diatomic molecule like HCl, if the bond is polar, then the whole molecule is polar. What about more complicated molecules?

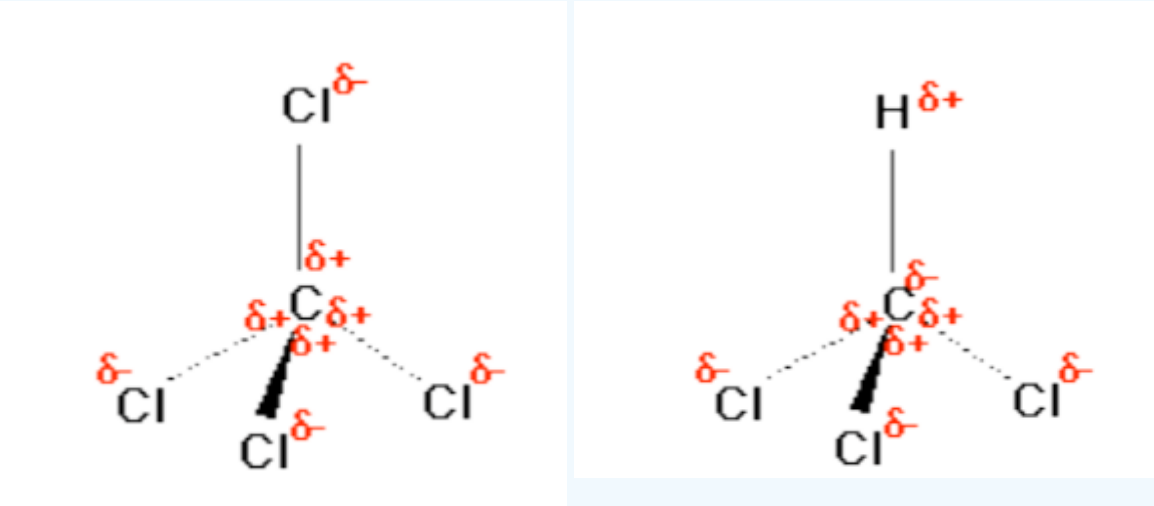


Figure 2.4.1: (left) CCl_4 (right) $CHCl_3$

Consider CCl_4, (left panel in figure above), which as a molecule is not polar - in the sense that it doesn't have an end (or a side) which is slightly negative and one which is slightly positive. The whole of the outside of the molecule is somewhat negative, but there is no overall separation of charge from top to bottom, or from left to right.

In contrast, $CHCl_3$ is a polar molecule (right panel in figure above). The hydrogen at the top of the molecule is less electronegative than carbon and so is slightly positive. This means that the molecule now has a slightly positive "top" and a slightly negative "bottom", and so is overall a polar molecule.

A polar molecule will need to be "lop-sided" in some way.

Patterns of electronegativity in the Periodic Table

The distance of the electrons from the nucleus remains relatively constant in a periodic table row, but not in a periodic table column. The force between two charges is given by Coulomb's law.

$$F = k\frac{Q_1 Q_2}{r^2} \tag{2.4.1}$$

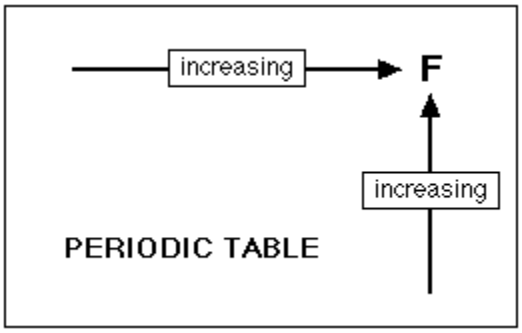
In this expression, Q represents a charge, k represents a constant and r is the distance between the charges. When r = 2, then r^2= 4. When r = 3, then r^2 = 9. When r = 4, then r^2 = 16. It is readily seen from these numbers that, as the distance between the charges increases, the force decreases very rapidly. This is called a quadratic change.

The result of this change is that electronegativity increases from bottom to top in a column in the periodic table even though there are more protons in the elements at the bottom of the column. Elements at the top of a column have greater electronegativities than elements at the bottom of a given column.

The overall trend for electronegativity in the periodic table is diagonal from the lower left corner to the upper right corner. Since the electronegativity of some of the important elements cannot be determined by these trends (they lie in the wrong diagonal), we have to memorize the following order of electronegativity for some of these common elements.

F > O > Cl > N > Br > I > S > C > H > metals

The most electronegative element is fluorine. If you remember that fact, everything becomes easy, because electronegativity must always increase towards fluorine in the Periodic Table.

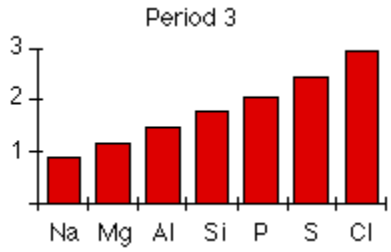


Note

This simplification ignores the noble gases. Historically this is because they were believed not to form bonds - and if they do not form bonds, they cannot have an electronegativity value. Even now that we know that some of them do form bonds, data sources still do not quote electronegativity values for them.

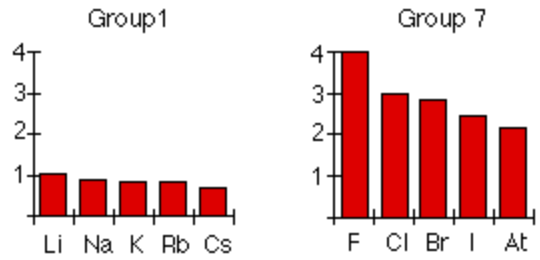
Trends in electronegativity across a period

The positively charged protons in the nucleus attract the negatively charged electrons. As the number of protons in the nucleus increases, the electronegativity or attraction will increase. Therefore electronegativity **increases** from **left to right** in a row in the periodic table. This effect only holds true for a row in the periodic table because the attraction between charges falls off rapidly with distance. The chart shows electronegativities from sodium to chlorine (ignoring argon since it does not does not form bonds).



Trends in electronegativity down a group

As you go down a group, electronegativity decreases. (If it increases up to fluorine, it must decrease as you go down.) The chart shows the patterns of electronegativity in Groups 1 and 7.



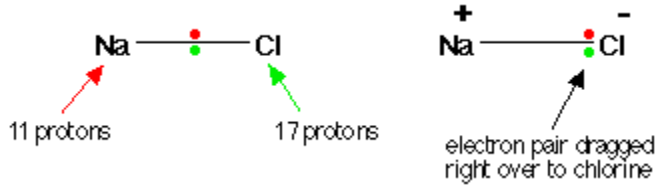
Explaining the patterns in electronegativity

The attraction that a bonding pair of electrons feels for a particular nucleus depends on:

- the number of protons in the nucleus;
- the distance from the nucleus;
- the amount of screening by inner electrons.

Why does electronegativity increase across a period?

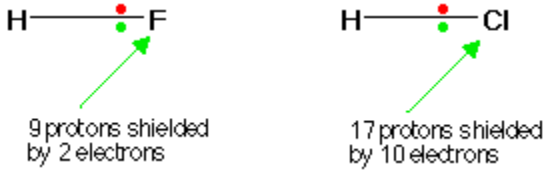
Consider sodium at the beginning of period 3 and chlorine at the end (ignoring the noble gas, argon). Think of sodium chloride as if it were covalently bonded.



Both sodium and chlorine have their bonding electrons in the 3-level. The electron pair is screened from both nuclei by the 1s, 2s and 2p electrons, but the chlorine nucleus has 6 more protons in it. It is no wonder the electron pair gets dragged so far towards the chlorine that ions are formed. Electronegativity increases across a period because the number of charges on the nucleus increases. That attracts the bonding pair of electrons more strongly.

Why does electronegativity fall as you go down a group?

As you go **down** a group, electronegativity **decreases** because the bonding pair of electrons is increasingly distant from the attraction of the nucleus. Consider the hydrogen fluoride and hydrogen chloride molecules:

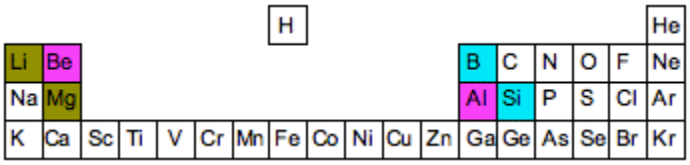


The bonding pair is shielded from the fluorine's nucleus only by the $1s^2$ electrons. In the chlorine case it is shielded by all the $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ electrons. In each case there is a net pull from the center of the fluorine or chlorine of +7. But fluorine has the bonding pair in the 2-level rather than the 3-level as it is in chlorine. If it is closer to the nucleus, the attraction is greater.

Diagonal relationships in the Periodic Table

At the beginning of periods 2 and 3 of the Periodic Table, there are several cases where an element at the top of one group has some similarities with an element in the next group. Three examples are shown in the diagram below. Notice that the similarities

occur in elements which are diagonal to each other - not side-by-side.



For example, boron is a non-metal with some properties rather like silicon. Unlike the rest of Group 2, beryllium has some properties resembling aluminum. And lithium has some properties which differ from the other elements in Group 1, and in some ways resembles magnesium. There is said to be a diagonal relationship between these elements. There are several reasons for this, but each depends on the way atomic properties like electronegativity vary around the Periodic Table. So we will have a quick look at this with regard to electronegativity - which is probably the simplest to explain.

Explaining the diagonal relationship with regard to electronegativity

Electronegativity increases across the Periodic Table. So, for example, the electronegativities of beryllium and boron are:

Be	1.5
B	2.0

Electronegativity falls as you go down the Periodic Table. So, for example, the electronegativities of boron and aluminum are:

B	2.0
Al	1.5

So, comparing Be and Al, you find the values are (by chance) exactly the same. The increase from Group 2 to Group 3 is offset by the fall as you go down Group 3 from boron to aluminum. Something similar happens from lithium (1.0) to magnesium (1.2), and from boron (2.0) to silicon (1.8). In these cases, the electronegativities are not exactly the same, but are very close.

Similar electronegativities between the members of these diagonal pairs means that they are likely to form similar types of bonds, and that will affect their chemistry. You may well come across examples of this later on in your course.

This page titled 2.4: Electronegativity is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- Electronegativity by Jim Clark is licensed CC BY-NC 4.0.

2.5: Lewis Theory- An Overview

Learning Objectives

- To use Lewis electron dot symbols to predict the number of bonds an element will form.

Why are some substances chemically bonded molecules and others are an association of ions? The answer to this question depends upon the electronic structures of the atoms and nature of the chemical forces within the compounds. Although there are no sharply defined boundaries, chemical bonds are typically classified into three main types: ionic bonds, covalent bonds, and metallic bonds. In this chapter, each type of bond wil be discussed and the general properties found in typical substances in which the bond type occurs

1. Ionic bonds results from ***electrostatic forces that exist between ions of opposite charge***. These bonds typically involves a metal with a nonmetal
2. Covalent bonds ***result from the sharing of electrons between two atoms***. The bonds typically involves one nonmetallic element with another
3. Metallic bonds These bonds are found in solid metals (copper, iron, aluminum) with each metal bonded to several neighboring groups and bonding electrons free to move throughout the 3-dimensional structure.

Each bond classification is discussed in detail in subsequent sections of the chapter. Let's look at the preferred arrangements of electrons in atoms when they form chemical compounds.

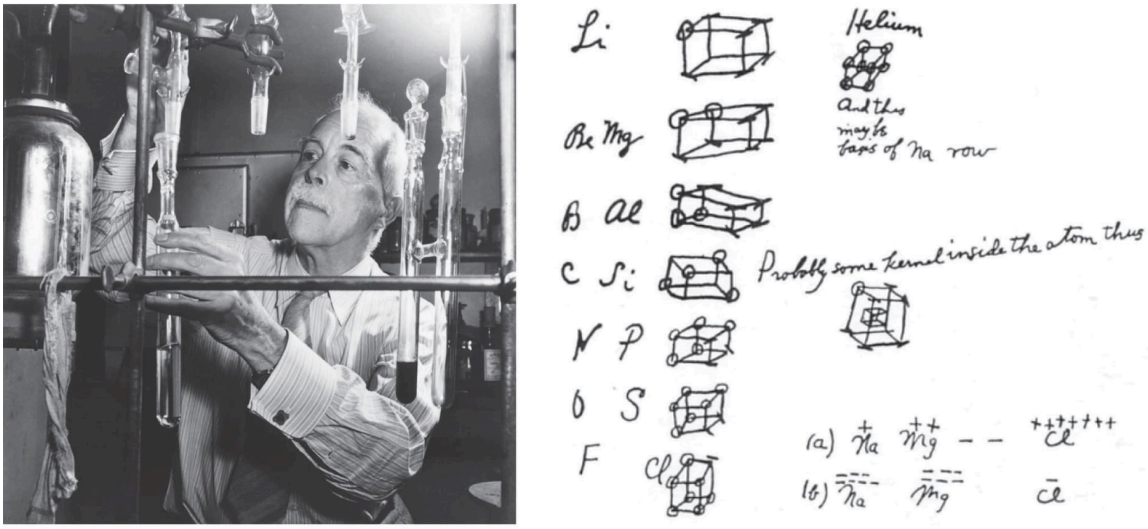


Figure 2.5.1: G. N. Lewis and the Octet Rule. (a) Lewis is working in the laboratory. (b) In Lewis's original sketch for the octet rule, he initially placed the electrons at the corners of a cube rather than placing them as we do now.

Lewis Symbols

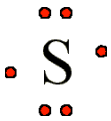
At the beginning of the 20th century, the American chemist G. N. Lewis (1875–1946) devised a system of symbols—now called *Lewis electron dot symbols* (often shortened to *Lewis dot symbols*) that can be used for predicting the number of bonds formed by most elements in their compounds. Each Lewis dot symbol consists of the chemical symbol for an element surrounded by dots that represent its valence electrons.

Note

Lewis Dot symbols:

- convenient representation of valence electrons
- allows you to keep track of valence electrons during bond formation
- consists of the chemical symbol for the element plus a dot for each valence electron

To write an element's Lewis dot symbol, we place dots representing its valence electrons, one at a time, around the element's chemical symbol. Up to four dots are placed above, below, to the left, and to the right of the symbol (in any order, as long as elements with four or fewer valence electrons have no more than one dot in each position). The next dots, for elements with more than four valence electrons, are again distributed one at a time, each paired with one of the first four. For example, the electron configuration for atomic sulfur is $[Ne]3s^2 3p^4$, thus there are ***six*** valence electrons. Its Lewis symbol would therefore be:



Fluorine, for example, with the electron configuration $[He]2s^2 2p^5$, has seven valence electrons, so its Lewis dot symbol is constructed as follows:



Figure 2.5.2.

Lewis used the unpaired dots to predict the number of bonds that an element will form in a compound. Consider the symbol for nitrogen in Figure 2.5.2. The Lewis dot symbol explains why nitrogen, with three unpaired valence electrons, tends to form compounds in which it shares the unpaired electrons to form three bonds. Boron, which also has three unpaired valence electrons in its Lewis dot symbol, also tends to form compounds with three bonds, whereas carbon, with four unpaired valence electrons in its Lewis dot symbol, tends to share all of its unpaired valence electrons by forming compounds in which it has four bonds.

Element	Electron config.	Electron dot symbol
Li	$[He]2s^1$	
Be	$[He]2s^2$	
B	$[He]2s^2 2p^1$	
C	$[He]2s^2 2p^2$	
N	$[He]2s^2 2p^3$	
O	$[He]2s^2 2p^4$	
F	$[He]2s^2 2p^5$	
Ne	$[He]2s^2 2p^6$	

Figure 2.5.2: Lewis Dot Symbols for the Elements in Period 2

The Octet Rule

In 1904, Richard Abegg formulated what is now known as *Abegg's rule*, which states that the difference between the maximum positive and negative valences of an element is frequently eight. This rule was used later in 1916 when Gilbert N. Lewis formulated the "octet rule" in his cubical atom theory.

The **octet rule** refers to the tendency of atoms to prefer to have eight electrons in the *valence shell*. When atoms have fewer than eight electrons, they tend to react and form more stable compounds. Atoms will react to get in the most stable state possible. A complete octet is very stable because all orbitals will be full. Atoms with greater stability have less energy, so a reaction that increases the stability of the atoms will release energy in the form of heat or light ;reactions that decrease stability must absorb energy, getting colder.

When discussing the octet rule, we do not consider *d* or *f* electrons. Only the s and p electrons are involved in the octet rule, making it a useful rule for the *main group elements* (elements not in the transition metal or inner-transition metal blocks); an octet in these atoms corresponds to an electron configurations ending with s^2p^6.

Octet Rule

A stable arrangement is attended when the atom is surrounded by eight electrons. This octet can be made up by own electrons and some electrons which are shared. Thus, an atom continues to form bonds until an octet of electrons is made. This is known as octet rule by Lewis.

1. Normally two electrons pairs up and forms a bond, e.g., H_2
2. For most atoms there will be a maximum of eight electrons in the valence shell (octet structure), e.g., CH_4

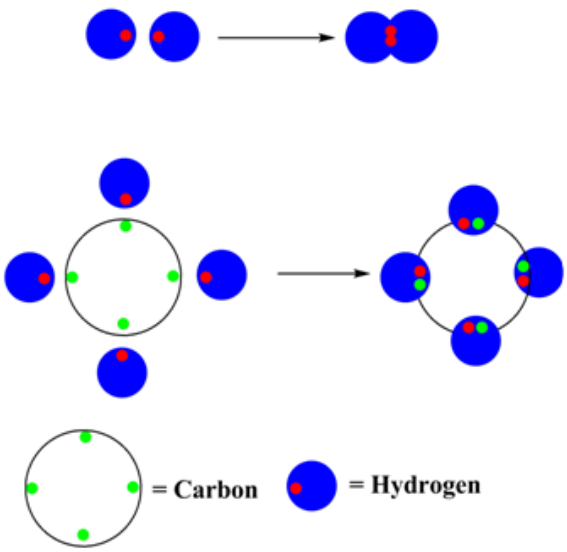


Figure 1: Bonding in H_2 and methane (CH_4)

The other tendency of atoms is to maintain a neutral charge. Only the noble gases (the elements on the right-most column of the periodic table) have zero charge with filled valence octets. All of the other elements have a charge when they have eight electrons all to themselves. The result of these two guiding principles is the explanation for much of the reactivity and bonding that is observed within atoms: atoms seek to share electrons in a way that minimizes charge while fulfilling an octet in the valence shell.

Note

The noble gases rarely form compounds. They have the most stable configuration (full octet, no charge), so they have no reason to react and change their configuration. All other elements attempt to gain, lose, or share electrons to achieve a noble gas configuration.

Example 1: Salt

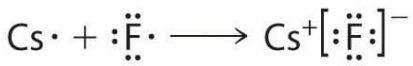
The formula for table salt is NaCl. It is the result of Na^+ ions and Cl^- ions bonding together. If sodium metal and chlorine gas mix under the right conditions, they will form salt. The sodium loses an electron, and the chlorine gains that electron. In the process, a great amount of light and heat is released. The resulting salt is mostly unreactive — it is stable. It will not undergo any explosive reactions, unlike the sodium and chlorine that it is made of. Why?

Solution

Referring to the octet rule, atoms attempt to get a noble gas electron configuration, which is eight valence electrons. Sodium has one valence electron, so giving it up would result in the same electron configuration as neon. Chlorine has seven valence electrons, so if it takes one it will have eight (an octet). Chlorine has the electron configuration of argon when it gains an electron.

The octet rule could have been satisfied if chlorine gave up all seven of its valence electrons and sodium took them. In that case, both would have the electron configurations of noble gasses, with a full valence shell. However, their charges would be much higher. It would be Na^{7-} and Cl^{7+}, which is much less stable than Na^+ and Cl^-. Atoms are more stable when they have no charge, or a small charge.

Lewis dot symbols can also be used to represent the ions in ionic compounds. The reaction of cesium with fluorine, for example, to produce the ionic compound CsF can be written as follows:



No dots are shown on Cs^+ in the product because cesium has lost its single valence electron to fluorine. The transfer of this electron produces the Cs^+ ion, which has the valence electron configuration of Xe, and the F^- ion, which has a total of eight valence electrons (an octet) and the Ne electron configuration. This description is consistent with the statement that among the main group elements, ions in simple binary ionic compounds generally have the electron configurations of the nearest noble gas. The charge of each ion is written in the product, and the anion and its electrons are enclosed in brackets. This notation emphasizes that the ions are associated electrostatically; no electrons are shared between the two elements.

Note

Atoms often gain, lose, or share electrons to achieve the same number of electrons as the noble gas closest to them in the periodic table.

As you might expect for such a qualitative approach to bonding, there are exceptions to the octet rule, which we describe elsewhere. These include molecules in which one or more atoms contain fewer or more than eight electrons.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Lewis Theory of Bonding: https://youtu.be/TZ6C5_k-SPs

Summary

- Lewis dot symbols can be used to predict the number of bonds formed by most elements in their compounds.

One convenient way to predict the number and basic arrangement of bonds in compounds is by using **Lewis electron dot symbols**, which consist of the chemical symbol for an element surrounded by dots that represent its valence electrons, grouped into pairs often placed above, below, and to the left and right of the symbol. The structures reflect the fact that the elements in period 2 and beyond tend to gain, lose, or share electrons to reach a total of eight valence electrons in their compounds, the so-called **octet rule**. Hydrogen, with only two valence electrons, does not obey the octet rule.

Contributors and Attributions

Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

- Wikipedia
- National Programme on Technology Enhanced Learning (India)

This page titled 2.5: Lewis Theory- An Overview is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 10.1: Lewis Theory: An Overview is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

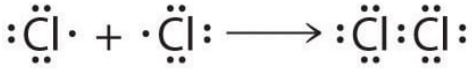
2.6: Writing Lewis Structures

Learning Objectives

- To use Lewis dot symbols to explain the stoichiometry of a compound

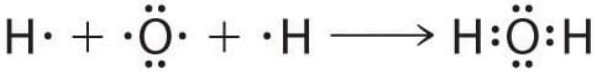
Using Lewis Dot Symbols to Describe Covalent Bonding

The valence electron configurations of the constituent atoms of a covalent compound are important factors in determining its structure, stoichiometry, and properties. For example, chlorine, with seven valence electrons, is one electron short of an octet. If two chlorine atoms share their unpaired electrons by making a covalent bond and forming Cl_2, they can each complete their valence shell:



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond. Examples of this type of bonding are presented in Section 8.6 when we discuss atoms with less than an octet of electrons.

We can illustrate the formation of a water molecule from two hydrogen atoms and an oxygen atom using Lewis dot symbols:



The structure on the right is the *Lewis electron structure*, or *Lewis structure*, for H_2O. With two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, the oxygen atom has now completed its octet. Moreover, by sharing a bonding pair with oxygen, each hydrogen atom now has a full valence shell of two electrons. Chemists usually indicate a bonding pair by a single line, as shown here for our two examples:



The following procedure can be used to construct Lewis electron structures for more complex molecules and ions:

1. **Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.** When there is a central atom, it is usually the least electronegative element in the compound. Chemists usually list this central atom first in the chemical formula (as in CCl_4 and CO_3^{2-}, which both have C as the central atom), which is another clue to the compound's structure. Hydrogen and the halogens are almost always connected to only one other atom, so they are usually *terminal* rather than central.
2. **Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.** Add together the valence electrons from each atom. (Recall that the number of valence electrons is indicated by the position of the element in the periodic table.) If the species is a polyatomic ion, remember to add or subtract the number of electrons necessary to give the total charge on the ion. For CO_3^{2-}, for example, we add two electrons to the total because of the –2 charge.
3. **Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.** In H_2O, for example, there is a bonding pair of electrons between oxygen and each hydrogen.
4. **Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).** These electrons will usually be lone pairs.
5. **If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.** We will explain later that some atoms are able to accommodate more than eight electrons.
6. **If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double**

or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet. This will not change the number of electrons on the terminal atoms.

Now let's apply this procedure to some particular compounds, beginning with one we have already discussed.

> Note
>
> The central atom is usually the least electronegative element in the molecule or ion; hydrogen and the halogens are usually terminal.

The H_2O Molecule

1. Because H atoms are almost always terminal, the arrangement within the molecule must be HOH.
2. Each H atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, and the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 8 valence electrons.
3. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between the O atom and each H atom gives H:O:H, with 4 electrons left over.
4. Each H atom has a full valence shell of 2 electrons.
5. Adding the remaining 4 electrons to the oxygen (as two lone pairs) gives the following structure:



This is the Lewis structure we drew earlier. Because it gives oxygen an octet and each hydrogen two electrons, we do not need to use step 6.

The OCl^- Ion

1. With only two atoms in the molecule, there is no central atom.
2. Oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, and chlorine (group 17) has 7 valence electrons; we must add one more for the negative charge on the ion, giving a total of 14 valence electrons.
3. Placing a bonding pair of electrons between O and Cl gives O:Cl, with 12 electrons left over.
4. If we place six electrons (as three lone pairs) on each atom, we obtain the following structure:



Each atom now has an octet of electrons, so steps 5 and 6 are not needed. The Lewis electron structure is drawn within brackets as is customary for an ion, with the overall charge indicated outside the brackets, and the bonding pair of electrons is indicated by a solid line. OCl^- is the hypochlorite ion, the active ingredient in chlorine laundry bleach and swimming pool disinfectant.

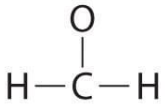
The CH_2O Molecule

1. Because carbon is less electronegative than oxygen and hydrogen is normally terminal, C must be the central atom. One possible arrangement is as follows:



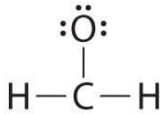
2. Each hydrogen atom (group 1) has one valence electron, carbon (group 14) has 4 valence electrons, and oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of [(2)(1) + 4 + 6] = 12 valence electrons.

3. Placing a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms gives the following:



Six electrons are used, and 6 are left over.

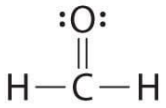
4. Adding all 6 remaining electrons to oxygen (as three lone pairs) gives the following:



Although oxygen now has an octet and each hydrogen has 2 electrons, carbon has only 6 electrons.

5. There are no electrons left to place on the central atom.

6. To give carbon an octet of electrons, we use one of the lone pairs of electrons on oxygen to form a carbon–oxygen double bond:



Both the oxygen and the carbon now have an octet of electrons, so this is an acceptable Lewis electron structure. The O has two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, and C has four bonding pairs. This is the structure of formaldehyde, which is used in embalming fluid. An alternative structure can be drawn with one H bonded to O. *Formal charges*, discussed later in this section, suggest that such a structure is less stable than that shown previously.

Example 2.6.1

Write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

1. NCl_3
2. S_2^{2-}
3. NOCl

Given: chemical species

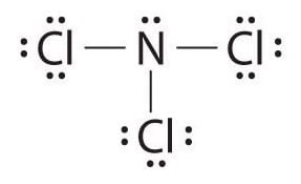
Asked for: Lewis electron structures

Strategy:

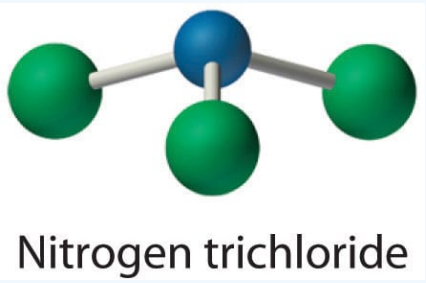
Use the six-step procedure to write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

Solution:

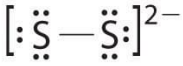
1. Nitrogen is less electronegative than chlorine, and halogen atoms are usually terminal, so nitrogen is the central atom. The nitrogen atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons and each chlorine atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, for a total of 26 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for each N–Cl bond and adding three lone pairs to each Cl account for (3 × 2) + (3 × 2 × 3) = 24 electrons. Rule 5 leads us to place the remaining 2 electrons on the central N:



Nitrogen trichloride is an unstable oily liquid once used to bleach flour; this use is now prohibited in the United States.



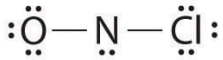
2. In a diatomic molecule or ion, we do not need to worry about a central atom. Each sulfur atom (group 16) contains 6 valence electrons, and we need to add 2 electrons for the –2 charge, giving a total of 14 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for the S–S bond, we arrange the remaining 12 electrons as three lone pairs on each sulfur, giving each S atom an octet of electrons:



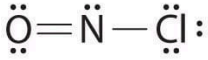
3. Because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen or chlorine, it is the central atom. The N atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons, the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, and the Cl atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, giving a total of 18 valence electrons. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms uses 4 electrons and gives the following:



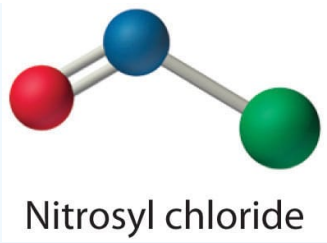
Adding three lone pairs each to oxygen and to chlorine uses 12 more electrons, leaving 2 electrons to place as a lone pair on nitrogen:



Because this Lewis structure has only 6 electrons around the central nitrogen, a lone pair of electrons on a terminal atom must be used to form a bonding pair. We could use a lone pair on either O or Cl. Because we have seen many structures in which O forms a double bond but none with a double bond to Cl, it is reasonable to select a lone pair from O to give the following:



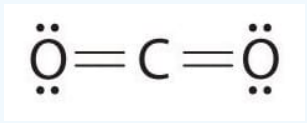
All atoms now have octet configurations. This is the Lewis electron structure of nitrosyl chloride, a highly corrosive, reddish-orange gas.



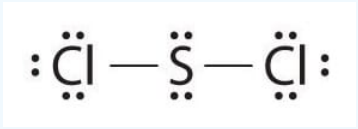
Exercise 2.6.1

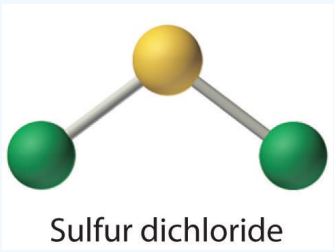
Write Lewis electron structures for CO_2 and SCl_2, a vile-smelling, unstable red liquid that is used in the manufacture of rubber.

Answer

1. 



2. 



YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

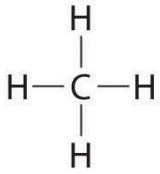
View this YouTube Video online

Lewis Structure of Molecules: https://youtu.be/xWiFCqA9Ur0

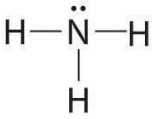
Using Lewis Electron Structures to Explain Stoichiometry

Lewis dot symbols provide a simple rationalization of why elements form compounds with the observed stoichiometries. In the Lewis model, the number of bonds formed by an element in a neutral compound is the same as the number of unpaired electrons it must share with other atoms to complete its octet of electrons. For the elements of Group 17 (the halogens), this number is

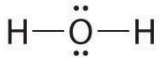
one; for the elements of Group 16 (the chalcogens), it is two; for Group 15 elements, three; and for Group 14 elements four. These requirements are illustrated by the following Lewis structures for the hydrides of the lightest members of each group:



Group 14



Group 15

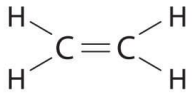


Group 16



Group 17

Elements may form multiple bonds to complete an octet. In ethylene, for example, each carbon contributes two electrons to the double bond, giving each carbon an octet (two electrons/bond × four bonds = eight electrons). Neutral structures with fewer or more bonds exist, but they are unusual and violate the octet rule.



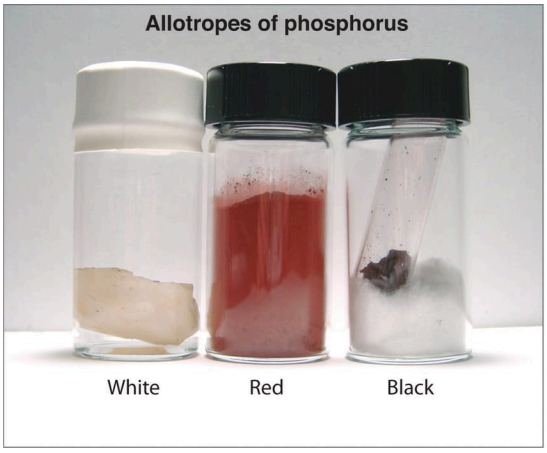
Ethylene

Allotropes of an element can have very different physical and chemical properties because of different three-dimensional arrangements of the atoms; the number of bonds formed by the component atoms, however, is always the same. As noted at the beginning of the chapter, diamond is a hard, transparent solid; graphite is a soft, black solid; and the fullerenes have open cage structures. Despite these differences, the carbon atoms in all three allotropes form four bonds, in accordance with the octet rule.

Note

Lewis structures explain why the elements of groups 14–17 form neutral compounds with four, three, two, and one bonded atom(s), respectively.

Elemental phosphorus also exists in three forms: white phosphorus, a toxic, waxy substance that initially glows and then spontaneously ignites on contact with air; red phosphorus, an amorphous substance that is used commercially in safety matches, fireworks, and smoke bombs; and black phosphorus, an unreactive crystalline solid with a texture similar to graphite (Figure 2.6.3). Nonetheless, the phosphorus atoms in all three forms obey the octet rule and form three bonds per phosphorus atom.

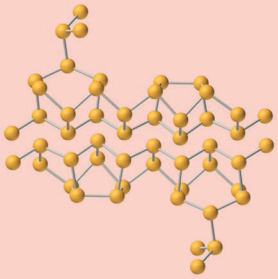


White phosphorus



Volatile waxy white solid. Dangerously reactive in air: glows with a white light and spontaneously bursts into flame.
Melting point: 44.2°C

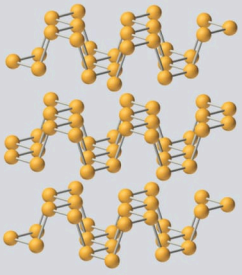
Red phosphorus



Red powder. Nonreactive with air at 25°C.

Melting point: 590°C

Black phosphorus



Black crystalline solid. Nonreactive with air at 25°C.
Melting point: 610°C

Figure 2.6.3*: The Three Allotropes of Phosphorus: White, Red, and Black. ll three forms contain only phosphorus atoms, but they differ in the arrangement and connectivity of their atoms. White phosphorus contains P_4 tetrahedra, red phosphorus is a network of linked P_8 and P_9 units, and black phosphorus forms sheets of six-membered rings. As a result, their physical and chemical properties differ dramatically.*

Formal Charges

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

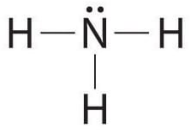
To calculate formal charges, we assign electrons in the molecule to individual atoms according to these rules:

- Nonbonding electrons are assigned to the atom on which they are located.
- Bonding electrons are divided equally between the bonded atoms.

For each atom, we then compute a formal charge:

$$formal\ charge = \underset{(free\ atom)}{valence\ e^-} - \underset{(atom\ in\ Lewis\ structure)}{\left(non-bonding\ e^- + \frac{bonding\ e^-}{2}\right)} \text{ (atom in Lewis structure)}$$

To illustrate this method, let's calculate the formal charge on the atoms in ammonia (NH_3) whose Lewis electron structure is as follows:



Ammonia

A neutral nitrogen atom has five valence electrons (it is in group 15). From its Lewis electron structure, the nitrogen atom in ammonia has one lone pair and shares three bonding pairs with hydrogen atoms, so nitrogen itself is assigned a total of five electrons [2 nonbonding e^- + (6 bonding e^-/2)]. Substituting into Equation 8.5.2, we obtain

$$formal\ charge\,(N) = 5\ valence\ e^- - \left(2\ non-bonding\ e^- + \frac{6\ bonding\ e^-}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{2.6.1}$$

A neutral hydrogen atom has one valence electron. Each hydrogen atom in the molecule shares one pair of bonding electrons and is therefore assigned one electron [0 nonbonding e^- + (2 bonding e^-/2)]. Using Equation 8.5.2 to calculate the formal charge on hydrogen, we obtain

$$formal\ charge\,(H) = 1\ valence\ e^- - \left(0\ non-bonding\ e^- + \frac{2\ bonding\ e^-}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{2.6.2}$$

The hydrogen atoms in ammonia have the same number of electrons as neutral hydrogen atoms, and so their formal charge is also zero. Adding together the formal charges should give us the overall charge on the molecule or ion. In this example, the nitrogen and each hydrogen has a formal charge of zero. When summed the overall charge is zero, which is consistent with the overall charge on the NH_3 molecule.

Note

An atom, molecule, or ion has a formal charge of zero if it has the number of bonds that is typical for that species.

Typically, the structure with the most charges on the atoms closest to zero is the more stable Lewis structure. In cases where there are positive or negative formal charges on various atoms, stable structures generally have negative formal charges on the more electronegative atoms and positive formal charges on the less electronegative atoms. The next example further demonstrates how to calculate formal charges.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Lewis Structure of Charged Molecules: https://youtu.be/pTkziPtvMYU

Example 2.6.2

Calculate the formal charges on each atom in the NH_4^+ ion.

Given: chemical species

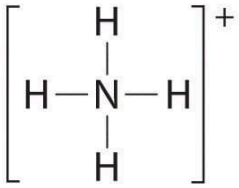
Asked for: formal charges

Strategy:

Identify the number of valence electrons in each atom in the NH_4^+ ion. Use the Lewis electron structure of NH_4^+ to identify the number of bonding and nonbonding electrons associated with each atom and then use Equation 8.5.2 to calculate the formal charge on each atom.

Solution:

The Lewis electron structure for the NH_4^+ ion is as follows:



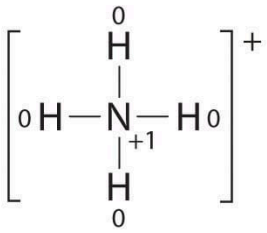
The nitrogen atom shares four bonding pairs of electrons, and a neutral nitrogen atom has five valence electrons. Using Equation 8.5.1, the formal charge on the nitrogen atom is therefore

$$formal\ charge\,(N) = 5 - \left(0 + \frac{8}{2}\right) = 1 \tag{2.6.3}$$

Each hydrogen atom in has one bonding pair. The formal charge on each hydrogen atom is therefore

$$formal\ charge\,(H) = 1 - \left(0 + \frac{2}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{2.6.4}$$

The formal charges on the atoms in the NH_4^+ ion are thus

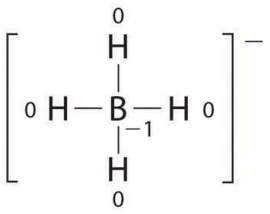


Adding together the formal charges on the atoms should give us the total charge on the molecule or ion. In this case, the sum of the formal charges is 0 + 1 + 0 + 0 + 0 = +1.

Exercise 2.6.2

Write the formal charges on all atoms in BH_4^-.

Answer



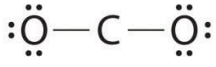
If an atom in a molecule or ion has the number of bonds that is typical for that atom (e.g., four bonds for carbon), its formal charge is zero.

Using Formal Charges to Distinguish Viable Lewis Structures

As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

CO_2

1. C is less electronegative than O, so it is the central atom.
2. C has 4 valence electrons and each O has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 16 valence electrons.
3. Placing one electron pair between the C and each O gives O–C–O, with 12 electrons left over.
4. Dividing the remaining electrons between the O atoms gives three lone pairs on each atom:



This structure has an octet of electrons around each O atom but only 4 electrons around the C atom.

5. No electrons are left for the central atom.
6. To give the carbon atom an octet of electrons, we can convert two of the lone pairs on the oxygen atoms to bonding electron

pairs. There are, however, two ways to do this. We can either take one electron pair from each oxygen to form a symmetrical structure or take both electron pairs from a single oxygen atom to give an asymmetrical structure:



Both Lewis electron structures give all three atoms an octet. How do we decide between these two possibilities? The formal charges for the two Lewis electron structures of CO_2 are as follows:



Both Lewis structures have a net formal charge of zero, but the structure on the right has a +1 charge on the more electronegative atom (O). Thus the symmetrical Lewis structure on the left is predicted to be more stable, and it is, in fact, the structure observed experimentally. Remember, though, that formal charges do *not* represent the actual charges on atoms in a molecule or ion. They are used simply as a bookkeeping method for predicting the most stable Lewis structure for a compound.

Note

The Lewis structure with the set of formal charges closest to zero is usually the most stable.

Example 2.6.3: The Thiocyanate Ion

The thiocyanate ion (SCN^-), which is used in printing and as a corrosion inhibitor against acidic gases, has at least two possible Lewis electron structures. Draw two possible structures, assign formal charges on all atoms in both, and decide which is the preferred arrangement of electrons.

Given: chemical species

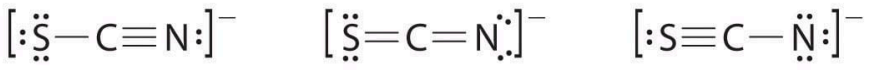
Asked for: Lewis electron structures, formal charges, and preferred arrangement

Strategy:

A. Use the step-by-step procedure to write two plausible Lewis electron structures for SCN^-.
B. Calculate the formal charge on each atom using Equation 8.5.1.
C. Predict which structure is preferred based on the formal charge on each atom and its electronegativity relative to the other atoms present.

Solution:

A Possible Lewis structures for the SCN^- ion are as follows:



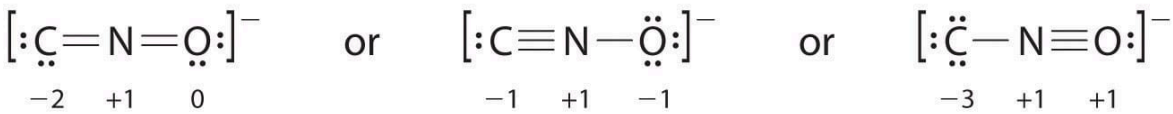
B We must calculate the formal charges on each atom to identify the more stable structure. If we begin with carbon, we notice that the carbon atom in each of these structures shares four bonding pairs, the number of bonds typical for carbon, so it has a formal charge of zero. Continuing with sulfur, we observe that in (a) the sulfur atom shares one bonding pair and has three lone pairs and has a total of six valence electrons. The formal charge on the sulfur atom is therefore $6-\left(6+\frac{2}{2}\right)=-1.5$ $-\left(4+\frac{4}{2}\right)=-1$ In (c), nitrogen has a formal charge of –2.

C Which structure is preferred? Structure (b) is preferred because the negative charge is on the more electronegative atom (N), and it has lower formal charges on each atom as compared to structure (c): 0, –1 versus +1, –2.

Exercise 2.6.3: The Fulminate Ion

Salts containing the fulminate ion (CNO^-) are used in explosive detonators. Draw three Lewis electron structures for CNO^- and use formal charges to predict which is more stable. (Note: N is the central atom.)

Answer



The second structure is predicted to be more stable.

Summary

- Lewis dot symbols provide a simple rationalization of why elements form compounds with the observed stoichiometries.

A plot of the overall energy of a covalent bond as a function of internuclear distance is identical to a plot of an ionic pair because both result from attractive and repulsive forces between charged entities. In Lewis electron structures, we encounter **bonding pairs**, which are shared by two atoms, and **lone pairs**, which are not shared between atoms. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a **coordinate covalent bond**. Lewis structures are an attempt to rationalize why certain stoichiometries are commonly observed for the elements of particular families. Neutral compounds of group 14 elements typically contain four bonds around each atom (a double bond counts as two, a triple bond as three), whereas neutral compounds of group 15 elements typically contain three bonds. In cases where it is possible to write more than one Lewis electron structure with octets around all the nonhydrogen atoms of a compound, the **formal charge** on each atom in alternative structures must be considered to decide which of the valid structures can be excluded and which is the most reasonable. The formal charge is the difference between the number of valence electrons of the free atom and the number of electrons assigned to it in the compound, where bonding electrons are divided equally between the bonded atoms. The Lewis structure with the lowest formal charges on the atoms is almost always the most stable one.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 2.6: Writing Lewis Structures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 10.4: Writing Lewis Structures is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.7: Resonance

Learning Objectives

- To understand the concept of resonance.

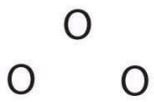
Resonance structures are a set of two or more Lewis Structures that collectively describe the electronic bonding a single polyatomic species including fractional bonds and fractional charges. Resonance structure are capable of describing delocalized electrons that cannot be expressed by a single Lewis formula with an integer number of covalent bonds.

When one Lewis Structure is not enough

Sometimes, even when formal charges are considered, the bonding in some molecules or ions cannot be described by a single Lewis structure. Resonance is a way of describing delocalized electrons within certain molecules or polyatomic ions where the bonding cannot be expressed by a single Lewis formula. A molecule or ion with such delocalized electrons is represented by several contributing structures (also called resonance structures or canonical forms). Such is the case for ozone (O_3), an allotrope of oxygen with a V-shaped structure and an O–O–O angle of 117.5°.

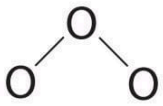
Ozone (O_3)

1. We know that ozone has a V-shaped structure, so one O atom is central:



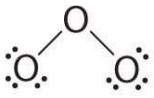
2. Each O atom has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 18 valence electrons.

3. Assigning one bonding pair of electrons to each oxygen–oxygen bond gives



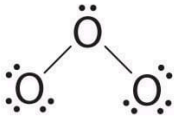
with 14 electrons left over.

4. If we place three lone pairs of electrons on each terminal oxygen, we obtain



and have 2 electrons left over.

5. At this point, both terminal oxygen atoms have octets of electrons. We therefore place the last 2 electrons on the central atom:

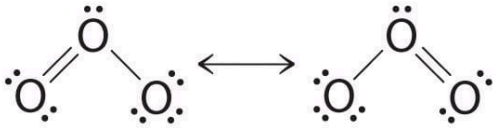


6. The central oxygen has only 6 electrons. We must convert one lone pair on a terminal oxygen atom to a bonding pair of electrons—but which one? Depending on which one we choose, we obtain either



Which is correct? In fact, neither is correct. Both predict one O–O single bond and one O=O double bond. As you will learn, if the bonds were of different types (one single and one double, for example), they would have different lengths. It turns out, however, that both O–O bond distances are identical, 127.2 pm, which is shorter than a typical O–O single bond (148 pm) and longer than the O=O double bond in O_2 (120.7 pm).

Equivalent Lewis dot structures, such as those of ozone, are called resonance structures. The position of the *atoms* is the same in the various resonance structures of a compound, but the position of the *electrons* is different. Double-headed arrows link the different resonance structures of a compound:



The double-headed arrow indicates that the actual electronic structure is an *average* of those shown, not that the molecule oscillates between the two structures.

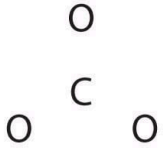
Note

When it is possible to write more than one equivalent resonance structure for a molecule or ion, the actual structure is the *average* of the resonance structures.

The Carbonate (CO_3^{2-}) Ion

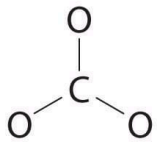
Like ozone, the electronic structure of the carbonate ion cannot be described by a single Lewis electron structure. Unlike O_3, though, the actual structure of CO_3^{2-} is an average of *three* resonance structures.

1. Because carbon is the least electronegative element, we place it in the central position:

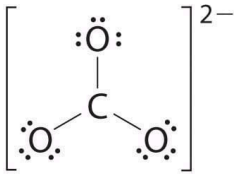


2. Carbon has 4 valence electrons, each oxygen has 6 valence electrons, and there are 2 more for the –2 charge. This gives 4 + (3 × 6) + 2 = 24 valence electrons.

3. Six electrons are used to form three bonding pairs between the oxygen atoms and the carbon:

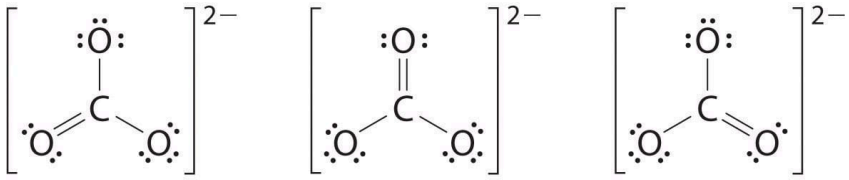


4. We divide the remaining 18 electrons equally among the three oxygen atoms by placing three lone pairs on each and indicating the –2 charge:

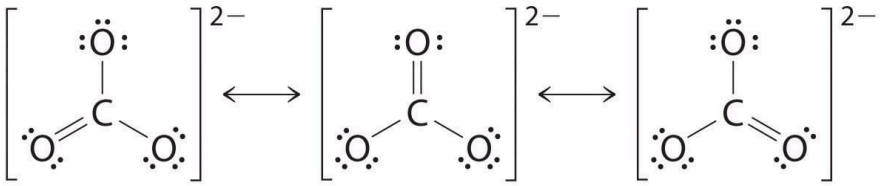


5. No electrons are left for the central atom.

6. At this point, the carbon atom has only 6 valence electrons, so we must take one lone pair from an oxygen and use it to form a carbon–oxygen double bond. In this case, however, there are *three* possible choices:



As with ozone, none of these structures describes the bonding exactly. Each predicts one carbon–oxygen double bond and two carbon–oxygen single bonds, but experimentally all C–O bond lengths are identical. We can write resonance structures (in this case, three of them) for the carbonate ion:

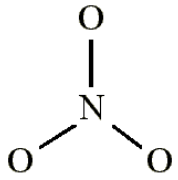


The actual structure is an average of these three resonance structures.

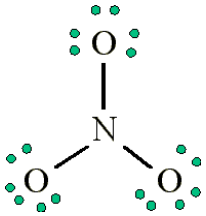
The Nitrate (NO_3^-) ion

1. Count up the valence electrons: (1*5) + (3*6) + 1(ion) = **24** electrons

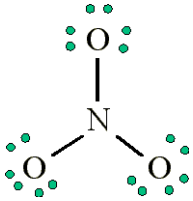
2. Draw the bond connectivities:



3. Add octet electrons to the atoms bonded to the center atom:

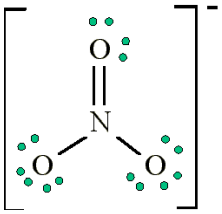


4. Place any leftover electrons (24-24 = **0**) on the center atom:



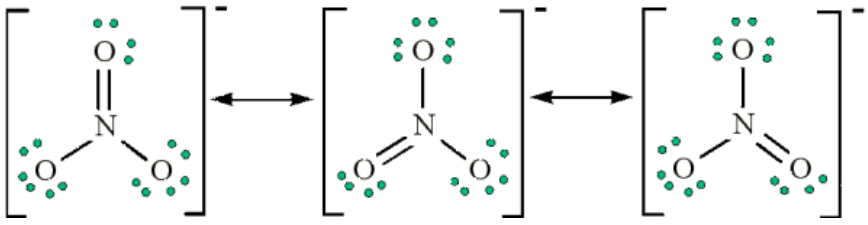
5. Does the central atom have an octet?

- **NO**, it has 6 electrons
- Add a multiple bond (first try a double bond) to see if the central atom can achieve an octet:



6. Does the central atom have an octet?

- YES
- Are there possible resonance structures? YES



Note: We would expect that the bond lengths in the NO_3^- ion to be somewhat shorter than a single bond

Example 2.7.1: Benzene

Benzene is a common organic solvent that was previously used in gasoline; it is no longer used for this purpose, however, because it is now known to be a carcinogen. The benzene molecule (C_6H_6) consists of a regular hexagon of carbon atoms, each of which is also bonded to a hydrogen atom. Use resonance structures to describe the bonding in benzene.

Given: molecular formula and molecular geometry

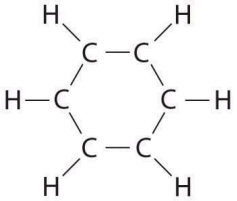
Asked for: resonance structures

Strategy:

A. Draw a structure for benzene illustrating the bonded atoms. Then calculate the number of valence electrons used in this drawing.
B. Subtract this number from the total number of valence electrons in benzene and then locate the remaining electrons such that each atom in the structure reaches an octet.
C. Draw the resonance structures for benzene.

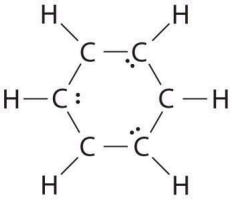
Solution:

A Each hydrogen atom contributes 1 valence electron, and each carbon atom contributes 4 valence electrons, for a total of (6 × 1) + (6 × 4) = 30 valence electrons. If we place a single bonding electron pair between each pair of carbon atoms and between each carbon and a hydrogen atom, we obtain the following:



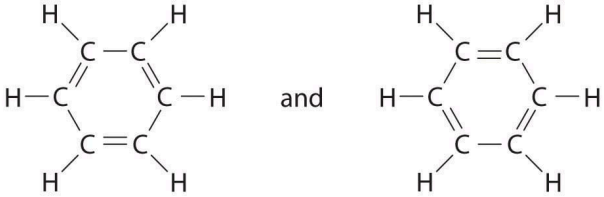
Each carbon atom in this structure has only 6 electrons and has a formal charge of +1, but we have used only 24 of the 30 valence electrons.

B If the 6 remaining electrons are uniformly distributed pairwise on alternate carbon atoms, we obtain the following:

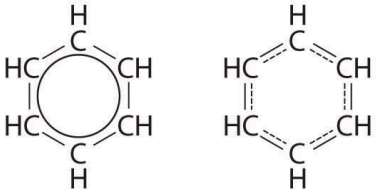


Three carbon atoms now have an octet configuration and a formal charge of –1, while three carbon atoms have only 6 electrons and a formal charge of +1. We can convert each lone pair to a bonding electron pair, which gives each atom an octet of electrons and a formal charge of 0, by making three C=C double bonds.

C There are, however, two ways to do this:



Each structure has alternating double and single bonds, but experimentation shows that each carbon–carbon bond in benzene is identical, with bond lengths (139.9 pm) intermediate between those typically found for a C–C single bond (154 pm) and a C=C double bond (134 pm). We can describe the bonding in benzene using the two resonance structures, but the actual electronic structure is an average of the two. The existence of multiple resonance structures for aromatic hydrocarbons like benzene is often indicated by drawing either a circle or dashed lines inside the hexagon:

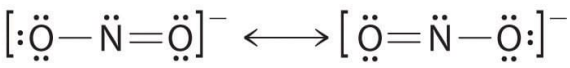


Benzene

Exercise 2.7.1: Nitrate Ion

The sodium salt of nitrite is used to relieve muscle spasms. Draw two resonance structures for the nitrite ion (NO_2^-).

Answer



Resonance structures are particularly common in oxoanions of the *p*-block elements, such as sulfate and phosphate, and in aromatic hydrocarbons, such as benzene and naphthalene.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Resonance Structures: https://youtu.be/aSP0D72MKe4

Summary

Some molecules have two or more chemically equivalent Lewis electron structures, called resonance structures. Resonance is a mental exercise and method within the Valence Bond Theory of bonding that describes the delocalization of electrons within molecules. These structures are written with a **double-headed arrow** between them, indicating that none of the Lewis structures accurately describes the bonding but that the actual structure is an average of the individual resonance structures. Resonance structures are used when one Lewis structure for a single molecule cannot fully describe the bonding that takes place between neighboring atoms relative to the empirical data for the actual bond lengths between those atoms. The net sum of valid resonance structures is defined as a resonance hybrid, which represents the overall delocalization of electrons within the molecule. A molecule that has several resonance structures is more stable than one with fewer. Some resonance structures are more favorable than others.

This page titled 2.7: Resonance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 10.5: Resonance is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.8: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

Learning Objectives

- To assign a Lewis dot symbol to elements not having an octet of electrons in their compounds.

Three cases can be constructed that do not follow the octet rule, and as such, they are known as the exceptions to the octet rule. Following the Octet Rule for Lewis Dot Structures leads to the most accurate depictions of stable molecular and atomic structures and because of this we always want to use the octet rule when drawing Lewis Dot Structures. However, it is hard to imagine that one rule could be followed by all molecules. There is always an exception, and in this case, three exceptions:

1. When there are an odd number of valence electrons
2. When there are too few valence electrons
3. When there are too many valence electrons

Exception 1: Species with Odd Numbers of Electrons

The first exception to the Octet Rule is when there are an odd number of valence electrons. An example of this would be Nitrogen (II) Oxide (NO ,refer to figure one). Nitrogen has 5 valence electrons while Oxygen has 6. The total would be 11 valence electrons to be used. The Octet Rule for this molecule is fulfilled in the above example, however that is with 10 valence electrons. The last one does not know where to go. The lone electron is called an unpaired electron. But where should the unpaired electron go? The unpaired electron is usually placed in the Lewis Dot Structure so that each element in the structure will have the *lowest* formal charge possible. The formal charge is *the perceived charge on an individual atom in a molecule when atoms do not contribute equal numbers of electrons to the bonds they participate in*.

No formal charge at all is the most ideal situation. An example of a stable molecule with an odd number of valence electrons would be nitrogen monoxide. Nitrogen monoxide has 11 valence electrons. If you need more information about formal charges, see Lewis Structures. If we were to imagine nitrogen monoxide had ten valence electrons we would come up with the Lewis Structure (Figure 2.8.1):

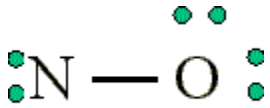


Figure 2.8.1: This is if Nitrogen monoxide has only ten valence electrons, which it does not.

Let's look at the formal charges of Figure 2.8.2 based on this Lewis structure. Nitrogen normally has five valence electrons. In Figure 2.8.1, it has two lone pair electrons and it participates in two bonds (a double bond) with oxygen. This results in nitrogen having a formal charge of +1. Oxygen normally has six valence electrons. In Figure 2.8.1, oxygen has four lone pair electrons and it participates in two bonds with nitrogen. Oxygen therefore has a formal charge of 0. The overall molecule here has a formal charge of +1 (+1 for nitrogen, 0 for oxygen. +1 + 0 = +1). However, if we add the eleventh electron to nitrogen (because we want the molecule to have the *lowest* total formal charge), it will bring both the nitrogen and the molecule's overall charges to zero, the most ideal formal charge situation. That is exactly what is done to get the correct Lewis structure for nitrogen monoxide (Figure 2.8.2):

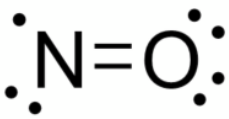


Figure 2.8.2: The proper Lewis structure for NO molecule

Free Radicals

There are actually very few stable molecules with odd numbers of electrons that exist, since that unpaired electron is willing to react with other unpaired electrons. Most odd electron species are highly reactive, which we call Free Radicals. Because of their instability, free radicals bond to atoms in which they can take an electron from in order to become stable, making them very chemically reactive. Radicals are found as both reactants and products, but generally react to form more stable molecules as soon as they can. In order to emphasize the existence of the unpaired electron, radicals are denoted with a dot in front of their chemical symbol as with $\cdot OH$, the hydroxyl radical. An example of a radical you may by familiar with already is the gaseous chlorine atom, denoted $\cdot Cl$. Interestingly, odd Number of Valence Electrons will result in the molecule being paramagnetic.

Exception 2: Incomplete Octets

The second exception to the Octet Rule is when there are too few valence electrons that results in an incomplete Octet. There are even more occasions where the octet rule does not give the most correct depiction of a molecule or ion. This is also the case with incomplete octets. Species with incomplete octets are pretty rare and generally are only found in some beryllium, aluminum, and boron compounds including the boron hydrides. Let's take a look at one such hydride, BH_3 (Borane).

If one was to make a Lewis structure for BH_3 following the basic strategies for drawing Lewis structures, one would probably come up with this structure (Figure 2.8.3):

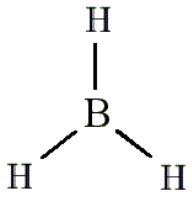


Figure 2.8.3

The problem with this structure is that boron has an incomplete octet; it only has six electrons around it. Hydrogen atoms can naturally only have only 2 electrons in their outermost shell (their version of an octet), and as such there are no spare electrons to form a double bond with boron. One might surmise that the failure of this structure to form complete octets must mean that this bond should be ionic instead of covalent. However, boron has an electronegativity that is very similar to hydrogen, meaning there is likely very little ionic character in the hydrogen to boron bonds, and as such this Lewis structure, though it does not fulfill the octet rule, is likely the best structure possible for depicting BH_3 with Lewis theory. One of the things that may account for BH_3's incomplete octet is that it is commonly a transitory species, formed temporarily in reactions that involve multiple steps.

Let's take a look at another incomplete octet situation dealing with boron, BF_3 (Boron trifluorine). Like with BH_3, the initial drawing of a Lewis structure of BF_3 will form a structure where boron has only six electrons around it (Figure 2.8.4).

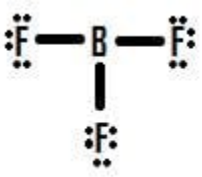


Figure 2.8.4

If you look Figure 2.8.4, you can see that the fluorine atoms possess extra lone pairs that they can use to make additional bonds with boron, and you might think that all you have to do is make one lone pair into a bond and the structure will be correct. If we add one double bond between boron and one of the fluorines we get the following Lewis Structure (Figure 2.8.5):

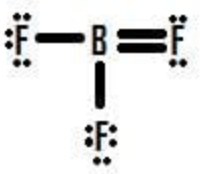


Figure 2.8.5

Each fluorine has eight electrons, and the boron atom has eight as well! Each atom has a perfect octet, right? Not so fast. We must examine the formal charges of this structure. The fluorine that shares a double bond with boron has six electrons around it (four from its two lone pairs of electrons and one each from its two bonds with boron). This is one less electron than the number of valence electrons it would have naturally (Group Seven elements have seven valence electrons), so it has a formal charge of +1. The two flourines that share single bonds with boron have seven electrons around them (six from their three lone pairs and one from their single bonds with boron). This is the same amount as the number of valence electrons they would have on their own, so they both have a formal charge of zero. Finally, boron has four electrons around it (one from each of its four bonds shared with fluorine). This is one more electron than the number of valence electrons that boron would have on its own, and as such boron has a formal charge of -1.

This structure is supported by the fact that the experimentally determined bond length of the boron to fluorine bonds in BF_3 is less than what would be typical for a single bond (see Bond Order and Lengths). However, this structure contradicts one of the major rules of formal charges: Negative formal charges are supposed to be found on the more electronegative atom(s) in a bond, but in the structure depicted in Figure 2.8.5, a *positive* formal charge is found on fluorine, which not only is the most electronegative element in the structure, but the most electronegative element in the entire periodic table ($\chi = 4.0$). Boron on the other hand, with the much lower electronegativity of 2.0, has the negative formal charge in this structure. This formal charge-electronegativity disagreement makes this double-bonded structure impossible.

However the large electronegativity difference here, as opposed to in BH_3, signifies significant polar bonds between boron and fluorine, which means there is a high ionic character to this molecule. This suggests the possibility of a semi-ionic structure such as seen in Figure 2.8.6:

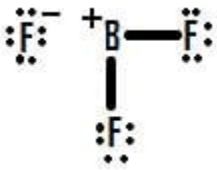


Figure 2.8.6

None of these three structures is the "correct" structure in this instance. The most "correct" structure is most likely a resonance of all three structures: the one with the incomplete octet (Figure 2.8.4), the one with the double bond (Figure 2.8.5), and the one with the ionic bond (Figure 2.8.6). The most contributing structure is probably the incomplete octet structure (due to Figure 2.8.5 being basically impossible and Figure 2.8.6 not matching up with the behavior and properties of BF_3). As you can see even when other possibilities exist, incomplete octets may best portray a molecular structure.

As a side note, it is important to note that BF_3 frequently bonds with a F^- ion in order to form BF_4^- rather than staying as BF_3. This structure completes boron's octet and it is more common in nature. This exemplifies the fact that incomplete octets are rare, and other configurations are typically more favorable, including bonding with additional ions as in the case of BF_3 .

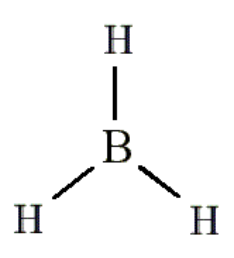
Example 2.8.1: NF_3

Draw the Lewis structure for boron trifluoride (BF_3).

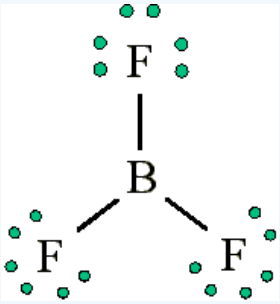
Solution

1. Add electrons (3*7) + 3 = **24**

2. Draw connectivities:



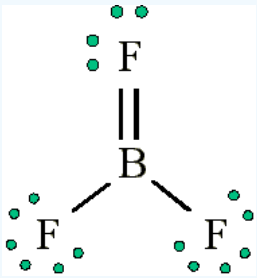
3. Add octets to outer atoms:



4. Add extra electrons (24-24=0) to central atom:

5. Does central electron have octet?

- NO. It has 6 electrons
- Add a multiple bond (double bond) to see if central atom can achieve an octet:

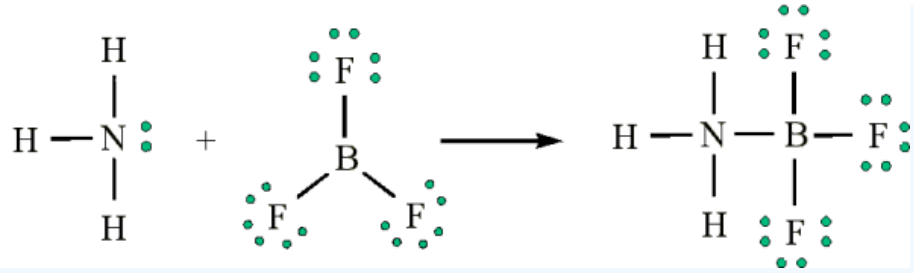


6. The central Boron now has an octet (there would be three resonance Lewis structures)

However...

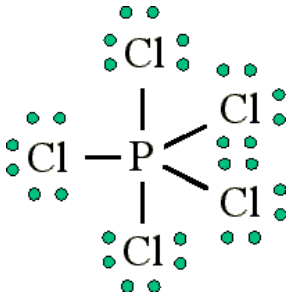
- In this structure with a double bond the fluorine atom is sharing extra electrons with the boron.
- The fluorine would have a '+' partial charge, and the boron a '-' partial charge, this is inconsistent with the electronegativities of fluorine and boron.
- Thus, ***the structure of BF_3, with single bonds, and 6 valence electrons around the central boron is the most likely structure***

BF_3 reacts strongly with compounds which have an unshared pair of electrons which can be used to form a bond with the boron:



Exception 3: Expanded Valence Shells

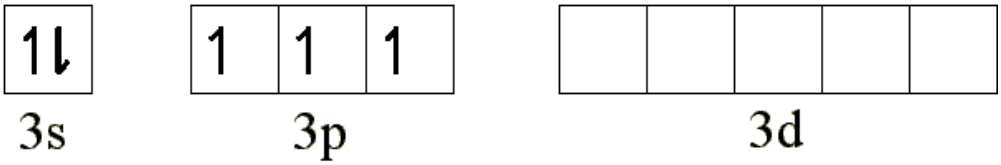
More common than incomplete octets are expanded octets where the central atom in a Lewis structure has more than eight electrons in its valence shell. In expanded octets, the central atom can have ten electrons, or even twelve. *Molecules with expanded octets involve highly electronegative terminal atoms, and a nonmetal central atom found in the third period or below*, which those terminal atoms bond to. For example, PCl_5 is a legitimate compound (whereas NCl_5) is not:



Note

Expanded valence shells are observed **only** for elements in period 3 (i.e. n=3) and beyond

The 'octet' rule is based upon available ns and n*p* orbitals for valence electrons (2 electrons in the *s* orbitals, and 6 in the *p* orbitals). Beginning with the n=3 principle quantum number, the d orbitals become available (*l*=2). The orbital diagram for the valence shell of phosphorous is:



Hence, the third period elements occasionally exceed the octet rule by using their empty d orbitals to accommodate additional electrons. Size is also an important consideration:

- The larger the central atom, the larger the number of electrons which can surround it
- Expanded valence shells occur most often when the central atom is bonded to small electronegative atoms, such as F, Cl and O.

There is currently much scientific exploration and inquiry into the reason why expanded valence shells are found. The top area of interest is figuring out where the extra pair(s) of electrons are found. Many chemists think that there is not a very large energy difference between the 3p and 3d orbitals, and as such it is plausible for extra electrons to easily fill the 3d orbital when an expanded octet is more favorable than having a complete octet. This matter is still under hot debate, however and there is even debate as to what makes an expanded octet more favorable than a configuration that follows the octet rule.

One of the situations where expanded octet structures are treated as more favorable than Lewis structures that follow the octet rule is when the formal charges in the expanded octet structure are smaller than in a structure that adheres to the octet rule, or when there are less formal charges in the expanded octet than in the structure a structure that adheres to the octet rule.

Example 2.8.2: The SO_4^{-2} ion

Such is the case for the sulfate ion, SO_4^{-2}. A strict adherence to the octet rule forms the following Lewis structure:

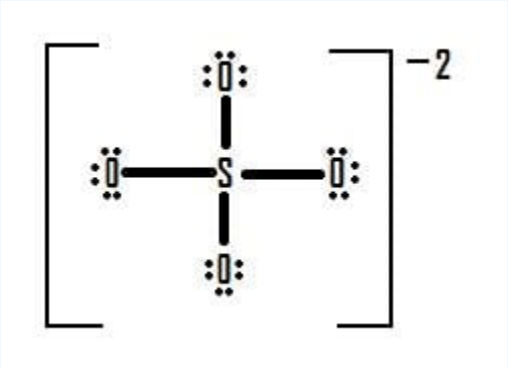


Figure 2.8.12

If we look at the formal charges on this molecule, we can see that all of the oxygen atoms have seven electrons around them (six from the three lone pairs and one from the bond with sulfur). This is one more electron than the number of valence electrons then they would have normally, and as such each of the oxygens in this structure has a formal charge of -1. Sulfur has four electrons around it in this structure (one from each of its four bonds) which is two electrons more than the number of valence electrons it would have normally, and as such it carries a formal charge of +2.

If instead we made a structure for the sulfate ion with an expanded octet, it would look like this:

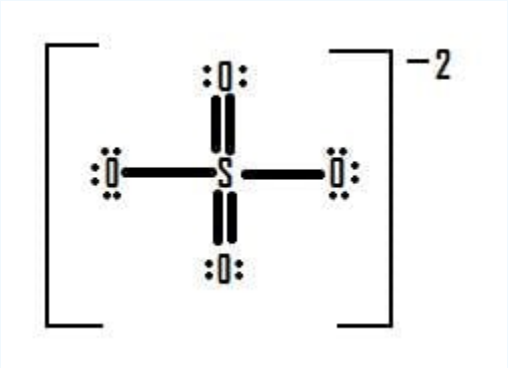


Figure 2.8.13

Looking at the formal charges for this structure, the sulfur ion has six electrons around it (one from each of its bonds). This is the same amount as the number of valence electrons it would have naturally. This leaves sulfur with a formal charge of zero. The two oxygens that have double bonds to sulfur have six electrons each around them (four from the two lone pairs and one each from the two bonds with sulfur). This is the same amount of electrons as the number of valence electrons that oxygen atoms have on their own, and as such both of these oxygen atoms have a formal charge of zero. The two oxygens with the single bonds to sulfur have seven electrons around them in this structure (six from the three lone pairs and one from the bond to sulfur). That is one electron more than the number of valence electrons that oxygen would have on its own, and as such those two oxygens carry a formal charge of -1. Remember that with formal charges, the goal is to keep the formal charges (or the difference between the formal charges of each atom) as small as possible. The number of and values of the formal charges on this structure (-1 and 0 (difference of 1) in Figure 2.8.12, as opposed to +2 and -1 (difference of 3) in Figure 2.8.12) is significantly lower than on the structure that follows the octet rule, and as such an expanded octet is plausible, and even preferred to a normal octet, in this case.

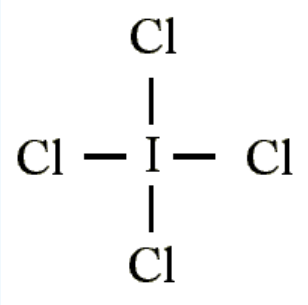
Example 2.8.3: The ICl_4^- Ion

Draw the Lewis structure for ICl_4^- ion.

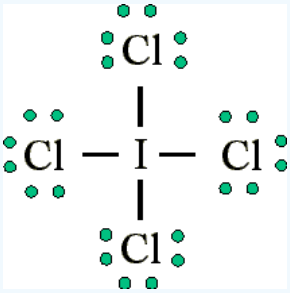
Solution

1. Count up the valence electrons: 7+(4*7)+1 = **36** electrons

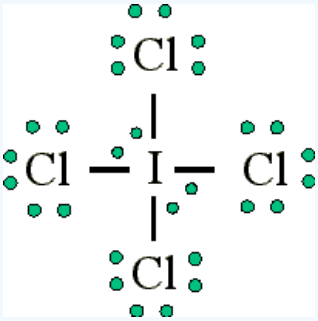
2. Draw the connectivities:



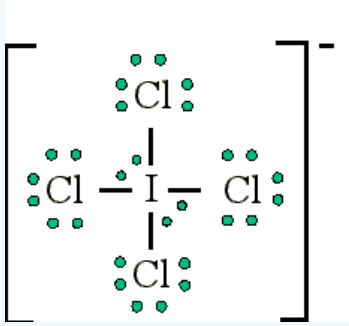
3. Add octet of electrons to outer atoms:



4. Add extra electrons (36-32=**4**) to central atom:



5. The ICl_4^- ion thus has 12 valence electrons around the central Iodine (in the 5*d* orbitals)



Expanded Lewis structures are also plausible depictions of molecules when experimentally determined bond lengths suggest partial double bond characters even when single bonds would already fully fill the octet of the central atom. Despite the cases for expanded octets, as mentioned for incomplete octets, it is important to keep in mind that, in general, the octet rule applies.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Expanded Valence Shell Bonding: https://youtu.be/Y4fBdOJBSHI

Outside links

- http://www.saskschools.ca/curr_content/chem20/covmolec/exceptns.html
- student.ccbcmd.edu/~cyau1/121...ctetSp2006.pdf
- http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KEQw9uQ8fUU
- www.rice.edu/~jenky/sports/antiox.html

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph H.; Harwood, William S.; Herring, F. G.; Madura, Jeffrey D. General Chemistry: Principles & Modern Applications. 9th Ed. New Jersey. Pearson Education, Inc. 2007.
2. Moore, John W.; Stanitski, Conrad L.; Jurs, Peter C. Chemistry; The Molecular Science. 2nd Ed. 2004.

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

This page titled 2.8: Exceptions to the Octet Rule is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 10.6: Exceptions to the Octet Rule is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.9: Shapes of Molecules

Learning Objectives

- To use the VSEPR model to predict molecular geometries.
- To predict whether a molecule has a dipole moment.

The Lewis electron-pair approach can be used to predict the number and types of bonds between the atoms in a substance, and it indicates which atoms have lone pairs of electrons. This approach gives no information about the actual arrangement of atoms in space, however. We continue our discussion of structure and bonding by introducing the **valence-shell electron-pair repulsion** (VSEPR) model (pronounced "vesper"), which can be used to predict the shapes of many molecules and polyatomic ions. Keep in mind, however, that the VSEPR model, like any model, is a limited representation of reality; the model provides no information about bond lengths or the presence of multiple bonds.

The VSEPR Model

The VSEPR model can predict the structure of nearly any molecule or polyatomic ion in which the central atom is a nonmetal, as well as the structures of many molecules and polyatomic ions with a central metal atom. The premise of the VSEPR theory is that electron pairs located in bonds and lone pairs repel each other and will therefore adopt the geometry that places electron pairs as far apart from each other as possible. This theory is very simplistic and does not account for the subtleties of orbital interactions that influence molecular shapes; however, the simple VSEPR counting procedure accurately predicts the three-dimensional structures of a large number of compounds, which cannot be predicted using the Lewis electron-pair approach.

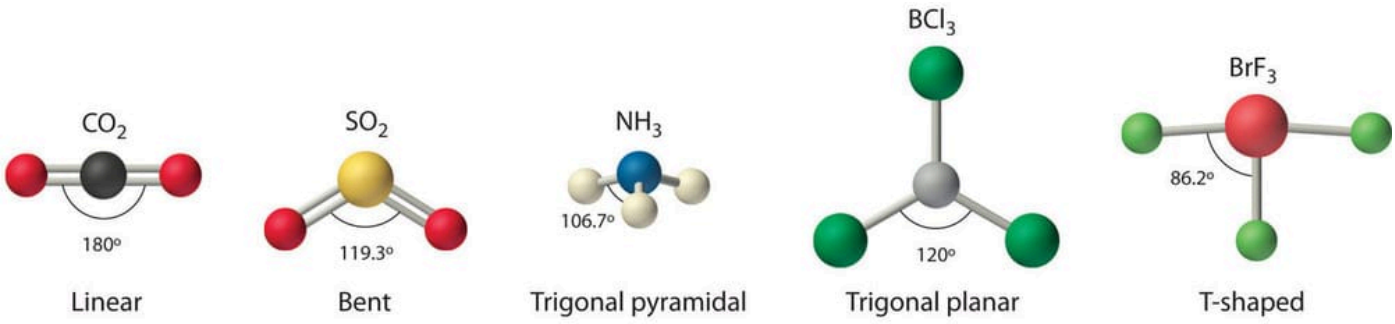


Figure 2.9.1: Common Structures for Molecules and Polyatomic Ions That Consist of a Central Atom Bonded to Two or Three Other Atoms. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

We can use the VSEPR model to predict the geometry of most polyatomic molecules and ions by focusing only on the number of electron pairs around the *central atom*, ignoring all other valence electrons present. According to this model, valence electrons in the Lewis structure form *groups*, which may consist of a single bond, a double bond, a triple bond, a lone pair of electrons, or even a single unpaired electron, which in the VSEPR model is counted as a lone pair. Because electrons repel each other electrostatically, the most stable arrangement of electron groups (i.e., the one with the lowest energy) is the one that minimizes repulsions. Groups are positioned around the central atom in a way that produces the molecular structure with the lowest energy, as illustrated in Figures 2.9.1 and 2.9.2.

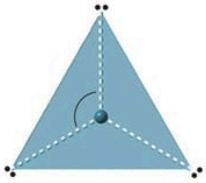
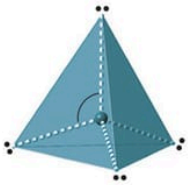
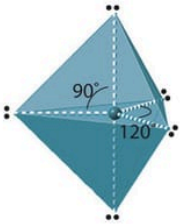
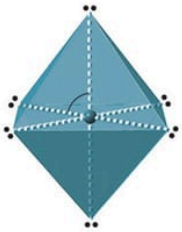
Electron Groups	2	3	4	5	6
Geometry	Linear	Trigonal planar	Tetrahedral	Trigonal bipyramidal	Octahedral
					
Predicted Bond Angles	180°	120°	109.5°	90°, 120°	90°

Figure 2.9.2: Electron Geometries for Species with Two to Six Electron Groups. Groups are placed around the central atom in a way that produces a molecular structure with the lowest energy, that is, the one that minimizes repulsions. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

In the VSEPR model, the molecule or polyatomic ion is given an AX_mE_n designation, where A is the central atom, X is a bonded atom, E is a nonbonding valence electron group (usually a lone pair of electrons), and m and n are integers. Each group around the central atom is designated as a bonding pair (BP) or lone (nonbonding) pair (LP). From the BP and LP interactions we can predict both the relative positions of the atoms and the angles between the bonds, called the bond angles. Using this information, we can describe the molecular geometry, the arrangement of the *bonded atoms* in a molecule or polyatomic ion.

VESPR Produce to predict Molecular geometry

This VESPR procedure is summarized as follows:

1. Draw the Lewis electron structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion.
2. Determine the electron group arrangement around the central atom that minimizes repulsions.
3. Assign an AX_mE_n designation; then identify the LP–LP, LP–BP, or BP–BP interactions and predict deviations from ideal bond angles.
4. Describe the molecular geometry.

We will illustrate the use of this procedure with several examples, beginning with atoms with two electron groups. In our discussion we will refer to Figure 2.9.2 and Figure 2.9.3, which summarize the common molecular geometries and idealized bond angles of molecules and ions with two to six electron groups.

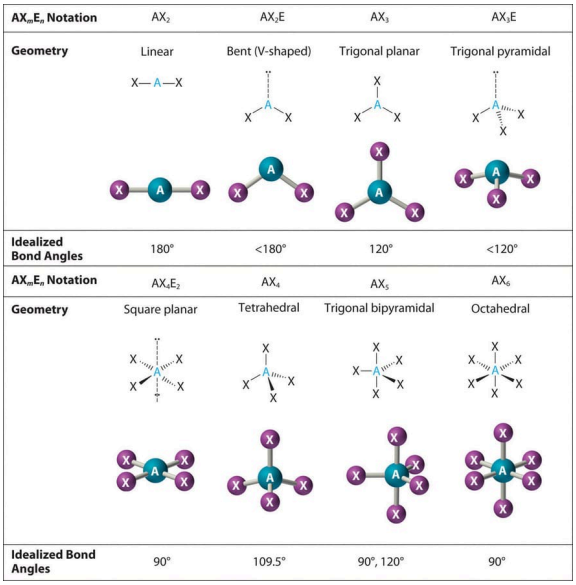


Figure 2.9.3: Common Molecular Geometries for Species with Two to Six Electron Groups. Lone pairs are shown using a dashed line. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

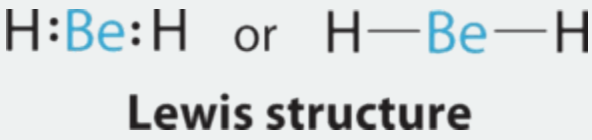
Linear, bent, trigonal planar, trigonal pyramidal, square planar, tetrahedral, trigonal bipyramidal, octahedral.

Two Electron Groups

Our first example is a molecule with two bonded atoms and no lone pairs of electrons, BeH_2.

AX_2 Molecules: BeH_2

1. The central atom, beryllium, contributes two valence electrons, and each hydrogen atom contributes one. The Lewis electron structure is



Lewis structure

Figure 2.9.2 that the arrangement that minimizes repulsions places the groups 180° apart. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

3. Both groups around the central atom are bonding pairs (BP). Thus BeH_2 is designated as AX_2.

4. From Figure 2.9.3 we see that with two bonding pairs, the molecular geometry that minimizes repulsions in BeH_2 is *linear*.

AX_2 Molecules: CO_2

1. The central atom, carbon, contributes four valence electrons, and each oxygen atom contributes six. The Lewis electron structure is



2. The carbon atom forms two double bonds. Each double bond is a group, so there are two electron groups around the central atom. Like BeH_2, the arrangement that minimizes repulsions places the groups 180° apart.

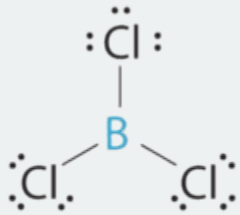
3. Once again, both groups around the central atom are bonding pairs (BP), so CO_2 is designated as AX_2.

4. VSEPR only recognizes groups around the *central* atom. Thus the lone pairs on the oxygen atoms do not influence the molecular geometry. With two bonding pairs on the central atom and no lone pairs, the molecular geometry of CO_2 is linear (Figure 2.9.3). The structure of CO_2 is shown in Figure 2.9.1.

Three Electron Groups

AX_3 Molecules: BCl_3

1. The central atom, boron, contributes three valence electrons, and each chlorine atom contributes seven valence electrons. The Lewis electron structure is



Lewis structure

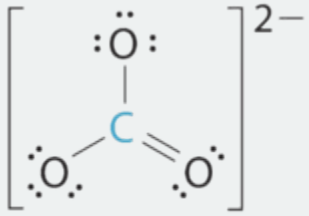
Figure 2.9.2): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

3. All electron groups are bonding pairs (BP), so the structure is designated as AX_3.

4. From Figure 2.9.3 we see that with three bonding pairs around the central atom, the molecular geometry of BCl_3 is *trigonal planar*, as shown in Figure 2.9.2.

AX_3 Molecules: CO_3^{2-}

1. The central atom, carbon, has four valence electrons, and each oxygen atom has six valence electrons. As you learned previously, the Lewis electron structure of one of three resonance forms is represented as



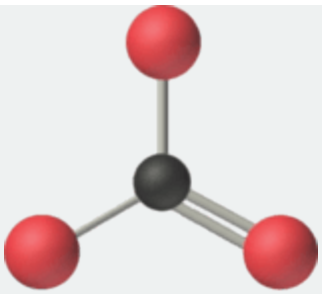
Lewis structure

Figure 2.9.2).

The three oxygens are arranged in a triangular shape with carbon at the center. Two of the oxygens have three lone pairs. One ocht oxygens has 2 lone pairs and is double bonded to the carbon. The molecule has a minus 2 charge.

3. All electron groups are bonding pairs (BP). With three bonding groups around the central atom, the structure is designated as AX_3.

4. We see from Figure 2.9.3 that the molecular geometry of CO_3^{2-} is trigonal planar with bond angles of 120°.



In our next example we encounter the effects of lone pairs and multiple bonds on molecular geometry for the first time.

AX_2E Molecules: SO_2

1. The central atom, sulfur, has 6 valence electrons, as does each oxygen atom. With 18 valence electrons, the Lewis electron structure is shown below.

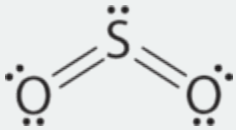


Figure 2.9.2): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

The two oxygens are double bonded to the sulfur. The oxygens have 2 lone pairs while sulfur had one lone pair.

3. There are two bonding pairs and one lone pair, so the structure is designated as AX_2E. This designation has a total of three electron pairs, two X and one E. Because a lone pair is not shared by two nuclei, it occupies more space near the central atom than a bonding pair (Figure 2.9.4). Thus bonding pairs and lone pairs repel each other electrostatically in the order BP–BP < LP–BP < LP–LP. In SO_2, we have one BP–BP interaction and two LP–BP interactions.

4. The molecular geometry is described only by the positions of the nuclei, *not* by the positions of the lone pairs. Thus with two nuclei and one lone pair the shape is *bent*, or *V shaped*, which can be viewed as a trigonal planar arrangement with a missing vertex (Figures 2.9.2 and 2.9.3). The O-S-O bond angle is expected to be *less than* 120° because of the extra space taken up by the lone pair.

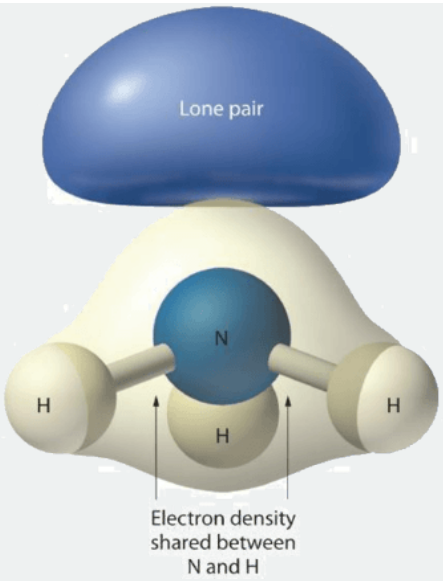
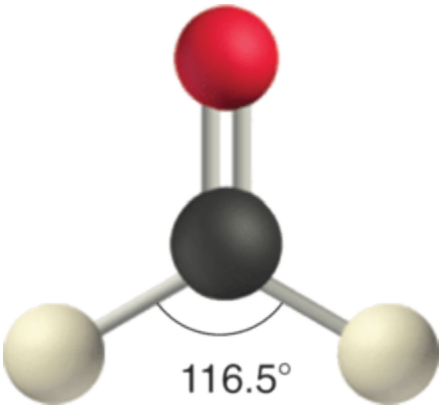


Figure 2.9.4: The Difference in the Space Occupied by a Lone Pair of Electrons and by a Bonding Pair. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

As with SO_2, this composite model of electron distribution and negative electrostatic potential in ammonia shows that a lone pair of electrons occupies a larger region of space around the nitrogen atom than does a bonding pair of electrons that is shared with a hydrogen atom.

Like lone pairs of electrons, multiple bonds occupy more space around the central atom than a single bond, which can cause other bond angles to be somewhat smaller than expected. This is because a multiple bond has a higher electron density than a single bond, so its electrons occupy more space than those of a single bond. For example, in a molecule such as CH_2O (AX_3), whose structure is shown below, the double bond repels the single bonds more strongly than the single bonds repel each other. This causes a deviation from ideal geometry (an H–C–H bond angle of 116.5° rather than 120°).

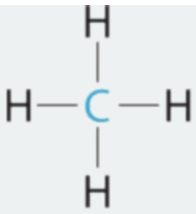


Four Electron Groups

One of the limitations of Lewis structures is that they depict molecules and ions in only two dimensions. With four electron groups, we must learn to show molecules and ions in three dimensions.

AX_4 Molecules: CH_4

1. The central atom, carbon, contributes four valence electrons, and each hydrogen atom has one valence electron, so the full Lewis electron structure is

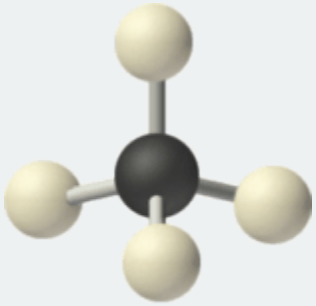


Lewis structure

2. There are four electron groups around the central atom. As shown in Figure 2.9.2, repulsions are minimized by placing the groups in the corners of a tetrahedron with bond angles of 109.5°.

3. All electron groups are bonding pairs, so the structure is designated as AX_4.

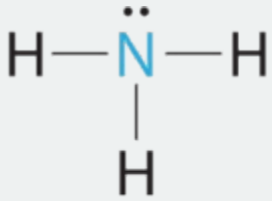
4. With four bonding pairs, the molecular geometry of methane is *tetrahedral* (Figure 2.9.3).



Molecular geometry
(tetrahedral)

AX_3E Molecules: NH_3

1. In ammonia, the central atom, nitrogen, has five valence electrons and each hydrogen donates one valence electron, producing the Lewis electron structure



Lewis structure

2. There are four electron groups around nitrogen, three bonding pairs and one lone pair. Repulsions are minimized by directing each hydrogen atom and the lone pair to the corners of a tetrahedron.

3. With three bonding pairs and one lone pair, the structure is designated as AX_3E. This designation has a total of four electron pairs, three X and one E. We expect the LP–BP interactions to cause the bonding pair angles to deviate significantly from the angles of a perfect tetrahedron.

4. There are three nuclei and one lone pair, so the molecular geometry is *trigonal pyramidal*. In essence, this is a tetrahedron with a vertex missing (Figure 2.9.3). However, the H–N–H bond angles are less than the ideal angle of 109.5° because of LP–BP repulsions (Figure 2.9.3 and Figure 2.9.4).

AX_2E_2 Molecules: H_2O

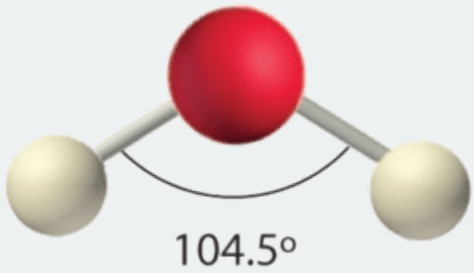
1. Oxygen has six valence electrons and each hydrogen has one valence electron, producing the Lewis electron structure



Figure 2.9.2: (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

3. With two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, the structure is designated as AX_2E_2 with a total of four electron pairs. Due to LP–LP, LP–BP, and BP–BP interactions, we expect a significant deviation from idealized tetrahedral angles.

4. With two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs of electrons, the structure has significant lone pair interactions. There are two nuclei about the central atom, so the molecular shape is *bent*, or *V shaped*, with an H–O–H angle that is even less than the H–N–H angles in NH_3, as we would expect because of the presence of two lone pairs of electrons on the central atom rather than one. This molecular shape is essentially a tetrahedron with two missing vertices.



Five Electron Groups

In previous examples it did not matter where we placed the electron groups because all positions were equivalent. In some cases, however, the positions are not equivalent. We encounter this situation for the first time with five electron groups.

AX_5 Molecules: PCl_5

1. Phosphorus has five valence electrons and each chlorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure of PCl_5 is

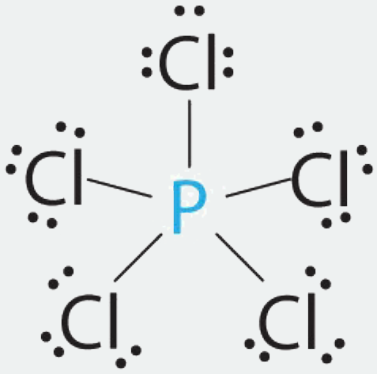
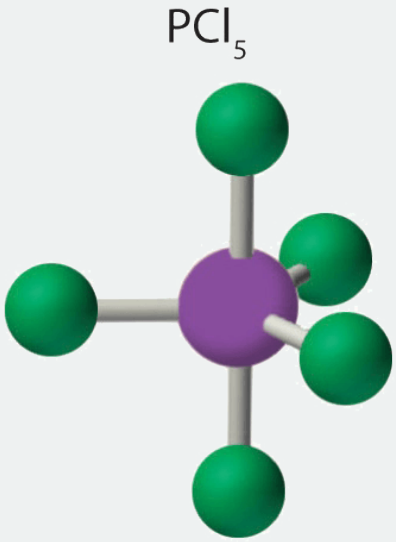


Figure 2.9.2): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

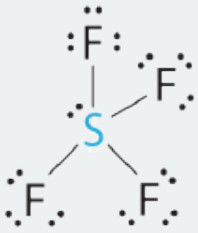
3. All electron groups are bonding pairs, so the structure is designated as AX_5. There are no lone pair interactions.

4. The molecular geometry of PCl_5 is *trigonal bipyramidal*, as shown in Figure 2.9.3. The molecule has three atoms in a plane in *equatorial* positions and two atoms above and below the plane in *axial* positions. The three equatorial positions are separated by 120° from one another, and the two axial positions are at 90° to the equatorial plane. The axial and equatorial positions are not chemically equivalent, as we will see in our next example.



AX_4E Molecules: SF_4

1. The sulfur atom has six valence electrons and each fluorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



Lewis structure

Four fluorenes are bonded to a central sulfur. Each fluorine has three lone pairs. Sulfur has one lone pair.

With an expanded valence, this species is an exception to the octet rule.

2. There are five groups around sulfur, four bonding pairs and one lone pair. With five electron groups, the lowest energy arrangement is a trigonal bipyramid, as shown in Figure 2.9.2.

3. We designate SF_4 as AX_4E; it has a total of five electron pairs. However, because the axial and equatorial positions are not chemically equivalent, where do we place the lone pair? If we place the lone pair in the axial position, we have three LP–BP repulsions at 90°. If we place it in the equatorial position, we have two 90° LP–BP repulsions at 90°. With fewer 90° LP–BP repulsions, we can predict that the structure with the lone pair of electrons in the *equatorial position is more stable than the one with the lone pair in the axial position*. We also expect a deviation from ideal geometry because a lone pair of electrons occupies more space than a bonding pair.

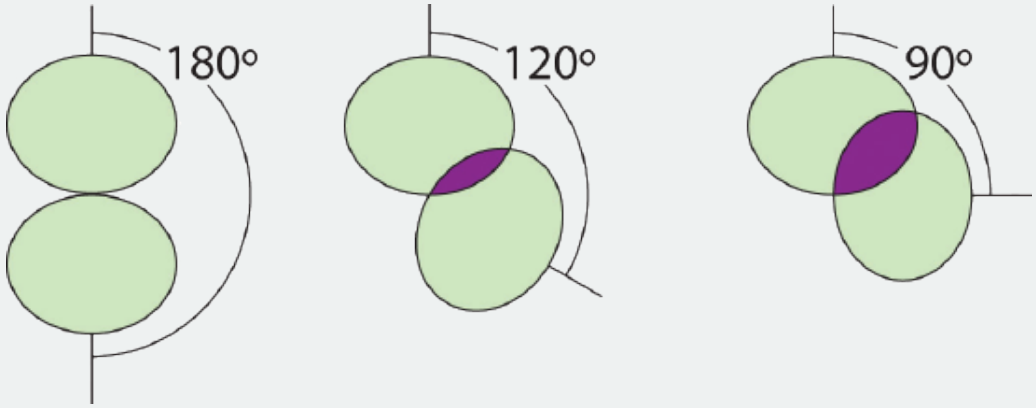
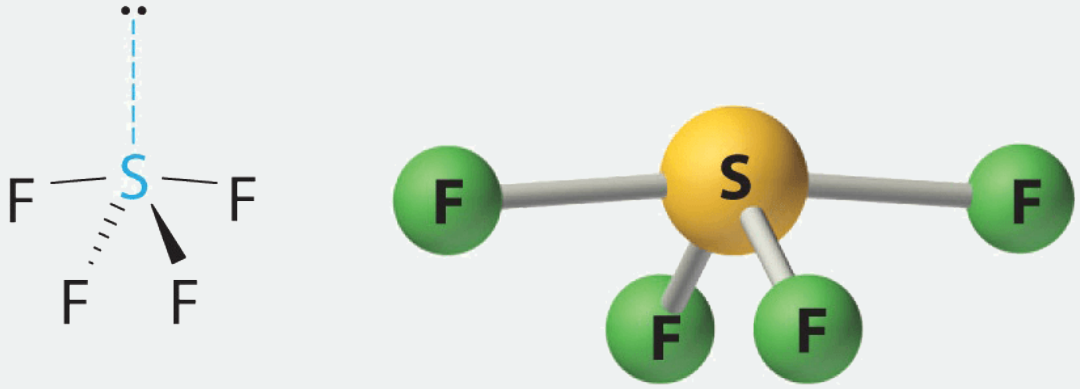


Figure 2.9.5: Illustration of the Area Shared by Two Electron Pairs versus the Angle between Them

180 degree angle has no shared space between teo electron pair, 120 degree angle has some shared area between two electron pairs. 90 degree angle has more shared space than 120.

At 90°, the two electron pairs share a relatively large region of space, which leads to strong repulsive electron–electron interactions.

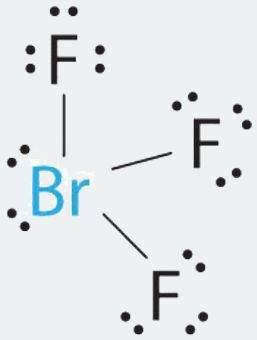
4. With four nuclei and one lone pair of electrons, the molecular structure is based on a trigonal bipyramid with a missing equatorial vertex; it is described as a *seesaw*. The F_{axial}–S–F_{axial} angle is 173° rather than 180° because of the lone pair of electrons in the equatorial plane.



Molecular geometry (seesaw)

AX_3E_2 Molecules: BrF_3

1. The bromine atom has seven valence electrons, and each fluorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



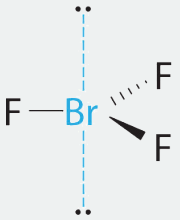
Lewis structure

Three fluorines are bonded to a central bromine. Each fluorine has three lone pairs, Bromine has two lone pairs.

Once again, we have a compound that is an exception to the octet rule.

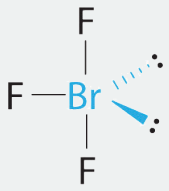
2. There are five groups around the central atom, three bonding pairs and two lone pairs. We again direct the groups toward the vertices of a trigonal bipyramid.

3. With three bonding pairs and two lone pairs, the structural designation is AX_3E_2 with a total of five electron pairs. Because the axial and equatorial positions are not equivalent, we must decide how to arrange the groups to minimize repulsions. If we place both lone pairs in the axial positions, we have six LP–BP repulsions at 90°. If both are in the equatorial positions, we have four LP–BP repulsions at 90°. If one lone pair is axial and the other equatorial, we have one LP–LP repulsion at 90° and three LP–BP repulsions at 90°:



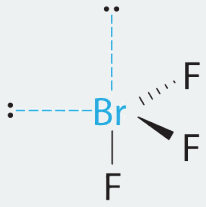
Lone pairs axial

(a)



Lone pairs equatorial

(b)



Lone pairs axial and equatorial

(c)

Interactions

90º LP–LP	0	0	1
90º LP–BP	6	4	3

If the lone pairs are axiam, the 90 degree LP-LP interactions are o and the 90 degree LP-BP interaction is zero. If the Lone pares are equatorial there are zero 90 degree LP-LP interactions and four 90 degree LP-BP intereactions. If the lone pairs are axial and equatorial there is one 90 degree LP-LP interaction and three 90 degree LP-BP interaction.

Structure (c) can be eliminated because it has a LP–LP interaction at 90°. Structure (b), with fewer LP–BP repulsions at 90° than (a), is lower in energy. However, we predict a deviation in bond angles because of the presence of the two lone pairs of electrons.

4. The three nuclei in BrF_3 determine its molecular structure, which is described as *T shaped*. This is essentially a trigonal bipyramid that is missing two equatorial vertices. The F_{axial}–Br–F_{axial} angle is 172°, less than 180° because of LP–BP repulsions (Figure 2.9.2.1).

Because lone pairs occupy more space around the central atom than bonding pairs, electrostatic repulsions are more important for lone pairs than for bonding pairs.

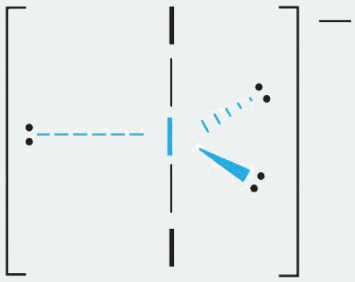
AX_2E_3 Molecules: I_3^-

1. Each iodine atom contributes seven electrons and the negative charge one, so the Lewis electron structure is



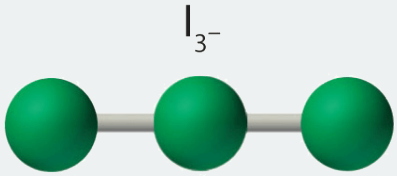
2. There are five electron groups about the central atom in I_3^-, two bonding pairs and three lone pairs. To minimize repulsions, the groups are directed to the corners of a trigonal bipyramid.

3. With two bonding pairs and three lone pairs, I_3^- has a total of five electron pairs and is designated as AX_2E_3. We must now decide how to arrange the lone pairs of electrons in a trigonal bipyramid in a way that minimizes repulsions. Placing them in the axial positions eliminates 90° LP–LP repulsions and minimizes the number of 90° LP–BP repulsions.



The three lone pairs of electrons have equivalent interactions with the three iodine atoms, so we do not expect any deviations in bonding angles.

4. With three nuclei and three lone pairs of electrons, the molecular geometry of I_3^- is linear. This can be described as a trigonal bipyramid with three equatorial vertices missing. The ion has an I–I–I angle of 180°, as expected.

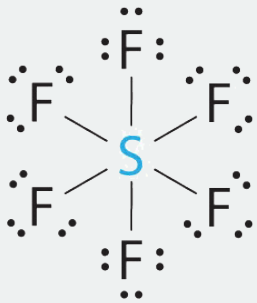


Six Electron Groups

Six electron groups form an *octahedron*, a polyhedron made of identical equilateral triangles and six identical vertices (Figure 2.9.2.)

AX_6 Molecules: SF_6

1. The central atom, sulfur, contributes six valence electrons, and each fluorine atom has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



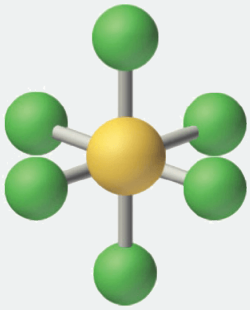
Lewis structure

With an expanded valence, this species is an exception to the octet rule.

2. There are six electron groups around the central atom, each a bonding pair. We see from Figure 2.9.2 that the geometry that minimizes repulsions is *octahedral*.

3. With only bonding pairs, SF_6 is designated as AX_6. All positions are chemically equivalent, so all electronic interactions are equivalent.

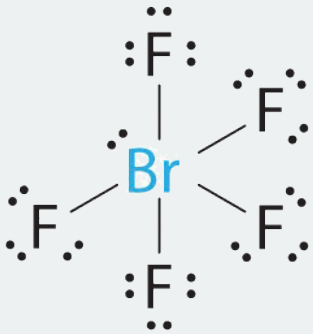
4. There are six nuclei, so the molecular geometry of SF_6 is octahedral.



Molecular geometry
(octahedral)

AX_5E Molecules: BrF_5

1. The central atom, bromine, has seven valence electrons, as does each fluorine, so the Lewis electron structure is

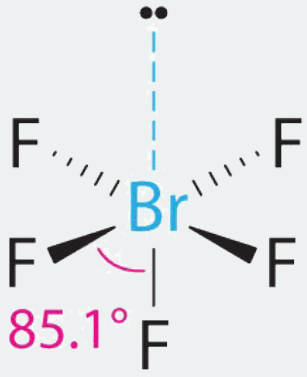


Lewis structure

Five fluorines are bonded to a central bromine. Each fluorine has three lone pairs, Bromine has one lone pair.

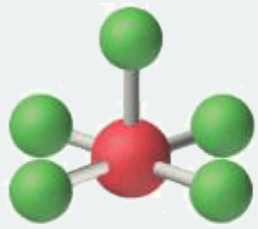
With its expanded valence, this species is an exception to the octet rule.

2. There are six electron groups around the Br, five bonding pairs and one lone pair. Placing five F atoms around Br while minimizing BP–BP and LP–BP repulsions gives the following structure:



3. With five bonding pairs and one lone pair, BrF_5 is designated as AX_5E; it has a total of six electron pairs. The BrF_5 structure has four fluorine atoms in a plane in an equatorial position and one fluorine atom and the lone pair of electrons in the axial positions. We expect all F_{axial}–Br–$F_{equatorial}$ angles to be less than 90° because of the lone pair of electrons, which occupies more space than the bonding electron pairs.

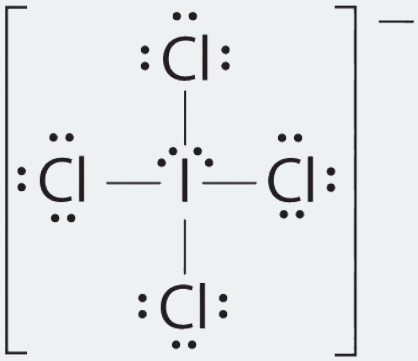
4. With five nuclei surrounding the central atom, the molecular structure is based on an octahedron with a vertex missing. This molecular structure is *square pyramidal*. The F_{axial}–B–$F_{equatorial}$ angles are 85.1°, less than 90° because of LP–BP repulsions.



Molecular geometry
(square pyramidal)

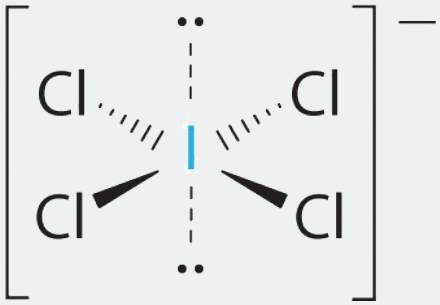
AX_4E_2 Molecules: ICl_4^-

1. The central atom, iodine, contributes seven electrons. Each chlorine contributes seven, and there is a single negative charge. The Lewis electron structure is



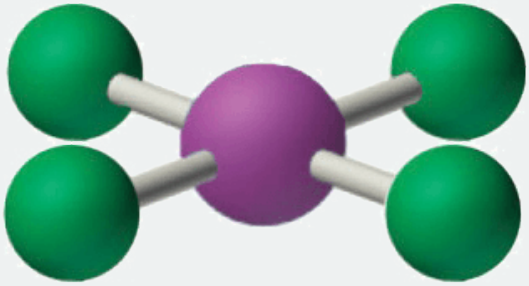
Four chlorines are bonded to a central iodine. Each chlorine has three electron pairs. The iodine has two electron pairs. The molecule is negatively charged.

2. There are six electron groups around the central atom, four bonding pairs and two lone pairs. The structure that minimizes LP–LP, LP–BP, and BP–BP repulsions is



3. ICl_4^- is designated as AX_4E_2 and has a total of six electron pairs. Although there are lone pairs of electrons, with four bonding electron pairs in the equatorial plane and the lone pairs of electrons in the axial positions, all LP–BP repulsions are the same. Therefore, we do not expect any deviation in the Cl–I–Cl bond angles.

4. With five nuclei, the ICl4– ion forms a molecular structure that is *square planar*, an octahedron with two opposite vertices missing.



The relationship between the number of electron groups around a central atom, the number of lone pairs of electrons, and the molecular geometry is summarized in Figure 2.9.6.

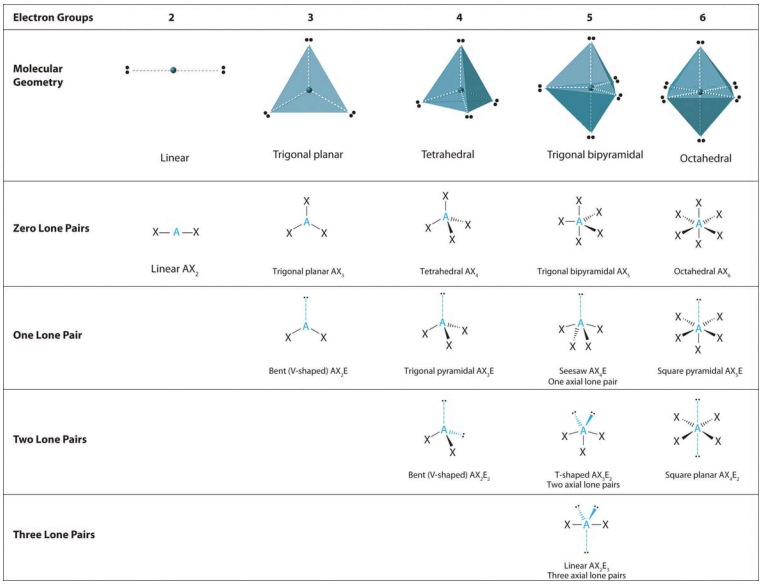


Figure 2.9.6***:*** *Overview of Molecular Geometries*

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 2.9.1

Using the VSEPR model, predict the molecular geometry of each molecule or ion.

1. PF_5 (phosphorus pentafluoride, a catalyst used in certain organic reactions)
2. H_3O^+ (hydronium ion)

Given: two chemical species

Asked for: molecular geometry

Strategy:

A. Draw the Lewis electron structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion.
B. Determine the electron group arrangement around the central atom that minimizes repulsions.
C. Assign an AX_mE_n designation; then identify the LP–LP, LP–BP, or BP–BP interactions and predict deviations in bond angles.
D. Describe the molecular geometry.

Solution:

1. **A** The central atom, P, has five valence electrons and each fluorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis structure of PF_5 is

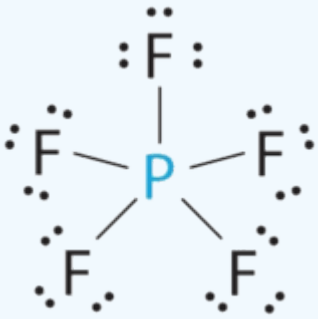


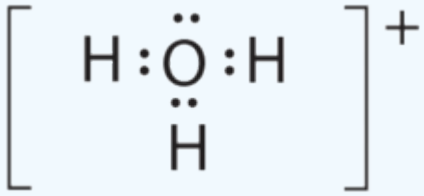
Figure 2.9.6): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

C All electron groups are bonding pairs, so PF_5 is designated as AX_5. Notice that this gives a total of five electron pairs. With no lone pair repulsions, we do not expect any bond angles to deviate from the ideal.

D The PF_5 molecule has five nuclei and no lone pairs of electrons, so its molecular geometry is trigonal bipyramidal.



2. **A** The central atom, O, has six valence electrons, and each H atom contributes one valence electron. Subtracting one electron for the positive charge gives a total of eight valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is

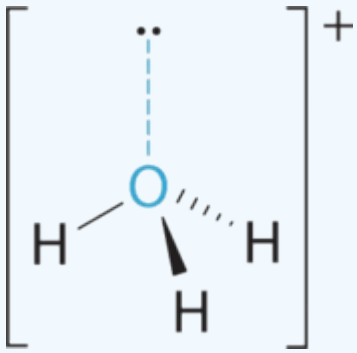


Three hydrogens are bonded to a central oxygen. The oxygen has two lone pairs. The molecule has a charge of plus one.

B There are four electron groups around oxygen, three bonding pairs and one lone pair. Like NH_3, repulsions are minimized by directing each hydrogen atom and the lone pair to the corners of a tetrahedron.

C With three bonding pairs and one lone pair, the structure is designated as AX_3E and has a total of four electron pairs (three X and one E). We expect the LP–BP interactions to cause the bonding pair angles to deviate significantly from the angles of a perfect tetrahedron.

D There are three nuclei and one lone pair, so the molecular geometry is *trigonal pyramidal*, in essence a tetrahedron missing a vertex. However, the H–O–H bond angles are less than the ideal angle of 109.5° because of LP–BP repulsions:



Exercise 2.9.1

Using the VSEPR model, predict the molecular geometry of each molecule or ion.

a. XeO_3
b. PF_6^-
c. NO_2^+

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Example 2.9.2

Predict the molecular geometry of each molecule.

1. XeF_2
2. $SnCl_2$

Given: two chemical compounds

Asked for: molecular geometry

Strategy:

Use the strategy given in Example2.9.1.

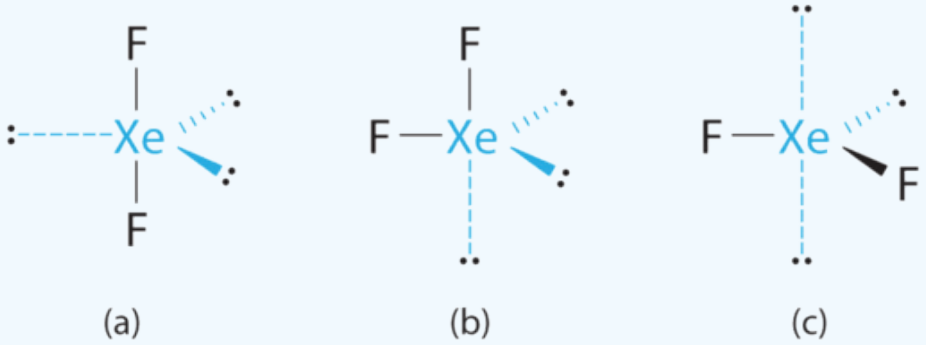
Solution:

1. **A** Xenon contributes eight electrons and each fluorine seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



B There are five electron groups around the central atom, two bonding pairs and three lone pairs. Repulsions are minimized by placing the groups in the corners of a trigonal bipyramid.

C From B, XeF_2 is designated as AX_2E_3 and has a total of five electron pairs (two X and three E). With three lone pairs about the central atom, we can arrange the two F atoms in three possible ways: both F atoms can be axial, one can be axial and one equatorial, or both can be equatorial:



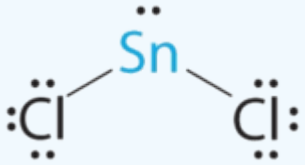
Interactions			
90 LP–LP	0	2	2

If the two F atoms are axial ther are zero 90 LP-LP interactions. If the two F atoms are axial and equatorial or just equatorial, there are 2 90 LP-LP interactions.

The structure with the lowest energy is the one that minimizes LP–LP repulsions. Both (b) and (c) have two 90° LP–LP interactions, whereas structure (a) has none. Thus both F atoms are in the axial positions, like the two iodine atoms around the central iodine in I_3^-. All LP–BP interactions are equivalent, so we do not expect a deviation from an ideal 180° in the F–Xe–F bond angle.

D With two nuclei about the central atom, the molecular geometry of XeF_2 is linear. It is a trigonal bipyramid with three missing equatorial vertices.

2. **A** The tin atom donates 4 valence electrons and each chlorine atom donates 7 valence electrons. With 18 valence electrons, the Lewis electron structure is



Two chlorines are bonded to a central tin. Each chlorine has three lone pairs. Tin has one lone pair.

B There are three electron groups around the central atom, two bonding groups and one lone pair of electrons. To minimize repulsions the three groups are initially placed at 120° angles from each other.

C From B we designate $SnCl_2$ as AX_2E. It has a total of three electron pairs, two X and one E. Because the lone pair of electrons occupies more space than the bonding pairs, we expect a decrease in the Cl–Sn–Cl bond angle due to increased LP–BP repulsions.

D With two nuclei around the central atom and one lone pair of electrons, the molecular geometry of $SnCl_2$ is bent, like SO_2, but with a Cl–Sn–Cl bond angle of 95°. The molecular geometry can be described as a trigonal planar arrangement with one vertex missing.

Exercise 2.9.2

Predict the molecular geometry of each molecule.

a. SO_3
b. XeF_4

Answer a available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

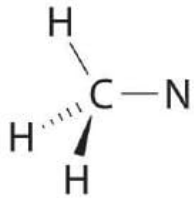
View this YouTube Video online

Molecules with No Single Central Atom

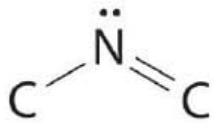
The VSEPR model can be used to predict the structure of somewhat more complex molecules with no single central atom by treating them as linked AX_mE_n fragments. We will demonstrate with methyl isocyanate (CH_3–N=C=O), a volatile and highly toxic molecule that is used to produce the pesticide Sevin. In 1984, large quantities of Sevin were accidentally released in Bhopal, India, when water leaked into storage tanks. The resulting highly exothermic reaction caused a rapid increase in pressure that ruptured the tanks, releasing large amounts of methyl isocyanate that killed approximately 3800 people and wholly or partially disabled about 50,000 others. In addition, there was significant damage to livestock and crops.

We can treat methyl isocyanate as linked AX_mE_n fragments beginning with the carbon atom at the left, which is connected to three H atoms and one N atom by single bonds. The four bonds around carbon mean that it must be surrounded by four bonding electron pairs in a configuration similar to AX_4. We can therefore predict the CH_3–N portion of the molecule to be roughly

tetrahedral, similar to methane:



The nitrogen atom is connected to one carbon by a single bond and to the other carbon by a double bond, producing a total of three bonds, C–N=C. For nitrogen to have an octet of electrons, it must also have a lone pair:



One carbon bonded to nitrogen and another carbon double bonded to the nitrogen. The nitrogen has one lone pair.

Because multiple bonds are not shown in the VSEPR model, the nitrogen is effectively surrounded by three electron pairs. Thus according to the VSEPR model, the C–N=C fragment should be bent with an angle less than 120°.

The carbon in the –N=C=O fragment is doubly bonded to both nitrogen and oxygen, which in the VSEPR model gives carbon a total of two electron pairs. The N=C=O angle should therefore be 180°, or linear. The three fragments combine to give the following structure:

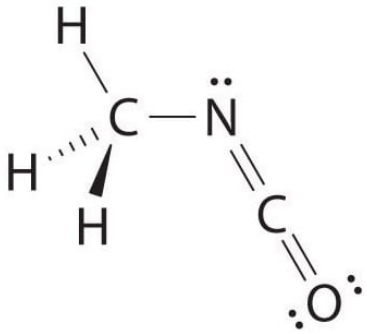


Figure 2.9.7).

Three hydrogens are bonded to a carbon. The carbon is also bonded to a nitrogen. The nitrogen is double bonded to another carbon. The second carbon is double bonded to an oxygen. The nitrogen has one lone pair. The oxygen has two lone pairs.

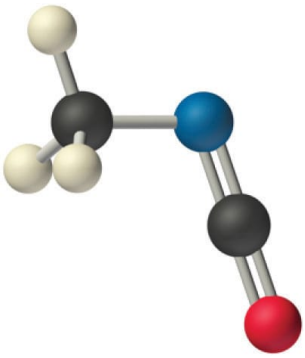


Figure 2.9.7: The Experimentally Determined Structure of Methyl Isocyanate

Certain patterns are seen in the structures of moderately complex molecules. For example, carbon atoms with four bonds (such as the carbon on the left in methyl isocyanate) are generally tetrahedral. Similarly, the carbon atom on the right has two double bonds that are similar to those in CO_2, so its geometry, like that of CO_2, is linear. Recognizing similarities to simpler molecules

will help you predict the molecular geometries of more complex molecules.

Example 2.9.3

Use the VSEPR model to predict the molecular geometry of propyne ($H_3C–C≡CH$), a gas with some anesthetic properties.

Given: chemical compound

Asked for: molecular geometry

Strategy:

Count the number of electron groups around each carbon, recognizing that in the VSEPR model, a multiple bond counts as a single group. Use Figure 2.9.3 to determine the molecular geometry around each carbon atom and then deduce the structure of the molecule as a whole.

Solution:

Because the carbon atom on the left is bonded to four other atoms, we know that it is approximately tetrahedral. The next two carbon atoms share a triple bond, and each has an additional single bond. Because a multiple bond is counted as a single bond in the VSEPR model, each carbon atom behaves as if it had two electron groups. This means that both of these carbons are linear, with C–C≡C and C≡C–H angles of 180°.

Exercise 2.9.3

Predict the geometry of allene ($H_2C=C=CH_2$), a compound with narcotic properties that is used to make more complex organic molecules.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Molecular Dipole Moments

You previously learned how to calculate the **dipole moments** of simple diatomic molecules. In more complex molecules with polar covalent bonds, the three-dimensional geometry and the compound's symmetry determine whether there is a net dipole moment. Mathematically, dipole moments are *vectors*; they possess both a *magnitude* and a *direction*. The dipole moment of a molecule is therefore the *vector sum* of the dipole moments of the individual bonds in the molecule. If the individual bond dipole moments cancel one another, there is no net dipole moment. Such is the case for CO_2, a linear molecule (Figure 2.9.8*a*). Each C–O bond in CO_2 is polar, yet experiments show that the CO_2 molecule has no dipole moment. Because the two C–O bond dipoles in CO_2 are equal in magnitude and oriented at 180° to each other, they cancel. As a result, the CO_2 molecule has no *net* dipole moment even though it has a substantial separation of charge. In contrast, the H_2O molecule is not linear (Figure 2.9.8*b*); it is bent in three-dimensional space, so the dipole moments do not cancel each other. Thus a molecule such as H_2O has a net dipole moment. We expect the concentration of negative charge to be on the oxygen, the more electronegative atom, and positive charge on the two hydrogens. This charge polarization allows H_2O to hydrogen-bond to other polarized or charged species, including other water molecules.

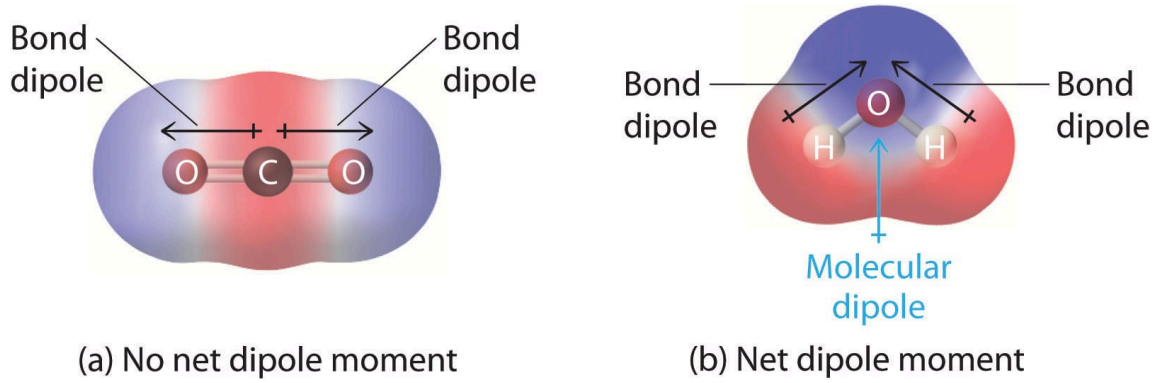


Figure 2.9.8: How Individual Bond Dipole Moments Are Added Together to Give an Overall Molecular Dipole Moment for Two Triatomic Molecules with Different Structures. (a) In CO_2, the C–O bond dipoles are equal in magnitude but oriented in opposite directions (at 180°). Their vector sum is zero, so CO_2 therefore has no net dipole. (b) In H_2O, the O–H bond dipoles are also equal in magnitude, but they are oriented at 104.5° to each other. Hence the vector sum is not zero, and H_2O has a net dipole moment.

Other examples of molecules with polar bonds are shown in Figure 2.9.9. In molecular geometries that are highly symmetrical (most notably tetrahedral and square planar, trigonal bipyramidal, and octahedral), individual bond dipole moments completely cancel, and there is no net dipole moment. Although a molecule like $CHCl_3$ is best described as tetrahedral, the atoms bonded to carbon are not identical. Consequently, the bond dipole moments cannot cancel one another, and the molecule has a dipole moment. Due to the arrangement of the bonds in molecules that have V-shaped, trigonal pyramidal, seesaw, T-shaped, and square pyramidal geometries, the bond dipole moments cannot cancel one another. Consequently, molecules with these geometries always have a nonzero dipole moment. Molecules with asymmetrical charge distributions have a net dipole moment.

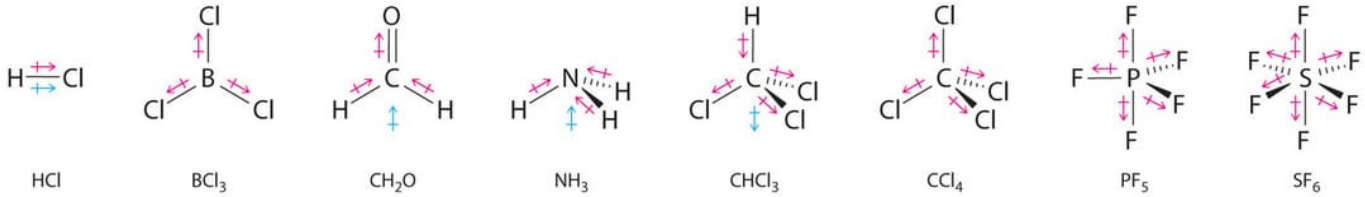


Figure 2.9.9: Molecules with Polar Bonds. Individual bond dipole moments are indicated in red. Due to their different three-dimensional structures, some molecules with polar bonds have a net dipole moment (HCl, CH_2O, NH_3, and $CHCl_3$), indicated in blue, whereas others do not because the bond dipole moments cancel (BCl_3, CCl_4, PF_5, and SF_6).

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 2.9.4

Which molecule(s) has a net dipole moment?

a. H_2S
b. NHF_2
c. BF_3

Given: three chemical compounds

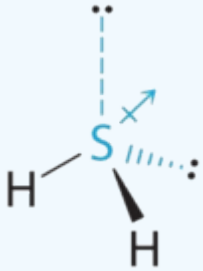
Asked for: net dipole moment

Strategy:

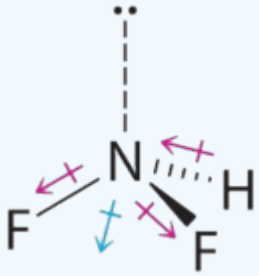
For each three-dimensional molecular geometry, predict whether the bond dipoles cancel. If they do not, then the molecule has a net dipole moment.

Solution:

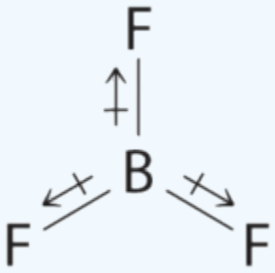
1. The total number of electrons around the central atom, S, is eight, which gives four electron pairs. Two of these electron pairs are bonding pairs and two are lone pairs, so the molecular geometry of $\mathrm{H_2S}$ is bent (Figure $2.9.6$). The bond dipoles cannot cancel one another, so the molecule has a net dipole moment.



2. Difluoroamine has a trigonal pyramidal molecular geometry. Because there is one hydrogen and two fluorines, and because of the lone pair of electrons on nitrogen, the molecule is not symmetrical, and the bond dipoles of NHF_2 cannot cancel one another. This means that NHF_2 has a net dipole moment. We expect polarization from the two fluorine atoms, the most electronegative atoms in the periodic table, to have a greater affect on the net dipole moment than polarization from the lone pair of electrons on nitrogen.



3. The molecular geometry of BF_3 is trigonal planar. Because all the B–F bonds are equal and the molecule is highly symmetrical, the dipoles cancel one another in three-dimensional space. Thus BF_3 has a net dipole moment of zero:



Exercise $2.9.4$

Which molecule(s) has a net dipole moment?

- $\mathrm{CH_3Cl}$
- $\mathrm{SO_3}$
- $\mathrm{XeO_3}$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Lewis electron structures give no information about **molecular geometry**, the arrangement of bonded atoms in a molecule or polyatomic ion, which is crucial to understanding the chemistry of a molecule. The **valence-shell electron-pair repulsion (VSEPR) model** allows us to predict which of the possible structures is actually observed in most cases. It is based on the assumption that pairs of electrons occupy space, and the lowest-energy structure is the one that minimizes electron pair–electron pair repulsions. In the VSEPR model, the molecule or polyatomic ion is given an AX_mE_n designation, where A is the central atom, X is a bonded atom, E is a nonbonding valence electron group (usually a lone pair of electrons), and m and n are integers. Each group around the central atom is designated as a bonding pair (BP) or lone (nonbonding) pair (LP). From the BP and LP interactions we can predict both the relative positions of the atoms and the angles between the bonds, called the **bond angles**. From this we can describe the **molecular geometry**. The VSEPR model can be used to predict the shapes of many molecules and polyatomic ions, but it gives no information about bond lengths and the presence of multiple bonds. A combination of VSEPR and a bonding model, such as Lewis electron structures, is necessary to understand the presence of multiple bonds.

Molecules with polar covalent bonds can have a *dipole moment*, an asymmetrical distribution of charge that results in a tendency for molecules to align themselves in an applied electric field. Any diatomic molecule with a polar covalent bond has a dipole moment, but in polyatomic molecules, the presence or absence of a net dipole moment depends on the structure. For some highly symmetrical structures, the individual bond dipole moments cancel one another, giving a dipole moment of zero.

Answers

Exercise 2.9.1

trigonal pyramidal

octahedral

linear

Exercise 2.9.2

trigonal planar

square planar

Exercise 2.9.3

The terminal carbon atoms are trigonal planar, the central carbon is linear, and the C–C–C angle is 180°.

Exercise 2.9.4

CH_3Cl and XeO_3

This page titled 2.9: Shapes of Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 9.2: The VSEPR Model is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

2.10: Multiple Bonds

In the previous sections, we saw how to predict the approximate geometry around an atom using VSEPR theory, and we learned that lone pairs of electrons slightly distort bond angles from the "parent" geometry. This page discusses the effect of multiple (double and triple) bonds between bonded atoms.

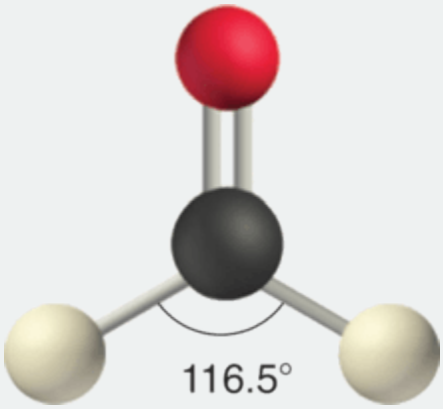
Double and triple bonds are more repulsive than single bonds

VSEPR theory predicts that double and triple bonds have stronger repulsive forces than single bonds. Like lone pairs of electrons, multiple bonds occupy more space around the central atom than a single bond. The result is that bond angles are slightly distorted compared to the parent geometry. Since a multiple bond has a higher electron density than a single bond, its electrons occupy more space than those of a single bond. Double and triple bonds distort bond angles in a way similar to what lone pairs do. Due to the stronger repulsion, double and triple bonds occupy positions similar to those of lone pairs in groups with 5 and 6 electron groups.

Examples 2.10.1

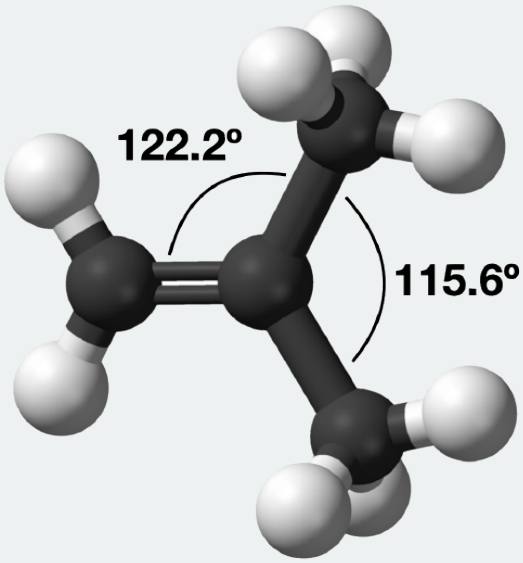
CH_2O

In a molecule such as CH_2O (AX_3), whose structure is shown below, the double bond repels the single bonds more strongly than the single bonds repel each other. This causes a deviation from ideal geometry (an H–C–H bond angle of 116.5° rather than 120°).



2-methybutene

In the molecule, $CH_2C(CH_3)_2$, the methyl—C—methyl bond angle is 115.6°, which is less than the 120° bond angle that would be expected of the parent geometry. On the other hand, the acetyl—C—methyl bond angle is greater than 120°, with an actual bond angle of 122.2°.



Atoms with both lone pairs and multiple bonds

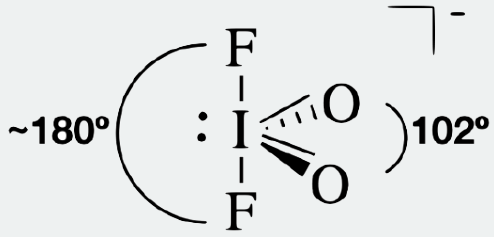
In general, we expect that a lone pair has slightly greater repulsive force than a multiple bond, and that a multiple bond has slightly greater repulsive force than a single bond. The **order of expected repulsive force** is:

$$\text{lone pair} > \text{double or triple bond} > \text{single bond}$$

Examples2.10.1

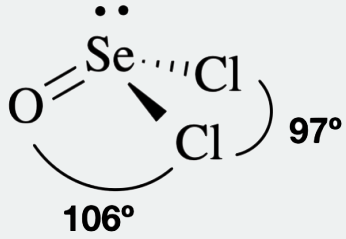
$IO_2F_2^-$

With five electron groups, the IO_2F_2 molecule has an approximately trigonal bipyramidal electronic (parent) geometry. The central iodine atom has a single bond to each of the fluorine atoms, a double bond to each oxygen, and a lone pair. The lone pair and the double bonds will occupy more space around iodine than each of the single bonds. Thus, we expect the lone pair and double bonds to occupy equatorial positions around the central iodine. The O=I=O bond angle is 102° (*much* smaller than the 120° angle expected from the parent geometry). This dramatically smaller angle is a result of the increased repulsion between the lone pair and the double bond.



$SeOCl_2$

With four electron groups, the $SeOCl_2$ molecule has four electron groups and approximately tetrahedral electronic (parent) geometry. It has both a lone pair and a double bond on the central selenium atom. The two chlorine atoms are singly bonded to selenium, while the oxygen is double bonded. The lone pair is most repulsive, followed by the double bonded oxygen, and then the chlorine bonds. This gives a Cl—Se—Cl bond angle of 97° and a Cl—Se—O bond angle of 106°; both angles are less than the 109.5° angles expected for the ideal tetrahedral geometry.



Practice

Exercise 2.10.1

Use VSEPR theory to predict the geometries and draw the structures of the following.

a. $XeOF_4$
b. NO_2^-
c. $SOCl_2$
d. IOF_3^-

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Answer c available at the end of this section.

Answer d available at the end of this section.

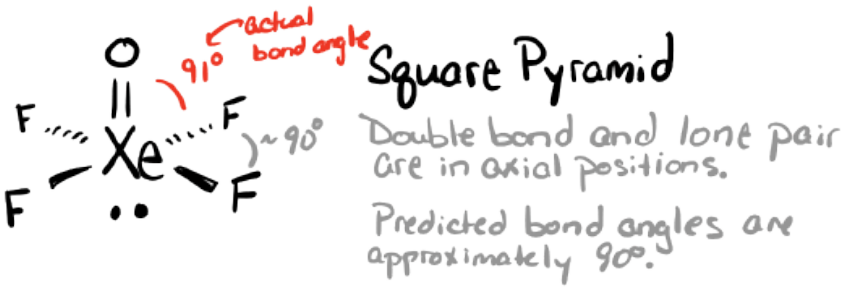
References

- Miessler, G.; Fischer, P.J.; Tarr, D. (2014). Inorganic Chemistry. New Jersey: Prentice-Hall. pp. 55

Answers

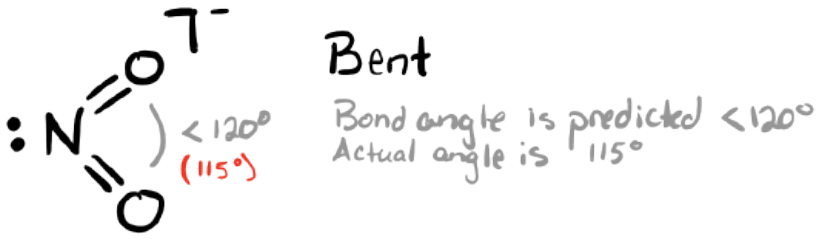
Exercise 2.10.1

This molecule has six electron groups around the central Xe atom (steric number 6), and thus has an approximately octahdral electronic (parent) geometry. There is a double bond to O and a lone pair, both of which are more strongly repulsive than the single bonds to F. The double bond and lone pair will be directly opposite to each other, designated as axial positions. The result is a square pyramidal molecular geometry. VSEPR theory predicts F—Xe—F bond angles of 90°. As a general rule, lone pairs are slightly more repulsive than multiple bonds, and so we might expect the O—Xe—F bond angles to be <90°; *however in this case the actual O—Xe—F bond angle is observed to be 91°* (you could not have predicted the latter).



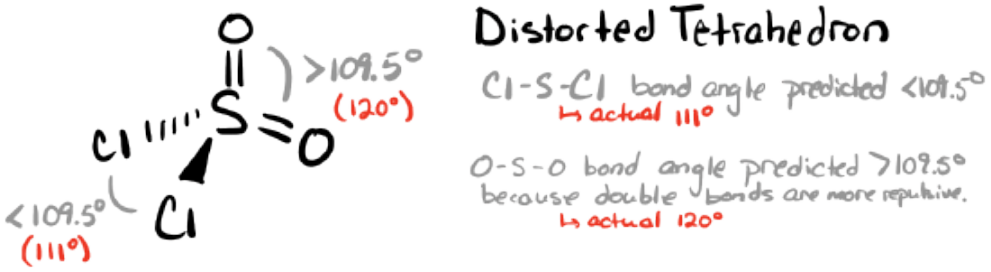
Exercise 2.10.1

This molecule has three electron groups around the central atom: one lone pair and two double bonds to oxygen atoms. This results in an approximately trigonal planar electronic (parent geometry). We expect the lone pair to be slightly more repulsive than double bonds, and so we expect the O—N—O bond angle to be slightly less than 120°. *The actual O—N—O angle is 115°.*



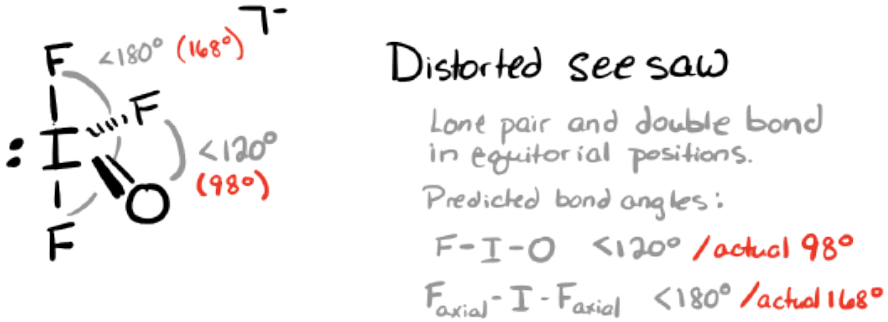
Exercise 2.10.1

This molecule has four electron groups (steric number 4) with an approximately tetrahedral electronic (parent) geometry. Each double bonded oxygen will take up more space around the central S than the single bonded Cl atoms. We should expect the double bonds to repel each other more strongly than they repel each single bond, with the least repulsive interaction being between the two single bonds. The bond angle for Cl—S—Cl is expected to be <109.5° according to VSEPR theory (however, it is actually 111°). We would expect the bond angle for O—S—O to be larger than the angle for Cl—S—Cl and for Cl—S—O. The O—S—O bond angle is predicted to be >109.5° (and the actual bond angle is 120°). The molecular geometry is a distorted tetrahedron.



Exercise 2.10.1

This molecule has five electron groups (steric number 5) with an approximately trigonal bipyramidal electronic (parent) geometry. There is one lone pair, a double bond to O, and three single bonds to F atoms around the central I atom. The lone pair and double bond are most repulsive, and should occupy the less crowded equatorial positions rather than the more crowded axial positions. This results in a seesaw molecular geometry. With the more repulsive lone pair and the strongest equatorial repulsive force being between the double bond and lone pair, we should expect the $F_{equatorial}$—I—O bond angle to be less than the 120° angle expected for the parent geometry (*it is actually much less, at 98°*). Due to repulsion between the axial F atoms and both the lone pair and double bond, we should expect the F—S—F bond angles to be compressed. The F_{axial}—I—F_{axial} is actually 168°.



This page titled 2.10: Multiple Bonds is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 3.2.2: Multiple Bonds by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.11: Electronegativity and Atomic Size Effects

Introduction

We saw in previous sections how lone pairs of electrons and multiple bonds distort bond angles between non-central atoms (ligands) around a central atom. This section describes how ligand **electronegativity and size also influence bond angles and molecular geometry**. Electronegativity is generally correlated with atomic size going down any group of the periodic table. There are some cases where bond angles can be predicted by these correlations. However, size and electronegativity can also work as competing factors in determining bond angles.

Definitions of Electronegativity

Linus Pauling introduced the first electronegativity scale in 1932 in order to explain the extra stability of molecules with polar bonds.[1] The electronegativity of an atom, represented by the Greek letter χ (chi), can be defined as the tendency of an atom to draw electrons to itself in a chemical bond. On the Pauling scale, the electronegativity difference between two atoms A and B was defined in terms of the dissociation energies E_d of the A-A, B-B, and A-B bonds:

$$\chi_A - \chi_B = \sqrt{E_d(AB) - [E_d(AA) + E_d(BB)]/2}$$

where the energies are expressed in electron volts. Pauling's scale of electronegativity ranges from Fluorine (most electronegative = 4.0) to Francium (least electronegative = 0.7). [2,3] The polarity of bonds and assignment of formal charges is predicted by electronegativity differences.

V • T • E **Periodic table of electronegativity using the Pauling scale**

→ Atomic radius decreases → Ionization energy increases → Electronegativity increases →

Group →	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
↓ Period																		
1	H 2.20																	He
2	Li 0.98	Be 1.57											B 2.04	C 2.55	N 3.04	O 3.44	F 3.98	Ne
3	Na 0.93	Mg 1.31											Al 1.61	Si 1.90	P 2.19	S 2.58	Cl 3.16	Ar
4	K 0.82	Ca 1.00	Sc 1.36	Ti 1.54	V 1.63	Cr 1.66	Mn 1.55	Fe 1.83	Co 1.88	Ni 1.91	Cu 1.90	Zn 1.65	Ga 1.81	Ge 2.01	As 2.18	Se 2.55	Br 2.96	Kr 3.00
5	Rb 0.82	Sr 0.95	Y 1.22	Zr 1.33	Nb 1.6	Mo 2.16	Tc 1.9	Ru 2.2	Rh 2.28	Pd 2.20	Ag 1.93	Cd 1.69	In 1.78	Sn 1.96	Sb 2.05	Te 2.1	I 2.66	Xe 2.60
6	Cs 0.79	Ba 0.89	*	Hf 1.3	Ta 1.5	W 2.36	Re 1.9	Os 2.2	Ir 2.20	Pt 2.28	Au 2.54	Hg 2.00	Tl 1.62	Pb 1.87	Bi 2.02	Po 2.0	At 2.2	Rn 2.2
7	Fr 0.7	Ra 0.9	**	Rf	Db	Sg	Bh	Hs	Mt	Ds	Rg	Cn	Uut	Fl	Uup	Lv	Uus	Uuo

* Lanthanoids	La 1.1	Ce 1.12	Pr 1.13	Nd 1.14	Pm 1.13	Sm 1.17	Eu 1.2	Gd 1.2	Tb 1.1	Dy 1.22	Ho 1.23	Er 1.24	Tm 1.25	Yb 1.1	Lu 1.27
** Actinoids	Ac 1.1	Th 1.3	Pa 1.5	U 1.38	Np 1.36	Pu 1.28	Am 1.13	Cm 1.28	Bk 1.3	Cf 1.3	Es 1.3	Fm 1.3	Md 1.3	No 1.3	Lr 1.3

Figure 2.11.1: Table of Pauling electronegativities from Wikipedia's Electronegativity page (click).

While directly relevant to the strength of chemical bonds, the Pauling definition of electronegativity has a significant limitation: calculating each value requires data from several compounds in which specific atoms are bonded. This means that the scale cannot be successfully applied to all situations. To overcome this limitation, alternative electronegativity scales were developed based on different thermochemical measurements or calculations. These other scales are listed in the table below. More thorough descriptions of how values in each scale are calculated are described on Wikipedia's Electronegativity page (click) and a concise history of electronegativity scales is summarized in ref 4.

Scale Developer	Year first described	Characteristics
Linus Pauling[1]	1932	Based on bond energies
Robert S. Mulliken[5,6]	1934	Based on valence electron properties of atoms (electron affinity and ionization energy)
Louis Allred & Eugene G. Rochow[7]	1958	Based on electrostatic force (effective nuclear charge)
Robert T. Sanderson[8]	1983	Based on atomic electron density
Ralph G. Pearson[9]	1985	Related to Hard-Soft Acid-Based theory
Leland C. Allen, Joseph Mann, Terry L. Meek[10,11,12]	1989, 2000	Average ionization energies of valence shell electrons, configuration energies (CE) $$\mathrm{CE} = \frac{n\varepsilon_s + m\varepsilon_p}{n+m}$$ $n = \text{number of s electrons}$ $m = \text{number of p electrons}$ $\varepsilon_s, \varepsilon_p = \text{experimental 1-electron s and p energies}$

The primary advantage to this scale developed by Mann, Meek, and Allen[12] is that it is based on configuration energy (CE), the average ionization energies of valence electrons in ground state free atoms. A scale based on ionization energies can be calculated more directly for any element. However, a critique of all electronegativity scales, including this one, is that they are all based on assumptions that fail in some cases.

There is a relationship between electronegativity and atomic size because both are related to ionization energy. Like ionization energy, there is a general trend across the periodic table for both electronegativity and atomic size; in general, smaller atoms toward the top right-hand side of the periodic table have greater electronegativity values and smaller atomic size. We will see below that both electronegativity and atomic size influence bond angles and absolute molecular geometry around a central atom. In some cases, the size and electronegativity affects are aligned; in some cases these effects compete.

Electronegativity and Size Influence Bond Angles

Let's begin by examining the bond angles of several trigonal pyramidal molecules. The molecules shown in Figure $2.11.2$ each have three identical "pendant groups" on the central atom (Figure $2.11.2$). *Pendant atoms* or *pendant groups* are the atoms, or groups of atoms, that are bonded directly to the central atom. The molecules shown here are arranged according to the size of the central and pendant atoms. Central atoms increase in size going down this figure, and pendant atoms increase in size going across from left to right. The bond angles and bond lengths are labeled in each case.

What trends can you identify?

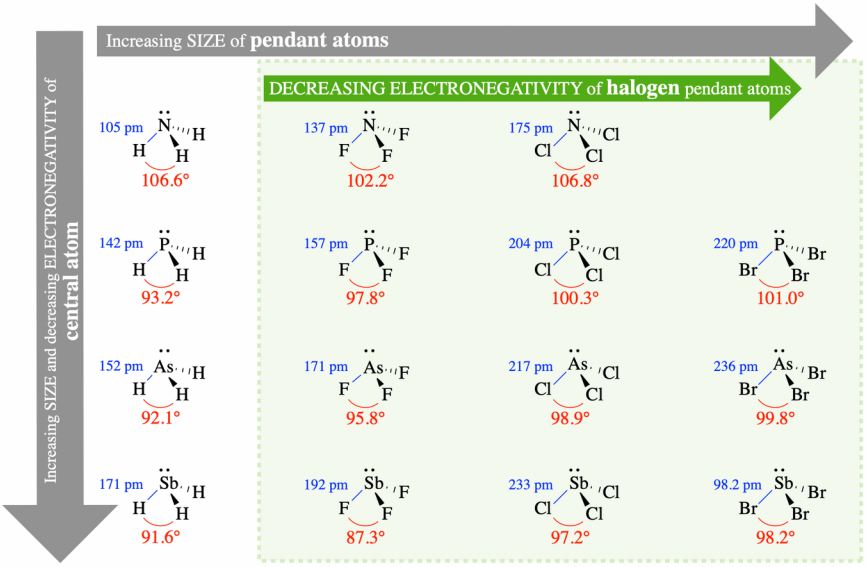


Figure 2.11.2: Several molecules with trigonal pyramidal electronic geometry are shown arranged according to size of the central atom (increasing size of central atom from top to bottom) and pendant atom (increasing size of pendant atoms from left to right). Bond angles and bond lengths are indicated. (Kathryn Haas; CC-NC-BY-SA)

Trends in Size

First, let's examine how the size of the central and pendant groups might influence bond angle. In VSEPR theory, **the size of atoms (or groups of atoms) will affect bond angles due to changes in steric interactions between pendant groups.**

Size of the central atom

Examine the relationship between the size of the central atom and the bond angles in Figure 2.11.2 (go down any column in the figure). For example, compare NH_3, PH_3, AsH_3, and SbH_3, with bond angles 106.6°, 93.2°, 92.1°, and 91.6°, respectively. In this series, the size of the central atom increases from N to Sb while the size of the pendant atom (hydrogen) remains constant. *As the size of the central atom increases, the bond angles decrease; thus, we observe a negative relationship between size of the central atom and the bond angle in these molecules*. This relationship is explained by sterics. As the central atom increases in size, the bond lengths also increase and the pendant atoms are farther from each other in space. In VSEPR theory, this will reduce steric interactions between the pendant groups. Since the lone pair on these molecules is more repulsive than bonded groups, the decrease in steric interactions between bonded groups results in a decrease in bond angles.

Size of the pendant atoms (or groups)

Examine the relationships between size of the halogen pendant atoms and bond angle in Figure 2.11.2 (go across any row within the shaded region). For example, compare PF_3, PCl_3, and PBr_3, with bond angles 97.8°, 100.3°, and 101.0°, respectively. In this series, the size of the pendant atom increases from F to Br while the central atom remains constant (phosphorous). *As the size of pendant atoms increases, the bond angle increases; thus, we observe a direct relationship between size of the pendant group and the bond angle in these molecules*. Again, we can explain this using sterics. As the size of the pendant atoms increases, sterics between the pendant groups will increase (despite small changes in bond length). Increased steric interactions between pendant groups will prefer larger bond angles between the groups.

This trend fails, however, if we consider the molecules with hydrogen as the pendant atoms. Notice, for example, that H is the smallest pendant atom. If we consider the trend described above, we should assume that XH_3 (where X is a variable atom) would have the smallest bond angle in the series of XH_3, XF_3, XCl_3, and XBr_3. However this is not the case of NH_3, NF_3, and NCl_3, with bond angles 106.6°, 102.2°, and 106.8°, respectively. To explain the variation in these bond angles, we need to consider electronegativity.

Trends in Electronegativity

Now let's examine how electronegativity influences bond angles around a central atom. In VSEPR theory, **electronegativity of atoms/groups will affect bond angles due to changes in the distribution of electron pairs around the central atom (and thus changes in the severity of electron pair repulsion).** This really comes down to bond polarity caused by the difference in electronegativity between the central atom and pendant groups (bond polarity in the context of valence bond theory). In a polar bond, the more electronegative atom will pull electron density towards itself. When a pendant atom is more electronegative, it will pull the bonded electron pair towards itself and away from the central atom; this will reduce the electron pair repulsion between bonded electron pairs on the central atom. A decrease in electron pair repulsion on the central atom should decrease bond angles between the groups (Figure 2.11.3).

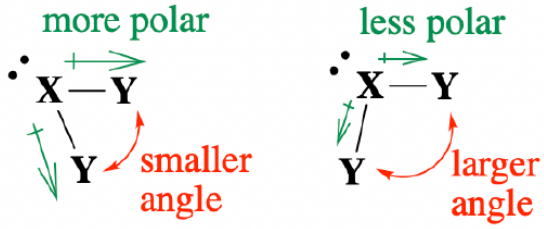


Figure 2.11.3. When electron pairs are distributed away from the central atom, repulsions are decreased, allowing smaller bond angles. (Kathryn Haas; CC-NC-BY-SA)

Electronegativity is an alternative explanation to the trends we already examined above in Figure 2.11.2 . For example, when we compare the halogen pendant atoms (shaded region in Figure 2.11.2) , the electronegativity of pendant groups decreases, bond polarity of the bonds decreases, and bond angles increase going from left to right and from F to Br. As more electron density remains on the central atom, electron repulsion between the bonded pairs increases and bond angles increase.

The electronegativity argument can also be used to explain the fact that NH_3 (106.6°) has a larger bond angle than NF_3 (102.2°). This particular case illustrates how electronegativity and size can be competing factors. While electronegativity differences seem to dominate in the case of NH_3 (106.6°) compared to NF_3 (102.2°), size differences still dominate in the cases of other XH_3 and XF_3 examples in Figure 2.11.2).

Exercise 2.11.1

Predict the geometry and approximate bond angles. Then put the molecules in each series in order of smallest to largest bond angle. Defend your answer.

a. The X-S-X bond angle in OSF_2, $OSCl_2$, $OSBr_2$
b. H_2O, H_2S, H_2Se, H_2Te
c. H_2O, OF_2, OCl_2

Answer (a) available at the end of this section.

Group Electronegativities

You probably heard the terms "electron donating group" and "electron withdrawing group" from your coursework in Organic Chemistry. For example, the acid trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) is more acidic than acetic acid due to the electron withdrawing effects of the CF_3 group compared to CH_3. CF_3 is an electron withdrawing group, while CH_3 is an electron donating group. In other words, CF_3 is more electronegative than CH_3.

The electron withdrawing ability (electronegativity) of groups can be estimated and compared, just as they are with atoms. Although there is no one scale that is used for group electronegativities, and published values even for the same groups vary widely, there are reliable trends within similar groups. The same size and electronegativity factors discussed above that affect bond angles for *pendant atoms*, also can be used to rationalize distorted bond angles for *pendant groups* around a central atom.

Exercise 2.11.2

Consider the relative electronegativities and sizes of the pendant atoms/groups in the following examples. Is the trend in bond angles what you would expect from the relative group electronegativities and relative sizes? What, if any, is the more dominant factor in determining the trend?

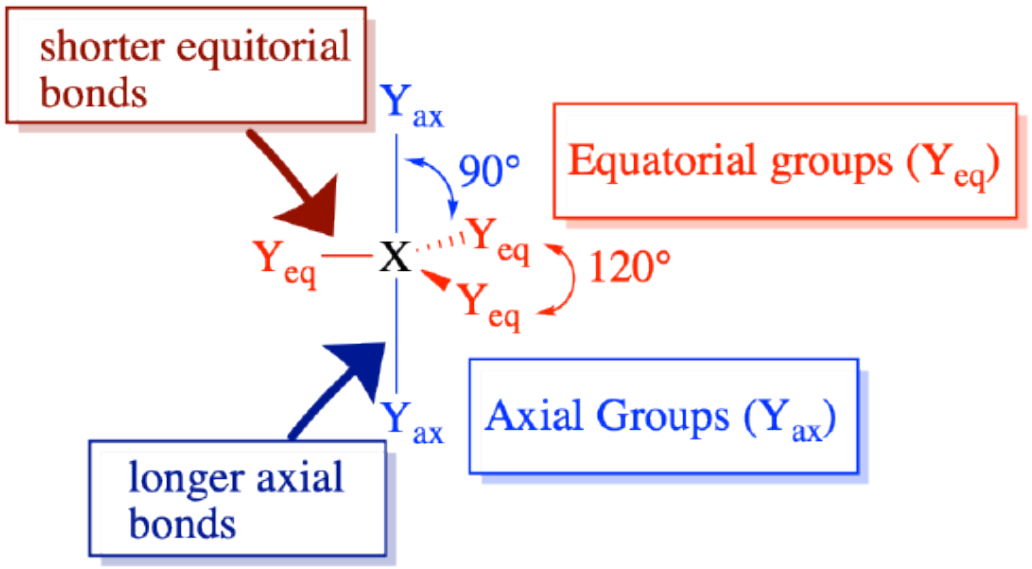
a. $N(CH_3)_3$ has an C-N-C bond angle of 110.9°, while $N(CF_3)_3$ has a bond angle of 117.9°.
b. The X-S-X bond angles in molecules of the form $SO_2(X)_2$ are: $SO_2(OH)_2$ 101.3°; $SO_2(CF_3)_2$ 102.0°; $SO_2(CH_3)_2$ 102.6°.

Answer (a) available at the end of this section.

Answer (b) available at the end of this section.

Special case of electronegativity and size in steric number 5 (trigonal bypyramid)

Molecules with steric number 5 are interesting because they posses two different types of positions (equatorial and axial). These positions have unique bond angles and bond lengths. Pendant atoms/groups have different preferences for the axial and equatorial positions that depend somewhat on their electronegativity.



Molecules with steric number 5 possess different bond angles and lengths for axial (ax) and equatorial (eq) pendant atoms. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn Haas)

In a previous section, we discussed the preference of lone pairs and multiple bonds for the equatorial positions in trigonal bipyramidal molecules. VSEPR theory rationalizes this by assuming that lone pairs and multiple bonds are more repulsive than the electron pairs in single bonds. Equatorial positions are less crowded (with only two closest neighbors at 90°, and two farther neighbors at 120°) compared to axial positions (with three closest neighbors at 90°), thus the more repulsive groups prefer the less crowded equatorial positions.

Pendant groups that are more electronegative result in weaker electron pair repulsion around the central atom, while groups that are less electronegative result in stronger electron-pair repulsion around the central atom (as described above). The result for steric number 5: **bonding pairs to *less electronegative elements* are *more repulsive*, and *generally prefer equatorial* positions.** Still, lone pairs and multiple bonds are more repulsive than single bonds and would show a stronger preference for equatorial positions.

Examples and Nuances

Exercise 2.11.3

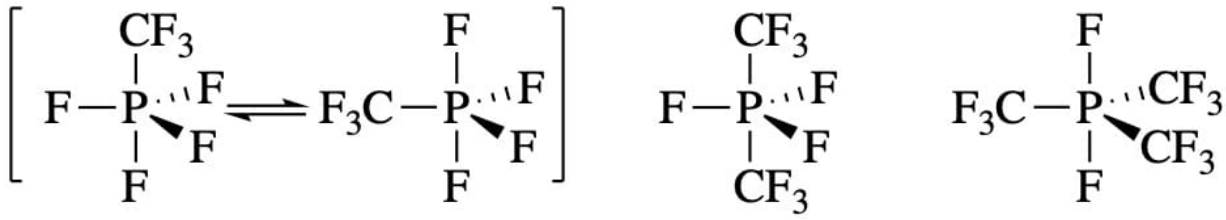
Some examples of molecule that demonstrate the equatorial preference of less electronegative groups are below. Predict (draw) their structures.

a. PF_4Cl, PF_3Cl_2, and PF_2Cl_3
b. $PF_4(CH_3)$ $PF_3(CH_3)_2$, and $PF_2(CH_3)_3$

Answer (a) available at the end of this section.

Answer (b) available at the end of this section.

In the exercise above, the structures can be explained by the electronegativity of the pendant groups; less electronegative groups prefer the equatorial positions. There are other similar molecules for which explanations (or predictions) are difficult. For example, the series of molecules below seems to have completely random placement of F and CF_3 groups. **These structures could not be predicted based on VSEPR theory.** It seems that in this case, the more symmetrical arrangements of pendant groups is preferred.



References and resources

1. Pauling, L. (1932). "The Nature of the Chemical Bond. IV. The Energy of Single Bonds and the Relative Electronegativity of Atoms". *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **54**(9): 3570–3582. doi:10.1021/ja01348a011.
2. Housecroft, Catherine E. et. al. "Inorganic Chemistry" 3rd Edition. Pearson Education Limited 2008. Chapter 2.5 "Electronegativity Values" pgs. 42-44
3. International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry. "Electronegativity". goldbook.iupac.org/E01990.html.
4. Pearson, R.G. *Acc. Chem. Res.* 1990, 23, 1, 1–2. https://doi.org/10.1021/ar00169a001
5. Mulliken, R. S. (1934). "A New Electroaffinity Scale; Together with Data on Valence States and on Valence Ionization Potentials and Electron Affinities". *J. Chem. Phys.***2** (11): 782–793. doi:10.1063/1.1749394.
6. Mulliken, R. S. (1935). "Electronic Structures of Molecules XI. Electroaffinity, Molecular Orbitals and Dipole Moments". J. Chem. Phys. **3** (9): 573–585. doi:10.1063/1.1749731.
7. Allred, A. L.; Rochow, E. G. (1958). "A scale of electronegativity based on electrostatic force". *Journal of Inorganic and Nuclear Chemistry*. **5** (4): 264–268. doi:10.1016/0022-1902(58)80003-2
8. Sanderson, R. T. (1983). "Electronegativity and bond energy". *Journal of the American Chemical Society*. **105** (8): 2259–2261. doi:10.1021/ja00346a026
9. Pearson, R. G. (1985). "Absolute electronegativity and absolute hardness of Lewis acids and bases". J. Am. Chem. Soc. 107 (24): 6801. doi:10.1021/ja00310a009.
10. Allen, Leland C. (1989). "Electronegativity is the average one-electron energy of the valence-shell electrons in ground-state free atoms". Journal of the American Chemical Society. 111 (25): 9003–9014. doi:10.1021/ja00207a003.
11. Mann, Joseph B.; Meek, Terry L.; Allen, Leland C. (2000). "Configuration Energies of the Main Group Elements". Journal of the American Chemical Society. 122 (12): 2780–2783. doi:10.1021/ja992866e.
12. Mann, Joseph B.; Meek, Terry L.; Knight, Eugene T.; Capitani, Joseph F.; Allen, Leland C. (2000). "Configuration energies of the d-block elements". Journal of the American Chemical Society. 122 (21): 5132–5137. doi:10.1021/ja9928677

Acknowledgment

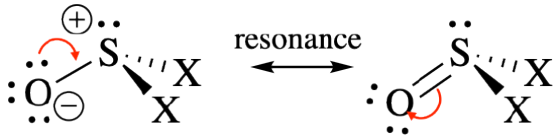
- Matthew Salem (UC Davis) (Pauling Electronegativity)
- Introduction to Inorganic Chemistry Wikibook (https://chem.libretexts.org/Bookshel..._Bond_Strength)

- Curated or created by Kathryn Haas

Answers

Exercise 2.11.1

Geometry and predicted bond angles: These are molecules with steric number 4. They can be written as two different resonance structures, and the resonance hybrid would have double bond character between S and O.



We would expect a trigonal pyramidal geometry with all bond angles <109.5° because the lone pair is more repulsive than bonds. Because the double bond is more repulsive than single bonds, we should also expect the O-S-X bond angles to be greater than the X-S-X bond angles.

Trend: This is a series of molecules that varies in the identity of the pendant atoms; the variation is within the halogens. The size of the halogens increases, and the electronegativity decreases in the order F, Cl, Br. Both size and electronegativity would lead us to conclude that the X-S-X bond angles would increase in the order $OSF_2 < OSCl_2 < OSBr_2$

Explanation: (1) Increasing electonegativity of the pendant atom (F > Cl > Br) increases the polarity of the bond and reduces the electron density of the bonded pair on the central atom. This reduces the e-e repulsions of adjacent bonded electron pairs on S, allowing the halogens to become closer. The more electronegative pendant atoms can have smaller bond angles. (2) Increasing size of pendant atoms (F < Cl < Br) increases steric repulsions and increases bond angle. Both explanations lead to the same predicted trend.

The actual measured X-S-X bond angles are OSF_2 (92.3°) / $OSCl_2$ (96.2°) / $OSBr_2$ (98.2°). The trend in these bond angles is consistent with the prediction.

Geometry and predicted bond angles: These are molecules with steric number 4, bent molecular geometry, with predicted bond angles <109.5° because the two lone pairs are each more repulsive than the bonds. There are two lone pairs and two single bonds to H around each central atom.

Trend: This is a series of molecules that varies in the identity of the central atom. The central atom increases in the order O < S < Se < Te, where Te is the largest element and O is the smallest. Arguments based on size would lead us to predict that the pendant groups of H_2Te would be less sterically crowded and thus have a smaller bond angle than the pendant groups of H_2O. The electronegativity decreases in the order O > S > Se > Te, where O is the most electronegative element and Te is the least. Thus, we expect the bonding electro pairs to be closer to the central atom on O than they would be on Te; we should expect H_2Te to have the least electron pair repulsions and thus smallest bond angle in this series, while H_2O would have the strongest electron pair repulsions and largest bond angles.

Both arguments lead to the same conclusion, that the order of increasing bond angle is $H_2Te < H_2Se < H_2S < H_2O$.

The actual measured bond angles are H_2Te (90.2°) / H_2Se (90.6°) / H_2S (92.1°) / H_2O (104.5). The trend in these bond angles is consistent with prediction.

Geometry and predicted bond angles: These are molecules with steric number 4, bent molecular geometry, with predicted bond angles <109.5° because the two lone pairs are each more repulsive than the bonds. There are two lone pairs and two single bonds to H around each central atom. (This is similar to the case in (b)).

Trend: This is a series of molecules that varies in the identity of the pendant atoms; two of the molecules have halogens, and the other has hydrogen pendant atoms. This is a case where size and electronegativity will be conflicting factors because trends in electronegativity do not mirror the trend in size.

- *Size:* The size of pendant atoms increases in the order H < F < Cl where H is smallest and Cl is largest. Prediction of bond angles based on size alone would lead to the predicted order of increasing bond angle $H_2O < OF_2 < OCl_2$.
- *Electronegativity*: The electronegativity decreases in the order F > Cl > H where F has the greatest electronegativity and H has the least. Since we expect the most electronegative pendant atoms to have the smallest bond angles, prediction based on electronegativity alone would lead to the predicted order of increasing bond angle $OF_2 < OCl_2 < H_2O$.

The points above illustrate how the two different arguments would lead to different predictions about the trend in bond angle. This makes it difficult to predict the actual order of increasing bond angle. However, we saw above in the example of NH_3 vs NF_3 that electronegativity is more important than size; yet in the case of NH_3 vs NCl_3, the much larger size of the pendant atom is more important. If we apply this lesson to the current problem, we might predict the order $OF_2 < H_2O < OCl_2$, and in fact this more nuanced prediction, based on a similar case, matches the actual order for measured bond angles: OF_2 (103.3°) < H_2O (104.5°) < OCl_2 (110.9°).

Exercise 2.11.2

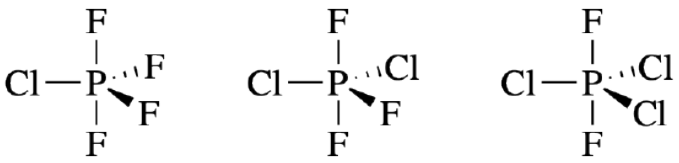
Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

Exercise 2.11.2

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

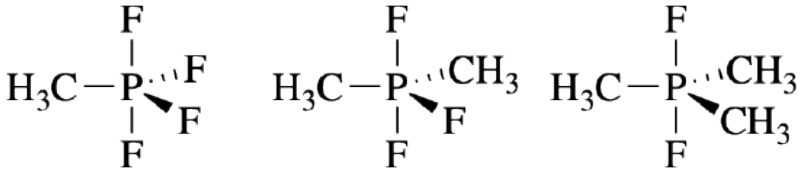
Exercise 2.11.3

Cl is less electronegative than F; thus we expect Cl to have stronger preference for the equatorial positions.



Exercise 2.11.3

CH_3, an electron donating group, is less electronegative than F. We expect CH_3 to have a stronger preference for the equatorial positions.



This page titled 2.11: Electronegativity and Atomic Size Effects is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 3.2.3: Electronegativity and Atomic Size Effects by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3: MOLECULAR SYMMETRY

3.1: Symmetry Elements and Operations
3.2: Symmetry Elements
3.3: Molecular Point Groups

This page titled 3: Molecular Symmetry is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

3.1: Symmetry Elements and Operations

Click here to see a lecture on this topic.

Introduction

The symmetry of a molecule consists of **symmetry operations** and **symmetry elements**. A symmetry operation is an operation that is performed to a molecule which leaves it indistinguishable and superimposable on the original position. Symmetry operations are performed with respect to symmetry elements (points, lines, or planes).

An example of a symmetry operation is a 180° rotation of a water molecule in which the resulting position of the molecule is indistinguishable from the original position (see Figure 3.1.1). In this example, the symmetry operation is the rotation and the symmetry element is the axis of rotation.

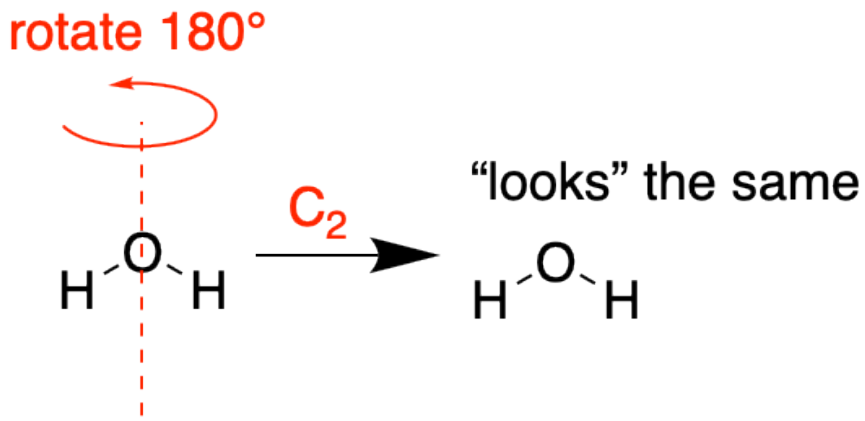


Figure 3.1.1: An example of a symmetry operation is a 180° rotation where the resulting position is indistinguishable from the original. A 180° rotation is called a C_2 operation; the axis of rotation is the symmetry element. (Kathryn Haas; CC-NC-BY-SA)

There are five types of symmetry operations including **identity**, **reflection**, **inversion**, **proper rotation**, and **improper rotation**. The improper rotation is the sum of a rotation followed by a reflection. The symmetry elements that correspond to the five types of symmetry operations are listed in Table 3.1.1.

Table 3.1.1: Table of elements and operations

Element	Operation	Symbol
Identity	identity	E
Proper axis	rotation by $(360/n)^o$	C_n
Symmetry plane	reflection in the plane	σ
Inversion center	inversion of a point at (x,y,z) to (-x,-y,-z)	*i*
Improper axis	rotation by $(360/n)^o$, followed by reflection in the plane perpendicular to the rotation axis	S_n

Symmetry Operations and Elements

Identity (E)

All molecules have the identity element. The identity operation is doing nothing to the molecule (it doesn't rotate, reflect, or invert...it just is).

Proper Rotation and Proper Axis (C_n)

A "proper" rotation is just a simple rotation operation about an axis. The symbol for any proper rotation or proper axis is $C_{(360/n)}$, where n is the degree of rotation. Thus, a 180° rotation is a C_2 rotation around a C_2 axis, and a 120° rotation is a C_3 rotation about a C_3 axis.

> **PRINCIPAL AXIS**: The principal axis of a molecule is the highest order proper rotation axis. For example, if a molecule had C_2 and C_4 axes, the C_4 is the principal axis.

Reflection and Symmetry Planes (σ)

Symmetry planes are mirror planes within the molecule. A reflection operation occurs with respect to a plane of symmetry. There are three classes of symmetry elements:

1. σ_h (horizontal): horizontal planes are perpendicular to principal axis
2. σ_v (vertical): vertical planes are parallel to the principal axis
3. σ_d (dihedral): dihedral planes are parallel to the principal axis and bisecting two C_2' axes

Inversion and Inversion Center (i)

The inversion operation requires a point of symmetry (a center of symmetry within a molecule). In other words, a point at the center of the molecule that can transform (x,y,z) into (-x,-y,-z) coordinate. Structures of tetrahedrons, triangles, and pentagons lack an inversion center.

Improper rotation (S_n)

Improper rotation is a combination of a rotation with respect to an axis of rotation (C_n), followed by a reflection through a plane perpendicular to that C_n axis. In short, an S_n operation is equivalent to C_n followed by σ_h.

References

1. Introduction to Molecular Symmetry by J. S Ogden
2. Inorganic Chemistry by Catherine Housecroft And Alan G. Sharpe.

This page titled 3.1: Symmetry Elements and Operations is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 4.1: Symmetry Elements and Operations by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3.2: Symmetry Elements

Symmetry elements of the molecule are geometric entities: an imaginary point, axis or plane in space, which symmetry operations: rotation, reflection or inversion, are performed. Their recognition leads to the application of symmetry to molecular properties and can also be used to predict or explain many of a molecule's chemical properties. Symmetry elements and symmetry operations are two fundamental concepts in group theory, which is the mathematical description of symmetry properties that describe the structure, bonding, and spectroscopy of molecules.

Point Symmetry Operations

Point symmetry of a molecule results when there exists at least one point in space that remains indistinguishable from the original molecule after any symmetry operation is applied. In other words, a rotation, reflection or inversion operations are called symmetry operations if, and only if, the newly arranged molecule is indistinguishable from the original arrangement. There are five kinds of point of symmetry elements that a molecule can possess, thus, there are also five kinds of point symmetry operations. All symmetry elements in a molecule must share at least one point in common and this point occurs at the center of the molecule.

Identity (E)

Identity operation comes from the German 'Einheit' meaning unity. This symmetry element means no change. All molecules have this element.

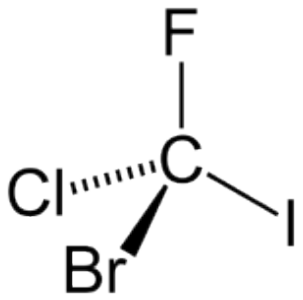


Figure 3.2.1: $\mathrm{CFClBrI}$. A chiral molecule possesses no symmetry other than the identity operation, E. (Public Domain; Benjah-bmm27 via Wikipedia)

Proper Rotation (C$\diamondsuit$)

Proper rotation operates with respect to an axis called a **symmetry axis** (also known as n-fold rotational axis). An axis around which a rotation by 360°/n (or 2π/n) results in an identical molecule before and after the rotation. The axis with the highest n is called the **principal axis.**

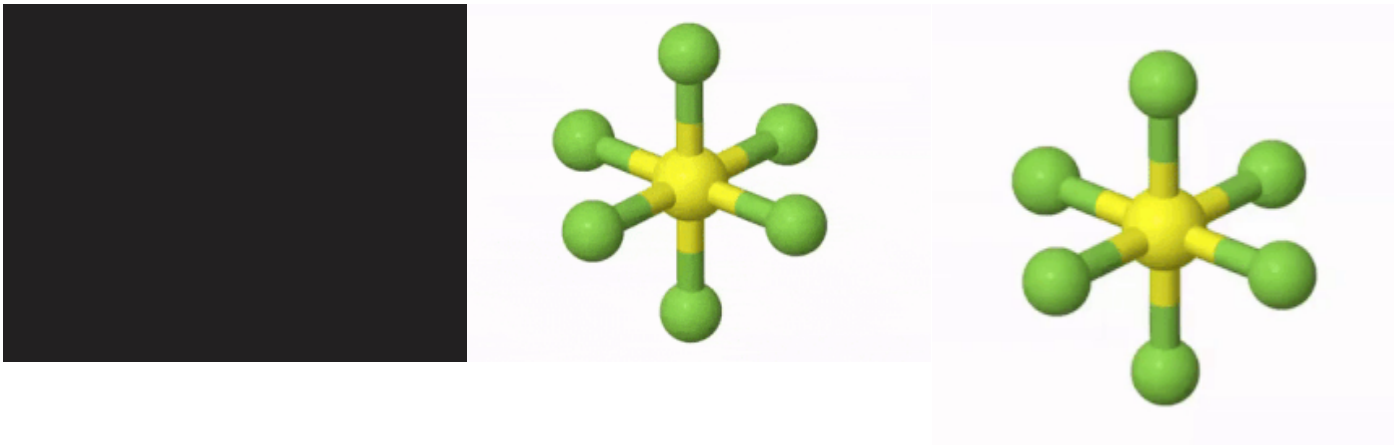


Figure 3.2.2: Octahedral structure of SF_6 with sulfur (yellow) and fluorine (green). Proper rotations of SF_6 with examples are $6C_2$, (left) $4C_3$ (middle) and $3C_4$ (right). We call C_4 the principal axis of SF_6. (Symmetry@Otterbein)

In general, a molecule contains n C_n operations such that {C_n^1, C_n^2, C_n^3,..., C_n^{n-1}, C_n^n} where $C_n^n = E$. For example, if there exists C_5 axis then there exists $5C_5$ ($2C_5^1$, $2C_5^2$, C_5^5) operations:

- $C_5^1 = C_5^4$ since the operation results indistinguishable molecule in clockwise and counter-clockwise, respectively.
- $C_5^2 = C_5^3$ since the operation results indistinguishable molecule in clockwise and counter-clockwise, respectively.
- $C_5^5 = E$

Reflection (σ)

Reflection operates with respect to a plane called a plane of symmetry (also known as a **mirror plane**). There exist three types of mirror planes:

- σ_h – a horizontal mirror plane of a molecule is **perpendicular** to the primary axis of a molecule.
- σ_v – a vertical mirror plane of a molecule includes the primary axis of a molecule and passes through the bonds (atoms).
- σ_d – a dihedral (also known as a **diagonal mirror plane**) of a molecule includes the primary axis of a molecule while bisecting the angle between two C_2 axes that are perpendicular to it. Therefore, σ_d does not pass through the bonds (atoms).

Note

σ_d is a special case of a σ_v.

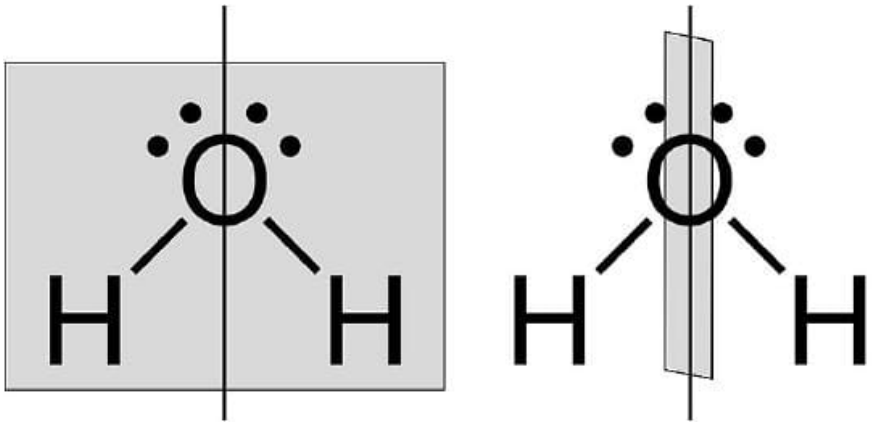


Figure 3.2.1: Bent structure of H_2O. The water molecule has two σ_v along C_2 axis and no σ_h. (CC BY-SA 4.0; Stars123kr via Wikipedia)

Inversion (i)

Inversion operates with respect to a point called a center of symmetry (also known as an **inversion center**). It gives the same result to rotating a molecule around C_2 axis then reflecting it with respect to a mirror plane that is perpendicular to C_2. For example, SF_6 in Figure 3.2.2 has an inversion point at the center S.

Improper Rotation (S$\textcircled{?}$)

Improper rotation operates with respect to an axis called rotation-reflection axis. In other words, it is a combination operation of a rotation about an axis by 360°/n (or $2\pi/n$) followed by reflection in a plane perpendicular to the rotation axis.

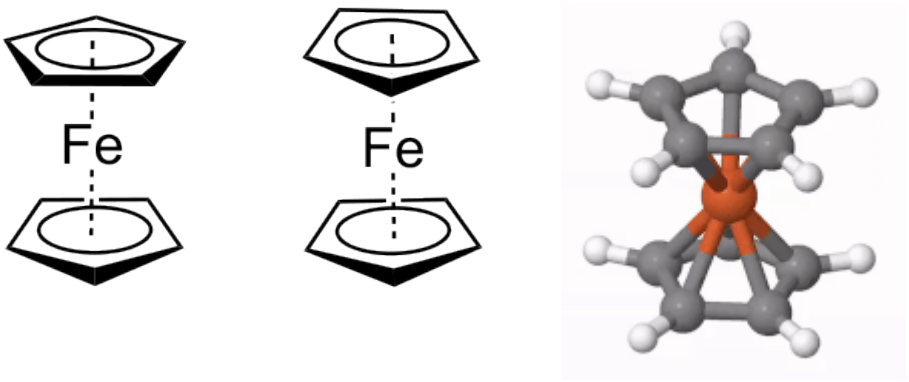


Figure 3.2.4: Staggered ferrocene *(left)* has an S_{10} operation while eclipsed ferrocene *(middle)* has an S_5 operation. (*right*) An example of a S_5 element in eclipsed ferrocene. (Public Domain; (left) Jü via Wikipedia and (right) Symmetry@Otterbein)

Point Groups

The complete collection of symmetry elements of a molecule forms the basis of a mathematical group, and the collection of symmetry operations that are interrelated to each other via certain kind of rules is known as a **point group**:

- **Closure** – if any two symmetry operations are in the same group then their product, resulting in another operation, will also be in the same group:

$$\text{If } A \in G \text{ and } B \in G, \text{ then } (A \cap B) \in G$$

- **Associativity** – the law of associativity applies to all symmetry operations:

$$(AB)C = A(BC)$$

- **Identity** – there exists an operation that commutes with other operations (identity, E) and leaves them unchanged:

$$\text{If } A \in G \text{ and } E \in G, \text{ then } AE = EA = A$$

- **Inverses** – for every symmetry operation in the group, there exists an inverse operation that their product results identity:

$$\text{If } A \in G, \text{ then there exists } A^{-1} \in G \text{ such that } AA^{-1} = A^{-1}A = E$$

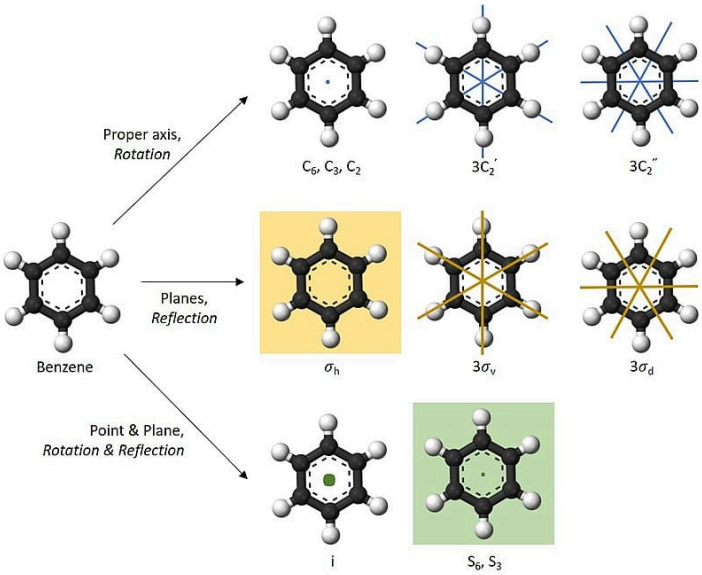


Figure 3.2.5: Benzene is one of the molecules that possess various symmetry elements and symmetry operations. (CC BY-SA 4.0; Stars123kr via Wikipedia)

References

1. Pfenning, Brian W. (2015). Principles of Inorganic Chemistry. Hoboken: John Wiley & Sons, Inc.. pp. 195.
2. https://www-e.openu.ac.il/symmetry/symmetry-tutorial.html

This page titled 3.2: Symmetry Elements is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 1.1: Symmetry Elements by Wikipedia is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Advanced_Inorganic_Chemistry.

3.3: Molecular Point Groups

Introduction

A **Point Group** describes all the symmetry operations that can be performed on a molecule that result in a conformation indistinguishable from the original. Point groups are used in Group Theory, the mathematical analysis of groups, to determine properties such as a molecule's molecular orbitals.

Assigning Point Groups

While a point group contains all of the symmetry operations that can be performed on a given molecule, it is not necessary to identify all of these operations to determine the molecule's overall point group. Instead, a molecule's point group can be determined by following a set of steps which analyze the presence (or absence) of particular symmetry elements.

1. Determine if the molecule is of high or low symmetry.
2. If not, find the highest order rotation axis, C_n.
3. Determine if the molecule has any C_2 axes perpendicular to the principal C_n axis. If so, then there are n such C_2 axes, and the molecule is in the D set of point groups. If not, it is in either the C or S set of point groups.
4. Determine if the molecule has a horizontal mirror plane (σ_h) perpendicular to the principal C_n axis. If so, the molecule is either in the C_{nh} or D_{nh} set of point groups.
5. Determine if the molecule has a vertical mirror plane (σ_v) containing the principal C_n axis. If so, the molecule is either in the C_{nv} or D_{nd} set of point groups. If not, and if the molecule has n perpendicular C_2 axes, then it is part of the D_n set of point groups.
6. Determine if there is an improper rotation axis, S_{2n}, collinear with the principal C_n axis. If so, the molecule is in the S_{2n} point group. If not, the molecule is in the C_n point group.

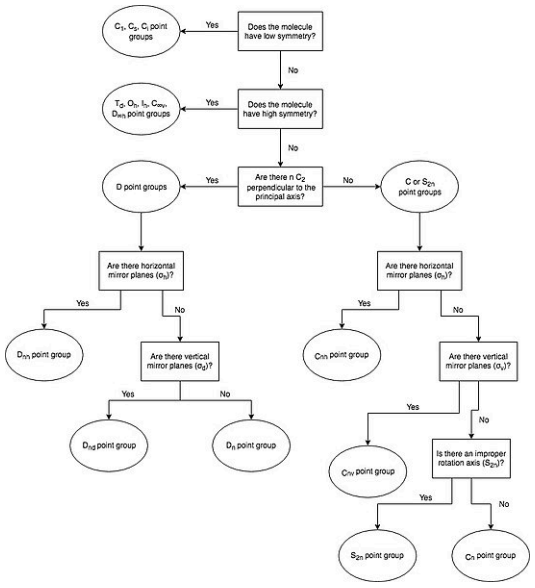


Figure 3.3.1 steps for determining a molecule's overall point group

Example 3.3.1

Find the point group of benzene (C_6H_6).

Answer available at the end of this section.

Low Symmetry Point Groups

Low symmetry point groups include the C_1, C_s, and C_i groups

Group	Description	Example
C_1	only the identity operation (E)	CHFClBr
C_s	only the identity operation (E) and one mirror plane	C_2H_2ClBr
C_i	only the identity operation (E) and a center of inversion (i)	$C_2H_2Cl_2Br$

High Symmetry Point Groups

High symmetry point groups include the T_d, O_h, I_h, $C_{\infty v}$, and $D_{\infty h}$ groups. The table below describes their characteristic symmetry operations. The full set of symmetry operations included in the point group is described in the corresponding character table.

Group	Description	Example
$C_{\infty v}$	linear molecule with an infinite number of rotation axes and vertical mirror planes (σ_v)	HBr
$D_{\infty h}$	linear molecule with an infinite number of rotation axes, vertical mirror planes (σ_v), perpendicular C_2 axes, a horizontal mirror plane (σ_h), and an inversion center (i)	CO_2
T_d	typically have tetrahedral geometry, with 4 C_4 axes, 3 C_2 axes, 3 S_4 axes, and 6 dihedral mirror planes (σ_d)	CH_4
O_h	typically have octahedral geometry, with 3 C_4 axes, 4 C_3 axes, and an inversion center (i) as characteristic symmetry operations	SF_6
I_h	typically have an icosahedral structure, with 6 C_5 axes as characteristic symmetry operations	$B_{12}H_{12}^{2-}$

D Groups

The D set of point groups are classified as D_{nh}, D_{nd}, or D_n, where n refers to the principal axis of rotation. Overall, the D groups are characterized by the presence of n C_2 axes perpendicular to the principal C_n axis. Further classification of a molecule in the D groups depends on the presence of horizontal or vertical/dihedral mirror planes.

Group	Description	Example
D_{nh}	n perpendicular C_2 axes, and a horizontal mirror plane (σ_h)	benzene, C_6H_6 is D_{6h}
D_{nd}	n perpendicular C_2 axes, and a vertical mirror plane (σ_v)	propadiene, C_3H_4 is D_{2d}
D_n	n perpendicular C_2 axes, no mirror planes	$[Co(en)_3]^{3+}$ is D_3

C Groups

The C set of point groups are classified as C_{nh}, C_{nv}, or C_n, where n refers to the principal axis of rotation. The C set of groups are characterized by the absence of n C_2 axes perpendicular to the principal C_n axis. Further classification of a molecule in the C groups depends on the presence of horizontal or vertical/dihedral mirror planes.

Group	Description	Example
C_{nh}	horizontal mirror plane (σ_h) perpendicular to the principal C_n axis	boric acid, H_3BO_3 is C_{3h}

C_{nv}	vertical mirror plane (σ_v) containing the principal C_n axis	ammonia, NH_3 is C_{3v}
C_n	no mirror planes	$P(C_6H_5)_3$ is C_3

S Groups

The S set of point groups are classified as S_{2n}, where n refers to the principal axis of rotation. The S set of groups are characterized by the absence of n C_2 axes perpendicular to the principal C_n axis, as well as the absence of horizontal and vertical/dihedral mirror planes. However, there is an improper rotation (or a rotation-reflection) axis collinear with the principal C_n axis.

Group	Description	Example
S_{2n}	improper rotation (or a rotation-reflection) axis collinear with the principal C_n axis	12-crown-4 is S_4

See Also

Symmetry Gallery

Answers

Example 3.3.1

Solution

1. Benzene is neither high or low symmetry
2. Highest order rotation axis: C_6
3. There are 6 C_2 axes perpendicular to the principal axis
4. There is a horizontal mirror plane (σ_h)

Benzene is in the D_{6h} point group.

This page titled 3.3: Molecular Point Groups is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

4: MOLECULAR ORBITAL (MO) THEORY

4.1: Formation of Molecular Orbitals from Atomic Orbitals

4.2: Molecular Orbitals from s Orbitals

4.3: Molecular Orbitals from p Orbitals

4.4: Molecular orbitals from d orbitals

4.5: Nonbonding Orbitals and Other Factors

4.6: Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules

4.7: Molecular Orbitals

4.8: Orbital Mixing

4.9: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods

4.10: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules

4.11: Orbital ionization energies

4.12: Polar bonds

4.13: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals

This page titled 4: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

4.1: Formation of Molecular Orbitals from Atomic Orbitals

Molecular orbital theory extends from quantum theory and the atomic orbital wavefunctions (ψ) described by the Schrödinger equation. While the Schrödinger equation defines a Ψ for electrons in individual atoms, we can approximate the molecular wavefunction (what Ψ would look like if we combined the ψ of individual atoms). The addition or subtraction of wavefunctions is termed **linear combination of atomic orbitals** (LCAO). Molecular orbital theory is applied to LCAO to describe bonding.

The LCAO for the wavefunction of two atoms (ψ_a and ψ_b) is represented by the general expression below. The coefficients c_a and c_b quantify the contribution of each atomic ψ to the molecular Ψ.

$$\Psi = c_a\psi_a + c_b\psi_b$$

For two atomic ψs to form a bond, three conditions must be satisfied:

- First, the **distance between the atoms** must be small enough to provide good overlap. This is because the two orbitals must be able to overlap using regions of ψ^2 where the probability of finding electrons is significant. If atoms are not close enough, ψ_a and ψ_b cannot interact productively. At the same time, the atoms must be far enough apart that their nuclei do not repel each other.
- The **symmetry of the orbitals** must be compatible such that regions of ψ_a and ψ_b with the same sign constructively interfere more than regions with opposite sign destructively interfere. In other words, for a productive interaction, there must be a relatively high probability of finding an electron between the two nuclei, and this depends on the symmetry (and sign of the ψ) of the atomic orbitals.
- Third, the **energies of the atomic orbitals** must be similar. Orbitals with similar energy combine to make the most stable bonding molecular orbitals. Atomic orbitals with very different energies form less stable bonding interactions, and the larger the difference in the atomic orbitals, the weaker the bonding interaction will be.

Atomic orbitals combine to form molecular orbitals when these three conditions are met. The result is a set of bonding molecular orbitals that are lower in energy than the original atomic orbital energies.

This page titled 4.1: Formation of Molecular Orbitals from Atomic Orbitals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

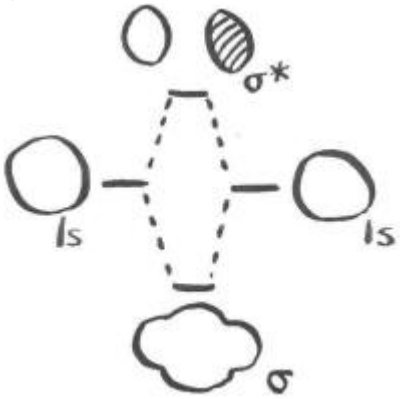
- 5.1: Formation of Molecular Orbitals from Atomic Orbitals by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.2: Molecular Orbitals from s Orbitals

In the case of the hydrogen molecule, we took two atomic orbitals and combined them to form two molecular orbitals. These new molecular orbitals had different wavelengths than the two atomic orbitals: one had a longer wavelength and was a little lower in energy, while the other had a shorter wavelength and was a little higher in energy. If we take into account the energy of the two original atomic wavefunctions, and compare them to the total energy of the two new molecular wavefunctions, there is no change overall.

We started with two atomic orbitals, and by combining them we produced two molecular orbitals. Both of these ideas are useful in considering the formation of more complex molecules from individual atoms.

- ◦ The average energy of the orbitals has remained almost constant.
  ◦ Also, the number of wavefunctions has remained constant.



◦

Of course, from the point of view of the two real electrons, some remarkable changes have occurred. Both of these electrons have adopted a longer wavelength and a lower energy and that has made all the difference. There is an occupied molecular orbital and an unoccupied molecular orbital; only the occupied orbital makes a real energetic contribution to the overall stability of the molecule. The unoccupied orbital is completely imaginary.

A bonding picture of He_2 would look exactly the same, because it would also involve the overlap of 1s electrons on one atom with 1s electrons on the other atom. There would be a different electronic energy, however. That difference would affect the prospects of helium-helium bond formation.

- The electrons have lower kinetic energy in the bond than they had before bonding.
- Electronic energy has decreased. A stable bond has formed.

Exercise 4.2.1

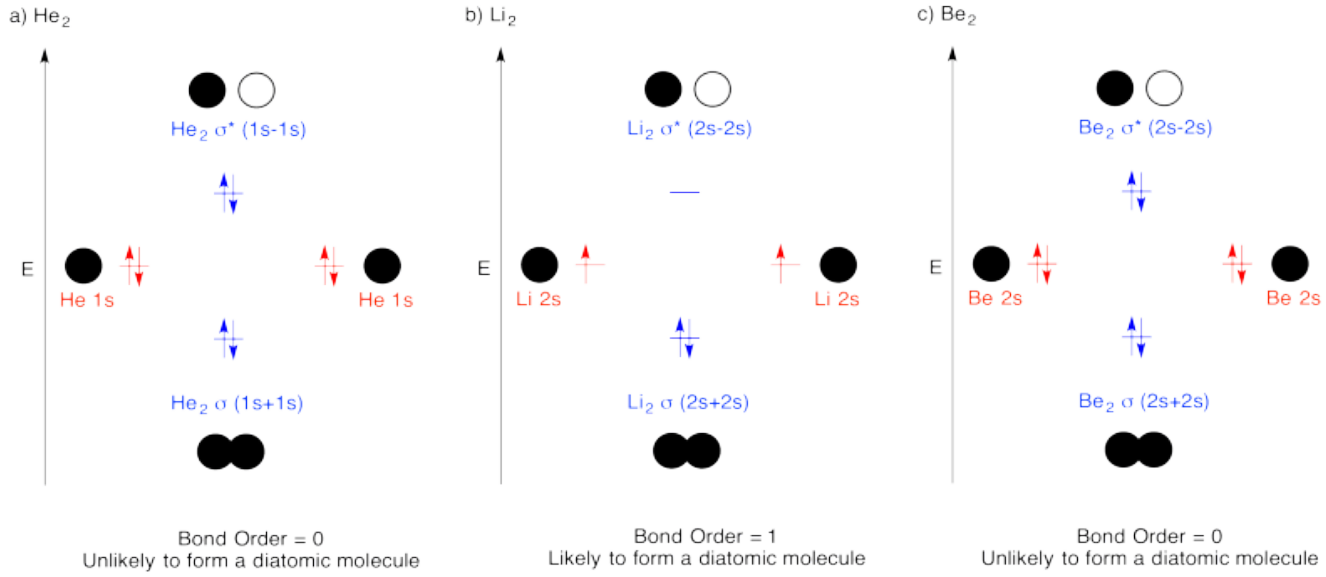
Construct molecular orbital diagrams for the following diatomic species and discuss the likelihood of bond formation in each case.

a. He_2.
b. Li_2.
c. Be_2.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 4.2.1



This page titled 4.2: Molecular Orbitals from s Orbitals is shared under a CC BY-NC 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

4.3: Molecular Orbitals from p Orbitals

Bonding with P-orbitals

Sigma bonding with p-orbitals

Other diatomic molecules in the upper right corner of the periodic table can be constructed in a similar way. Look at dinitrogen, N_2.

We can think about how dinitrogen would form if two nitrogen atoms were placed close enough together to share electrons. Nitrogen has more electrons than hydrogen, so this interaction is more complicated.

In our qualitative examination of bonding in main group diatomics, we will take the approach used in Lewis structures and just look at the valence electrons. A quantitative molecular orbital calculation with a computer would not take this shortcut, but would include all of the electrons in the atoms that are bonding together.

Nitrogen has five valence electrons, and these electrons are found in the 2s and 2p levels. There are three possible atomic orbitals in the 2p level where some of these electrons could be found: p_x, p_y and p_z. We need to look at the interaction between the s and p_x, p_y and p_z orbitals on one nitrogen atom with the s and p_x, p_y and p_z orbitals on the other nitrogen. That process could be extremely complicated, but:

- Orbital interactions are governed by symmetry.

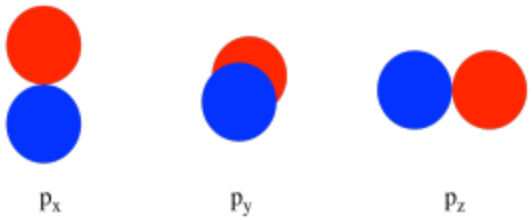
Orbitals interact most easily with other orbitals that have the same element of symmetry. For now, we can simplify and say that orbitals on one atom only interact with the same type of orbitals on the other atom.

- s orbitals interact with s orbitals. We can already see how that will work out in dinitrogen, because that is what happened in dihydrogen.
- p_x orbitals interact with p_x orbitals.
- p_y orbitals interact with p_y orbitals.
- p_z orbitals interact with p_z orbitals.

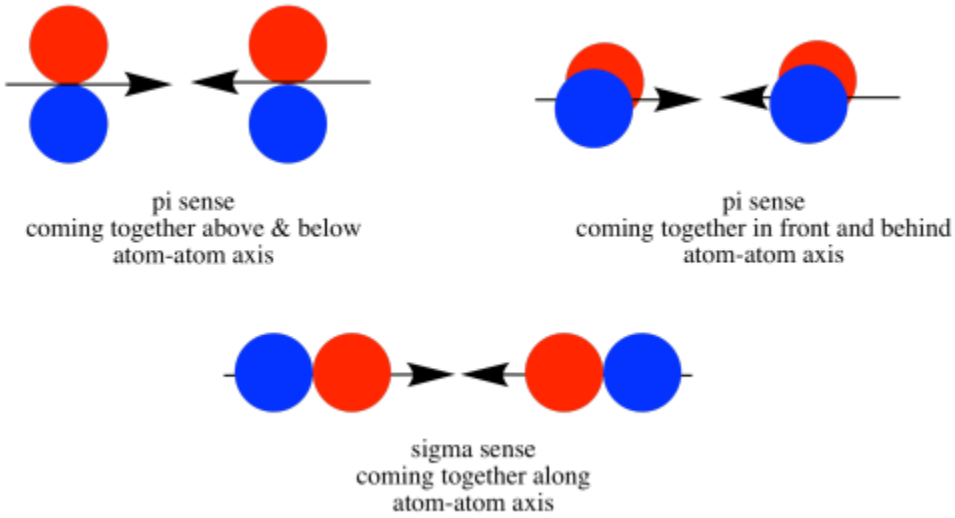
Another complication here is that the s and p orbitals do not start out at the same energy level. When the orbitals mix, one combination goes up in energy and one goes down. Does the s antibonding combination go higher in energy than the combinations from p orbitals? Do the p bonding combinations go lower in energy than the combinations from s orbitals? We will **simplify** and **assume** that the s and p levels remain completely separate from each other. This is not always true, but the situation varies depending on what atoms we are dealing with.

- The combination of one s orbital with another is just like in hydrogen. Two original orbitals will combine and rearrange to produce two new orbitals.
- There is a bonding combination in which the orbitals are in phase. The new orbital produced has a longer wavelength than the original orbital. It is lower in energy.
- There is an antibonding combination in which the orbitals are out of phase. The new orbital produced has a shorter wavelength than the original orbital. It is higher in energy.

In considering the interaction of two p orbitals, we have to keep in mind that p orbitals are directional. A p orbital lies along a particular axis: x, y or z. The three p orbitals on nitrogen are all mutually perpendicular (or orthogonal) to each other. That situation is in contrast to s orbitals, which are spherical and thus look the same from any direction.

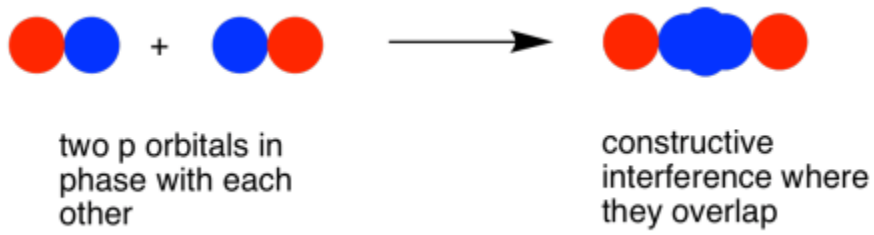


We first need to define one axis as lying along the N-N bond. It does not really matter which one. We arbitrarily say the N-N bond lies along the z axis. The p_z orbitals have a different spatial relationship to each other compared to the p_y and p_x. The p_z orbitals lie along the bond axis, whereas the p_y and p_x are orthogonal to it.

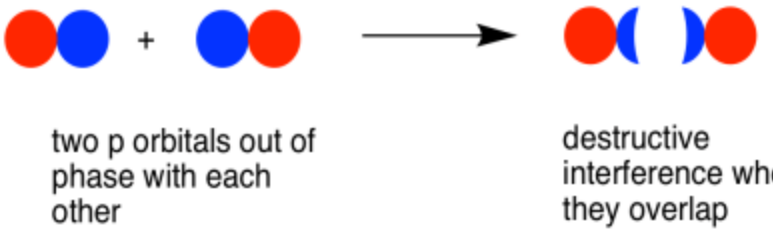


As the nitrogen atoms are brought together, one lobe on one p_z orbital overlaps strongly with one lobe on the other p_z orbital. The other lobes point away from each other and do not interact in any obvious way.

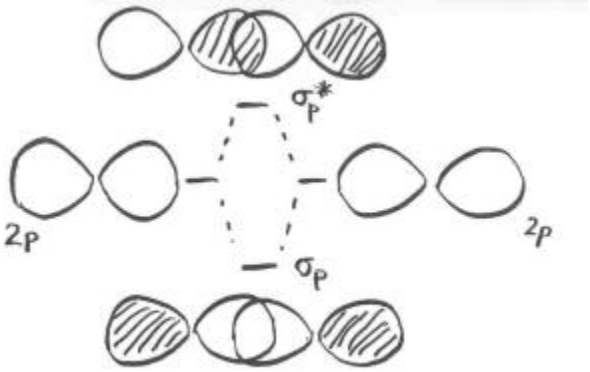
As with the s orbital, the p_z orbitals can be in-phase or out-of-phase. The in-phase combination results in constructive interference. (Here, "in-phase" means the lobes that overlap are in-phase; for that to happen the two p orbitals are actually completely out-of-phase with each other mathematically, so that one orbital is the mirror image of the other.) This combination is at a longer wavelength than the original orbital. It is a lower energy combination.



The out-of-phase combination (meaning in this case that the overlapping lobes are out-of-phase) results in destructive interference. This combination is at shorter wavelength than the original orbital. It is a higher energy combination.



As a result, we have two different combinations stemming from two different p orbitals coming together in two different ways. We get a low-energy, in-phase, bonding combination and a high-energy, out-of-phase, antibonding combination.



What about those other p orbitals, the ones that do not lie along the bond axis? We'll take a look at that problem on the next page.

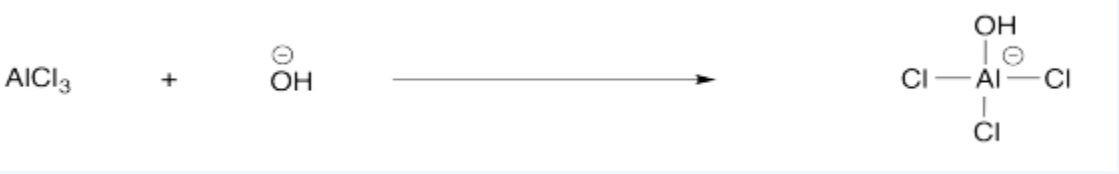
Exercise 4.3.2

Draw an MO cartoon of a sigma bonding orbital formed by the overlap of two p orbitals between two oxygen atoms. Label the positions of the oxygen nuclei with the symbol "O". Label the O-O bond axis.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.3.3

Chemical reactions can be described by MO diagrams too! Consider the following reaction in which a new sigma bond is formed.



Draw an MO diagram for the reaction above. In other words, start from the one frontier MO on each reactant to build the MO's of the new sigma bond in the product.

- Draw the orbital from the base (hydroxide) that is likely to donate its electrons.
- Draw the orbital from the acid (aluminum chloride) that is likely to accept electrons.
- Complete the MO mixing diagram of these two orbitals:

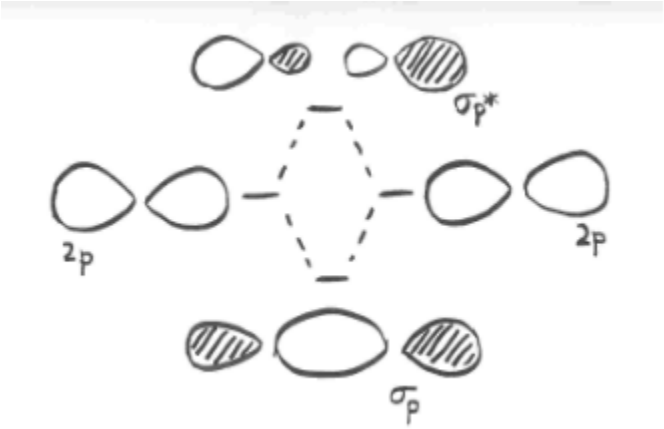
- Label the electron donating orbital
- Label the electron accepting orbital
- Populate the MO mixing diagram with electrons

o Draw a cartoon showing each reactant and product MO that contributes to the bonding interaction.

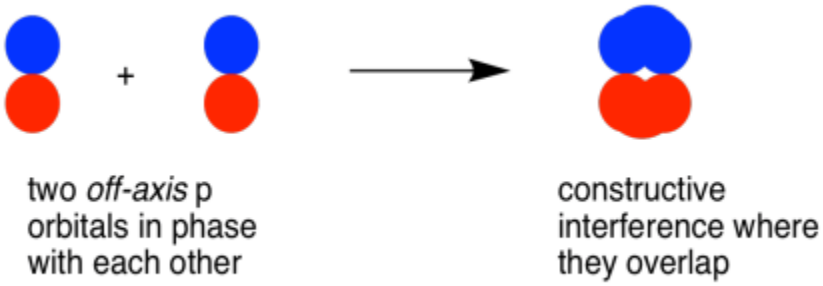
Answer available at the end of this section.

Pi-bonding with p-orbitals

Earlier, we saw that p orbitals that lie along the same axis can interact to form bonds.



Parallel, but not collinear, p orbitals can also interact with each other. They would approach each other side by side, above and below the bond axis between the two atoms. They can be close enough to each other to overlap, although they do not overlap as strongly as orbitals lying along the bond axis. They can make an in-phase combination, as shown below.

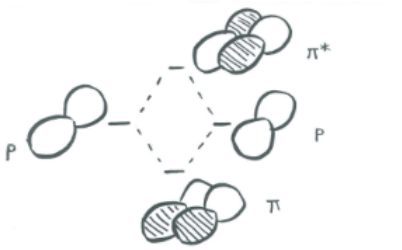


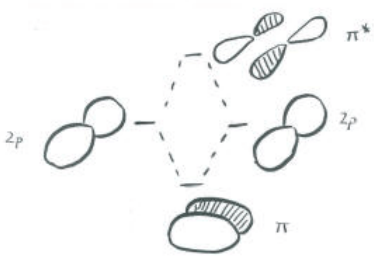
They could also make an out-of-phase combination, as shown below.



- parallel p orbitals can overlap to produce bonding and antibonding combinations.
- the resulting orbitals contain nodes along the bond axis.
- the electron density is found above and below the bond axis.
- this is called a p (pi) bond.

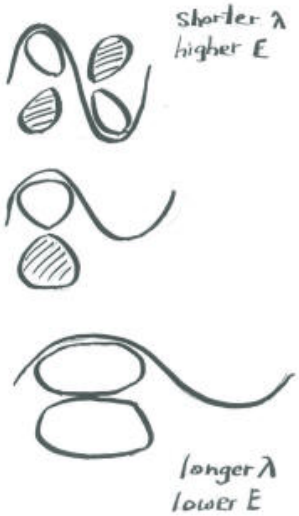
The illustration above is for one set of p orbitals that are orthogonal to the bond axis. The second picture shows the result of the constructive (or destructive) interference. A similar picture could be shown for the other set of p orbitals.



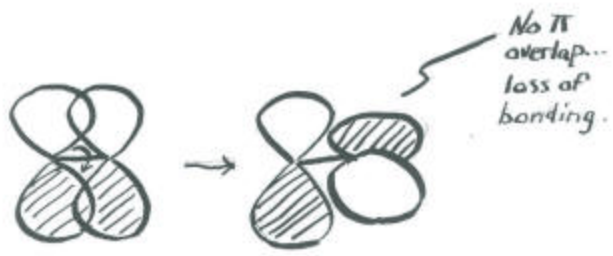


In a main group diatomic species like dinitrogen, one p orbital lying along the bond axis can engage in s bonding. The two p orbitals orthogonal to the bond axis can engage in p bonding. There will be both bonding and antibonding combinations.

Just as the sigma-bonding orbitals display progressively shorter wavelengths along the bonding axis as they go to higher energy, so do the pi bonding orbitals. In other words, there are more nodes in the higher-energy orbitals than in the lower-energy ones.



An important consequence of the spatial distribution or "shape" of a p orbital is that it is not symmetric with respect to the bond axis. An s orbital is not affected when the atom at one end of the bond is rotated with respect to the other. A p orbital is affected by such a rotation. If one atom turns with respect to the other, the p orbital would have to stretch to maintain the connection. The orbitals would not be able to overlap, so the connection between the atoms would be lost.



Exercise 4.3.4

The combinations of _____ atomic orbitals leads to σ orbitals.

Draw pictures.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.3.5

The combinations of _____ atomic orbitals leads to π orbitals.

Draw pictures.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.3.6

Which molecular orbital is typically the highest in energy?
a. p
b. σ
c. π*
d. π
e. σ*

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.3.7

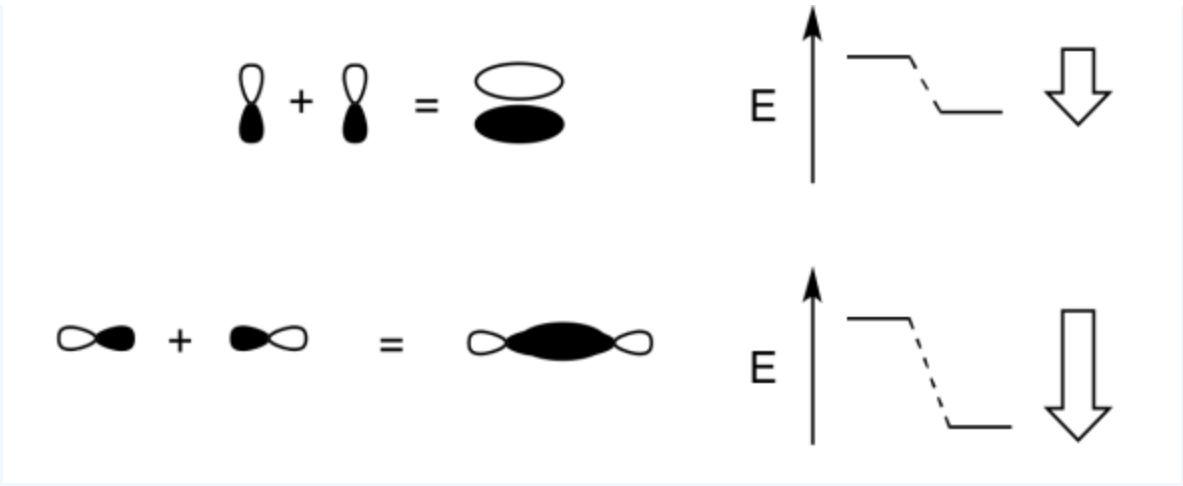
Why would a *core* 1s orbital not interact with a *valence* 2s orbital?

Hint: Why is a Li_2O bond stronger than a K_2O bond?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.3.8

Add a few words to explain the ideas conveyed in these drawings.



Answer available at the end of this section.

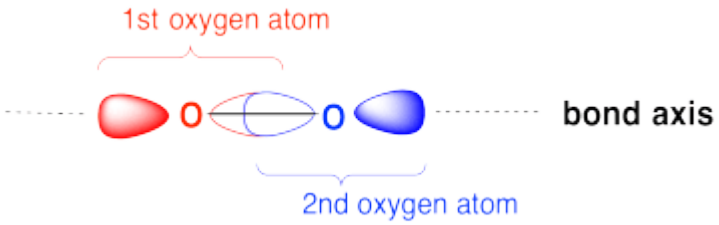
Attribution

Chris P Schaller, Ph.D., (College of Saint Benedict / Saint John's University)

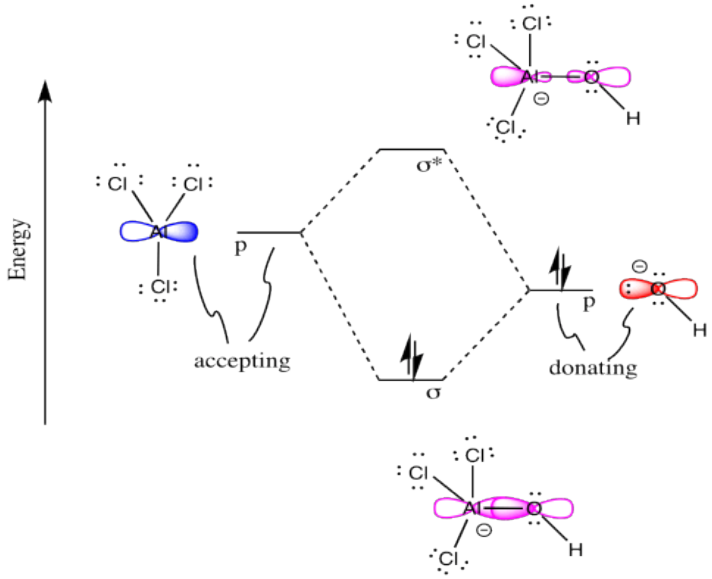
Curated or created by Kathryn Haas

Answers

Exercise 4.3.2

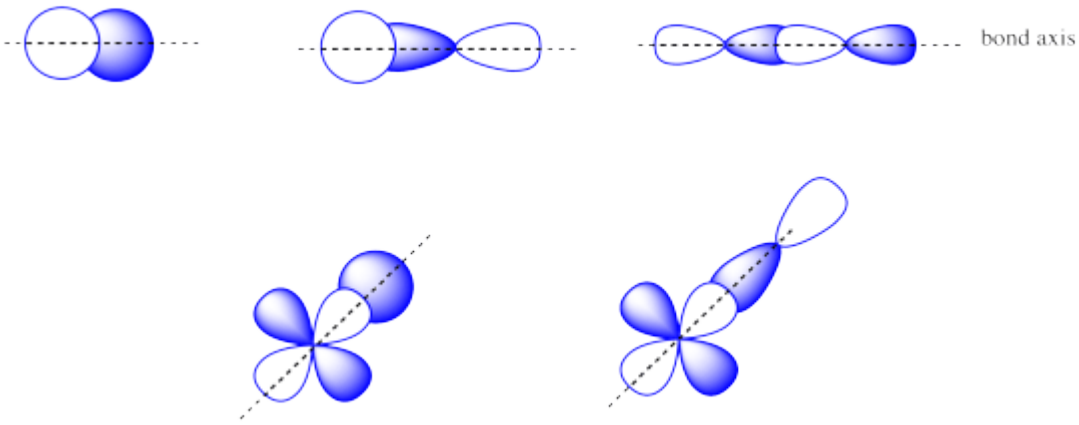


Exercise 4.3.3



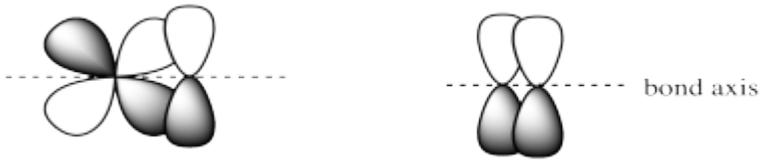
Exercise 4.3.4

The combinations of ***s* + *s*** OR ***s* + *p*** OR ***p* + *p*** OR ***s* + *d*** OR ***p* + *d*** atomic orbitals can lead to σ orbitals.



Exercise 4.3.5

The combinations of side by side p + p or p + d atomic orbitals leads to π orbitals.



Exercise 4.3.6

e) σ*

Exercise 4.3.7

Li^+ and O^{2-} are more similar in size than K^+ and O^{2-}, so the bond between Li^+ and O^{2-} is stronger.

The energy difference between any core orbitals and valence orbitals is too large, so they cannot interact. In order for orbitals to interact, the orbitals need to have the same symmetry, be in the same plane, and be similar in energy.

Exercise 4.3.8

When two parallel p orbitals combine out-of-phase, destructive interference occurs.

There is a node between the atoms.

The energy of the electrons increases.

When two parallel p orbitals combine in-phase, constructive interference occurs.

There is no node between the atoms; the electrons are found above and below the axis connecting the atoms.

The energy of the electrons decreases.

This page titled 4.3: Molecular Orbitals from p Orbitals is shared under a CC BY-NC 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.1.2: Molecular Orbitals from p Orbitals by Chris Schaller is licensed CC BY-SA 3.0.

4.4: Molecular orbitals from d orbitals

In transition metals and other heavier elements, the d orbitals may combine with other orbitals of compatible symmetry (and energy) to form molecular orbitals. Generally, there are three types of bonding and antibonding interactions that may occur with d orbitals: sigma (σ), pi (π), and delta (δ) bonds.

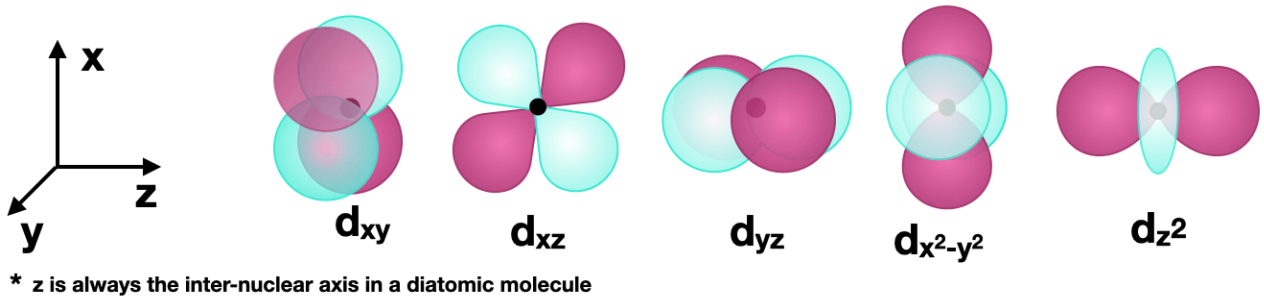


Figure 4.4.1: The five $3d$ orbitals are shown. The orientation of the axes is consistent and the z axis is horizontal for convenience in drawing bonding along the z axis (see examples below). (CC-BY-SA; Kathryn Haas)

Sigma (σ) bonding with d orbitals

σ bonds are symmetric with respect to the inter-nuclear axis (in a diatomic molecule, this is the z axis). An example of a σ bond formed by d orbitals is that of two d_{z^2} orbitals (see Figure 4.4.2). If a bonded atom is in a position other than on the z axis (in an octahedral geometry, for example), σ bonds can also form. For example, two $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals on atoms bonded along the x or y axes could also form a σ bond.

d orbitals can also form σ bonds with other types of orbitals with the appropriate symmetry. Examples of orbitals with appropriate symmetry are the s orbital and certain p orbitals on another atom, as shown below in Figure 4.4.2.

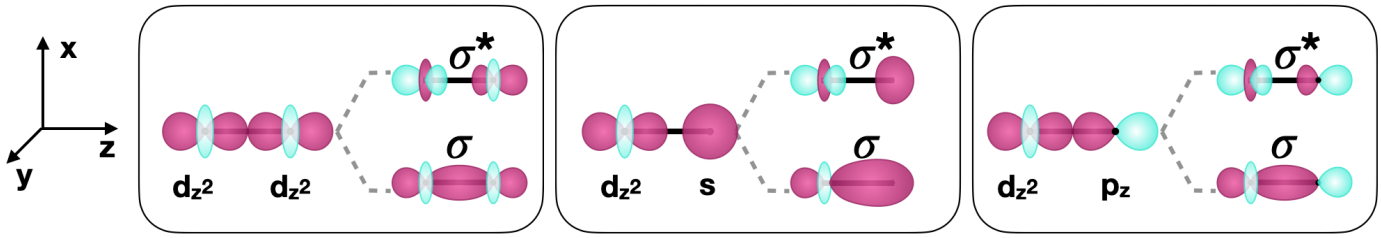


Figure 4.4.2: Selected examples of σ bonds involving d orbitals along the z internuclear axis (shown as a bold horizontal line) between two atoms. (CC-BY-SA; Kathryn Haas)

Pi (π) bonding with d orbitals

π bonds are those with one node that is in-plane with the internuclear axis. A π bond can form between two d orbitals or between d orbitals and other types of orbitals with comparable symmetry. An example of a π bond between two d orbitals is that formed by two d_{xz} orbitals along the z axis (shown in Figure 4.4.3). d orbitals can also form π bonds using p orbitals with compatible symmetry, as shown in Figure 4.4.3.

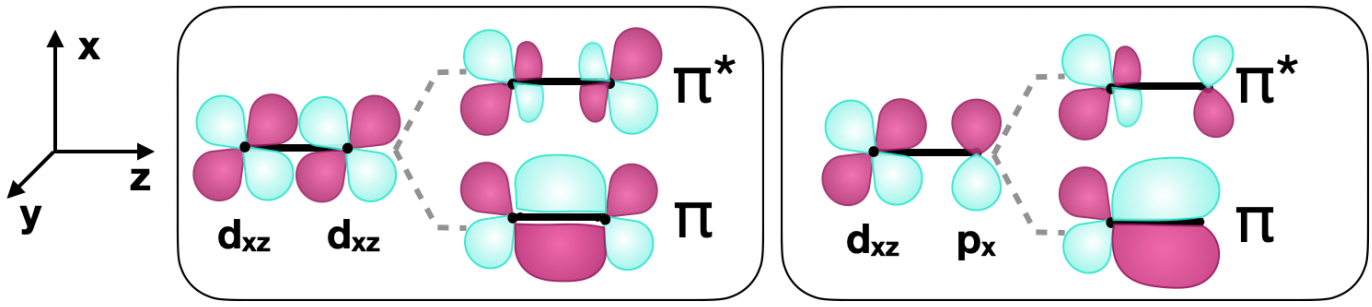


Figure 4.4.3: Selected examples of π bonds involving d orbitals along the z internuclear axis (shown as a bold horizontal line) between two atoms. (CC-BY-SA; Kathryn Haas)

Delta (δ) bonding with d orbitals

δ bonds are those with two nodes that are in-plane with the internuclear axis. δ bonds can form between two d orbitals with appropriate symmetry. For example, when two atoms bond along the z axis, the d_{xy} orbitals and the two $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals can form δ bonds (Figure 4.4.4).

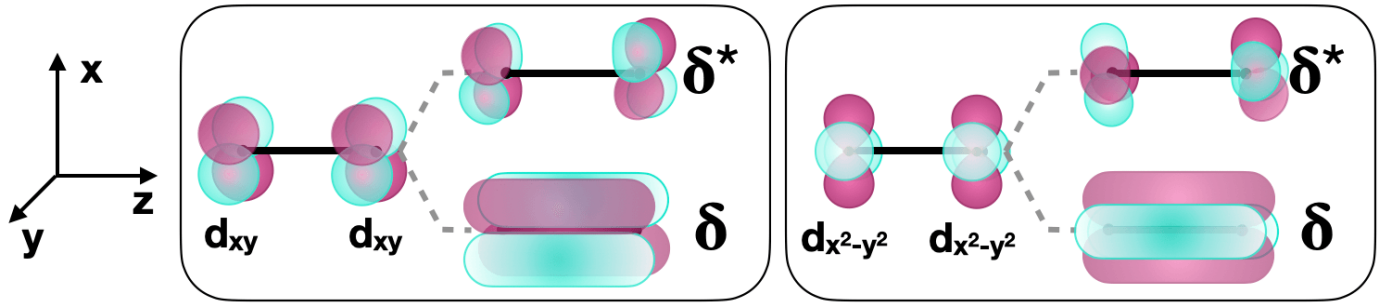


Figure 4.4.4: Selected examples of δ bonds involving d orbitals along the z internuclear axis (shown in bold horizontal line) between two atoms. (CC-BY-SA; Kathryn Haas)

Incompatible orbitals

In the descriptions above, we focused on how bonds (and antibonds) can be formed with d orbitals. All bonding and non-bonding interactions require that orbitals have compatible symmetry to form productive interactions. It is worth mentioning that orbitals with symmetry that is incompatible with the d orbitals will not have bonding or antibonding interactions with d orbitals. The figure below shows several sets of orbitals that are incompatible for bonding.

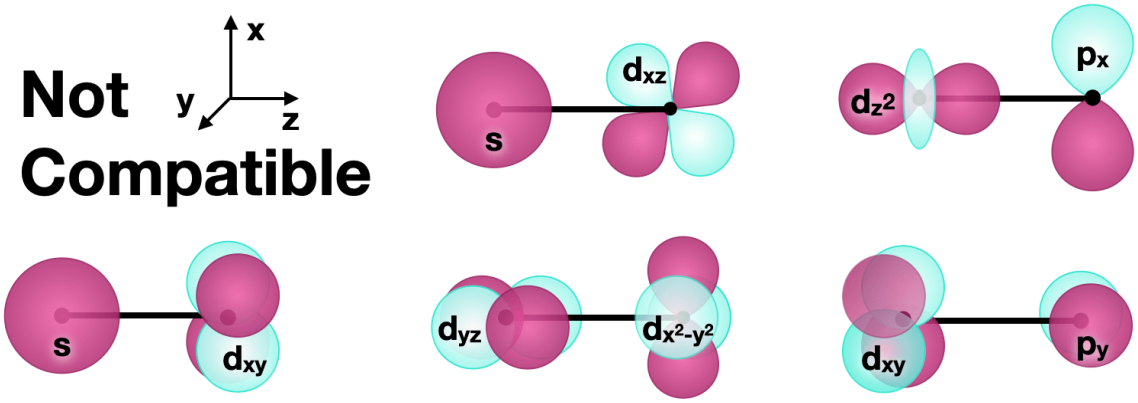


Figure 4.4.5: Several incompatible pairs of orbitals. (CC-BY-SA; Kathryn Haas)

Curated or created by Kathryn Haas

This page titled 4.4: Molecular orbitals from d orbitals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.1.3: Molecular orbitals from d orbitals by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.5: Nonbonding Orbitals and Other Factors

The simplest case is when there is an even number of atomic orbitals that all combine to form strong bonding and antibonding orbitals. But what if there is an uneven number of atomic orbitals? Or what if there are some orbitals that don't meet the criteria for bonding? Or what if the bonding interactions are weak? In these cases, there will be molecular orbitals on the molecule that have non-bonding character.

It is important to note that the bonding, non-bonding, and antibonding nature of orbitals exist on a spectrum. Some bonding and anti-bonding orbitals may have some non-bonding character depending on where their energies lie with respect to the original atomic orbital energies. When molecular orbitals have energies similar to their original atomic orbitals, they will have some non-bonding character. The closer the energies of atomic and molecular orbitals, the more non-bonding the molecular orbitals.

Two major factors to consider

Uneven number of atomic orbitals: In the case that there is an uneven number of atomic orbitals with compatible symmetry, orbitals with non-bonding character will form. For example, in the case where three atomic orbitals combine, the most common result is formation of a low-energy bonding orbital, a high energy antibonding orbital, and a non-bonding orbital of intermediate energy (Figure 4.5.1).

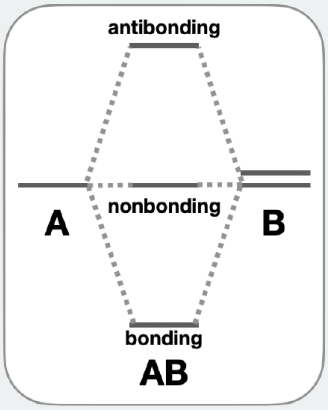


Figure 4.5.1. This figure illustrates the most common case for three atomic orbitals that combine to form three molecular orbitals; formation of one low-energy bonding, one high-energy antibonding, and one intermediate energy non-bonding molecular orbital. (CC-BY-NC-SA, Kathryn Haas)

Differences in energy: Combination of orbitals with different energies may lead to orbitals with non-bonding character. Atomic orbitals that have similar energies will have the strongest interactions, and result in bonding molecular orbitals with much lower energies than the component atomic orbitals. On the other hand, atomic orbitals with very unequal energies have a weaker interaction because the molecular orbitals are closer in energy to the atomic orbital energies, thus there is less energy benefit to putting electrons in the bonding molecular orbitals (Figure 4.5.2). When bonding or antibonding orbitals are close to the energies of the contributing atomic orbitals, those molecular orbitals may have some non-bonding character.

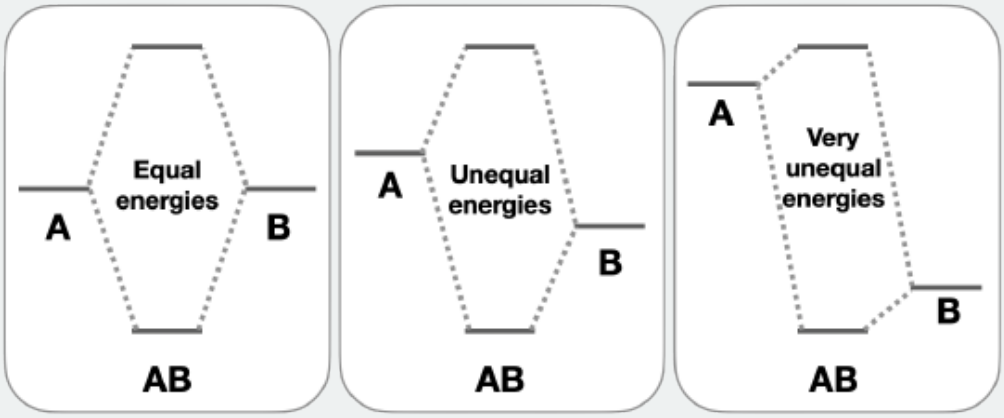


Figure 4.5.2. This figure illustrates how relative energies of atomic orbitals result in molecular orbitals that are more or less favorable. The greater the energy difference between atomic orbitals and the bonding molecular orbital, the more eneretically favorable it is for bonding to occur. (CC-BY-NC-SA, Kathryn Haas)

This page titled 4.5: Nonbonding Orbitals and Other Factors is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.1.4: Nonbonding Orbitals and Other Factors by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.6: Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules

In this section you will be introduced to the molecular orbital diagrams of several homonuclear diatomic molecules. Homonuclear diatomic molecules are molecules made of exactly two identical atoms, and they are relatively simple.

- **5.2.1: Molecular Orbitals**
  There are several cases where our more elementary models of bonding (like Lewis Theory and Valence Bond Theory) fail to predict the actual molecular properties and reactivity. A classic example is the case of O_2 and its magnetic properties. At very cold temperatures, O_2 is attracted to a magnetic field, and thus it must be paramagnetic (unpaired electrons give rise to magnetism, see video). However, both its Lewis structure and Valance Bond Theory predict that O_2 is diamagnetic.
- **5.2.2: Orbital Mixing**
  Orbitals of compatible symmetry can combine, or mix, even when they have different energies. When sets of orbitals mix, it has the effect of decreasing the energy of the lower-energy set and increasing the energy of the higher-energy set.
- **5.2.3: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods**
- **5.2.4: Photoelectron Spectroscopy**

This page titled 4.6: Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.2: Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.7: Molecular Orbitals

There are several cases where our more elementary models of bonding (like Lewis Theory and Valence Bond Theory) fail to predict the actual molecular properties and reactivity. A classic example is the case of O_2 and its magnetic properties. At very cold temperatures, O_2 is attracted to a magnetic field, and thus it must be paramagnetic (unpaired electrons give rise to magnetism). Watch the video below!

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The magnetic properties of O_2 are easily rationalized by its **molecular orbital diagram**. A molecular orbital diagram is a diagram that shows the relative energies and identities of each molecular orbital in a molecule. Figure $4.7.1$ shows a simplified and generic molecular orbital diagram for a second-row homonuclear diatomic molecule. The diagram is simplified in that it assumes that interactions are limited to degenerate orbitals from two atoms (see next section).

There are some things you should note as you inspect Figure $4.7.1$ (and keep these in mind as you draw your own diagrams!). First, notice that there are the **same number of molecular orbitals as there are atomic orbitals**. Second, notice that **each orbital in the diagram is rigorously labeled** using labels (σ and π) that include the subscripts u and g. These labels and subscripts indicate the symmetry of the orbitals. The σ symbol indicates that the orbital is symmetric with respect to the internuclear axis, while the π label indicates that there is one node along that axis. The g and u stand for *gerade* and *ungerade*, the German words for *even* and *uneven*, respectively. The subscript g is given to orbitals that are *even*, or *symmetric*, with respect to an inversion center. The subscript u is given to orbitals that are *uneven*, or *antisymetric*, with respect to an inversion center. The pictures of calculated molecular orbitals are shown in Figure $4.7.1$ to illustrate the symmetry of each orbital.

Another important thing to notice is that the diagram in Figure $4.7.1$ lacks electrons (because it is generic for any second-row diatomic molecule). If this were a *complete* molecular orbital diagram it would **include the electrons for each atom and for the molecule**. Electrons in molecular orbitals are filled in the same way an atomic orbital diagram would be filled, where electrons occupy lower energy orbitals before higher energy orbitals, and electrons occupy empty degenerate orbitals before pairing. A complete molecular orbital diagram would show whether the molecule is diamagnetic or paramagnetic. It can also be used to calculate the bond order of the molecule (the number of bonds between atoms) using the formula below:

$$\text{Bond order } = \frac{1}{2}\left[\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of electrons}\\ \text{in bonding orbitals}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of electrons}\\ \text{in antibonding orbitals}\end{pmatrix}\right]$$

In general, non-valence (core) electrons can be ignored because they contribute nothing to the bond order. In fact, many molecular orbital diagrams will ignore the core orbitals, as they are insignificant for bonding interactions and reactivity.

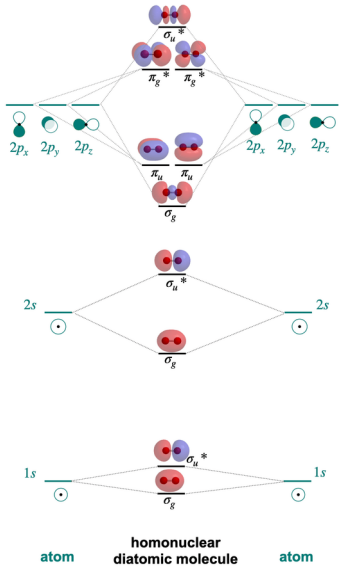


Figure 4.7.1: A generic molecular orbital diagram for a homonuclear diatomic molecule of second-row elements assuming no orbital mixing (interactions are formed by orbitals of the same energy from each atom). (CC-BY-NC-SA, Kathryn Haas)

Now, to see how this molecular orbital diagram can explain the magnetic behaviour of O_2, complete the example below.

Example 4.7.1

Let's change Figure 4.7.1 to make it specific for O_2. Re-draw the MO diagram (no need to draw the shapes of orbitals). Fill in the correct number of electrons for each oxygen atom on either side of the diagram. Then, fill in the total molecular electrons in the center. Calculate the bond order and determine whether it is diamagnetic or paramagnetic.

Solution

The diagram in Figure 4.7.1 includes core orbitals (the 1s) and valence electrons (2s, 2p). Therefore, we will consider all the electrons in an oxygen atom and a dioxygen molecule. An oxygen atom has eight total electrons. So we fill eight electrons into the atomic orbitals for the oxygen atom on the right, and eight electrons into the atomic orbitals for oxygen on the left. The total number of electrons for the molecule is sixteen, so fill in 16 electrons into the molecular orbitals, being sure to apply Hund's rule and the Aufbau principle. The result is a diagram that looks like the one drawn below in Figure 4.7.2.

The bond order is calculated using the molecular orbitals (we can ignore atomic orbitals). There are 10 electrons in binding orbitals and 6 electrons in antibonding orbitals). This gives a bond order of $\frac{1}{2}(10-6)=2$. This bond order is consistent with valence bond theory!

This diagram indicates that dioxygen is paramagnetic; it has two unpaired electrons in the π^* orbitals. This paramagnetic electron configuration explains why dioxygen is attacted to magnetic fields!

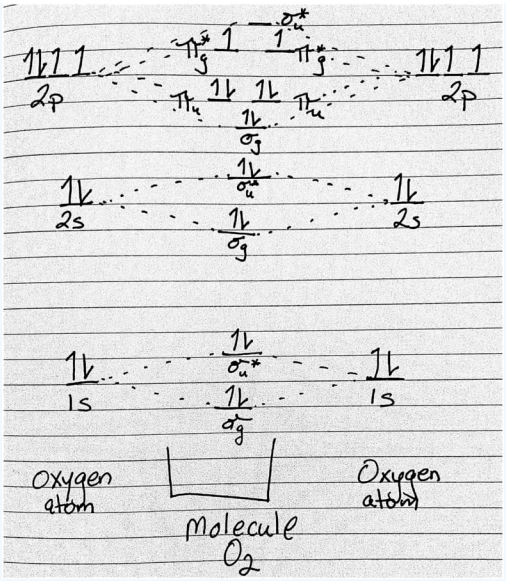


Figure 4.7.2: Hand-drawn molecular orbital diagram for dioxygen. (CC-BY-SA; Kathryn Haas)

Exercise 4.7.1

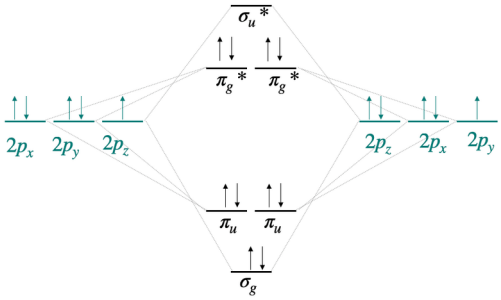
Draw the molecular orbital diagram for F_2; be sure to label your orbitals with the appropriate symmetry and count your orbitals to make sure that the total number of atomic orbitals and molecular orbitals is the same. As a shortcut, include only the valence orbitals and electrons. What is the bond order? Is the molecule diamagnetic or paramagnetic?

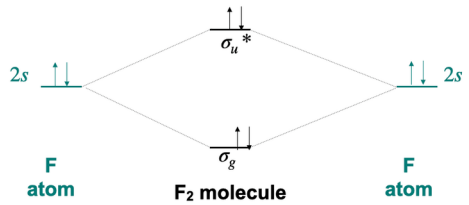
Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 4.7.1

The valence orbitals on an F atom are 2s and 2p. And, there are seven valence electrons in F. This gives fourteen total valence electrons. The MO diagram of the valence molecular orbitals can be constructed by combining the valence 2s and valence 2p orbitals from each F atom. The bond order is 1 and the molecule is diamagnetic.





This page titled 4.7: Molecular Orbitals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.2.1: Molecular Orbitals by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.8: Orbital Mixing

In the previous section, we introduced a simplified molecular orbital (MO) diagram, assuming that interactions were limited to degenerate orbitals of compatible symmetry. A version of that *simplified* diagram for second-row homonuclear diatomics is shown on the left side of Figure $4.8.1$ (only valence orbitals shown).

In reality, orbitals of compatible symmetry can combine, or mix, even when they have different energies. When sets of orbitals mix, it has the effect of decreasing the energy of the lower-energy set and increasing the energy of the higher-energy set. There are two ways to explain mixing, described in the points below. The diagram on the right of side of Figure $4.8.1$ shows how energy levels are affected by orbital mixing.

- **Starting from the simplified MO diagram and mixing molecular orbitals of like symmetry**: If we start with the "no mixing" simplified diagram shown on the left, we can pick out the orbitals with like symmetry and consider what will happen if these molecular orbitals mix. For example, starting from the MO diagram on the left side of Figure $4.8.1$, we see that there are two σ_g orbitals that have identical symmetry (hence they have identical symmetry labels). Upon mixing, the lower-energy $\sigma_g(2s)$ will decrease in energy while the higher-energy $\sigma_g(2p)$ will increase in energy. Likewise, there are two σ_u^* orbitals that will mix, decreasing the energy of $\sigma_u^*(2s)$ while increasing the energy of $\sigma_u^*(2p)$.
- **Starting from and mixing atomic orbitals of compatible symmetry**: Starting from the atomic orbitals, we can select the orbitals that have compatible symmetry to make productive interactions, and combine them as a set to make molecular orbitals. From the two sets of atomic orbitals on the right panel in Figure $4.8.1$, there are two sets of four orbitals with compatable symmetry; one is the set of two $2s$ and two $2p_z$ orbitals. These four orbitals can combine to form molecular orbitals with σ symmetry. They combine to form one lowest-energy bonding σ_g, a highest-energy σ_u^*, and two orbitals with intermediate energy (σ_g, and σ_u^*). This treatment can be expressed as the linear combination of four atomic orbitals:

  $$\Psi = c_1\psi\,(2s_a) \pm c_2\psi\,(2s_b) \pm c_3\psi\,(2p_a) \pm c_4\psi\,(2p_b)$$

  where the coefficients $c_1 = c_2$ and $c_3 = c_4$ for homonuclear diatomic molecules.

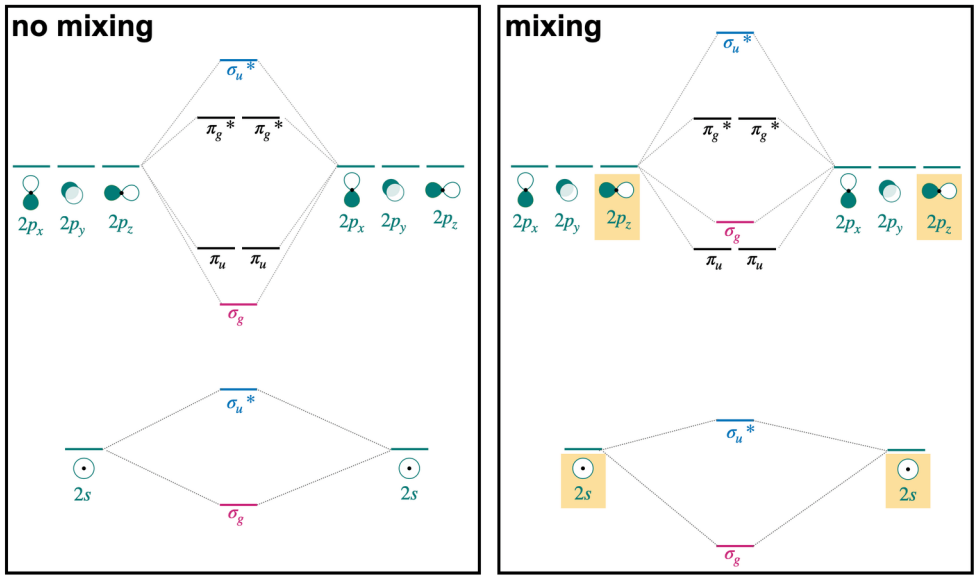


Figure $4.8.1$: Mixing of orbitals with like symmetry affects the energies of molecular orbitals. The simplified case where no mixing occurs is shown on the left. The effects of mixing are shown on the right. The σ_g orbitals of like symmetry are highlighted in fuschia and the σ_u^* orbitals of like symmetry are highlighted in blue. A group of atomic orbitals of similar symmetry are highlighted in yellow boxes; these atomic orbitals combine to give all σ molecular orbitals. (CC-BY-SA, Kathryn Haas)

In the case of homonuclear diatomic molecules of the second row, orbital mixing has important consequences for the energetic order of the $\sigma_g(2p)$ and $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals. This will be discussed in the next section.

This page titled 4.8: Orbital Mixing is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.2.2: Orbital Mixing by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.9: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods

First Period Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules

In the first row of the periodic table, the valence atomic orbitals are $1s$. There are two possible homonuclear diatomic molecules of the first period:

Dihydrogen, H_2 $[\sigma_g^2(1s)]$: This is the simplest diatomic molecule. It has only two molecular orbitals (σ_g and σ_u^*), two electrons, a bond order of 1, and is diamagnetic. Its bond length is 74 pm. MO theory would lead us to expect bond order to decrease and bond length to increase if we either add or subtract one electron. The calculated bond length for the H_2^+ ion is approximately 105 pm.[1]

Dihelium, He_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(1s)]$: This molecule has a bond order of zero due to equal number of electrons in bonding and antibonding orbitals. Like other nobel gases, He exists in the atomic form and does not form bonds at ordinary temperatures and pressures.

Exercise 4.9.1

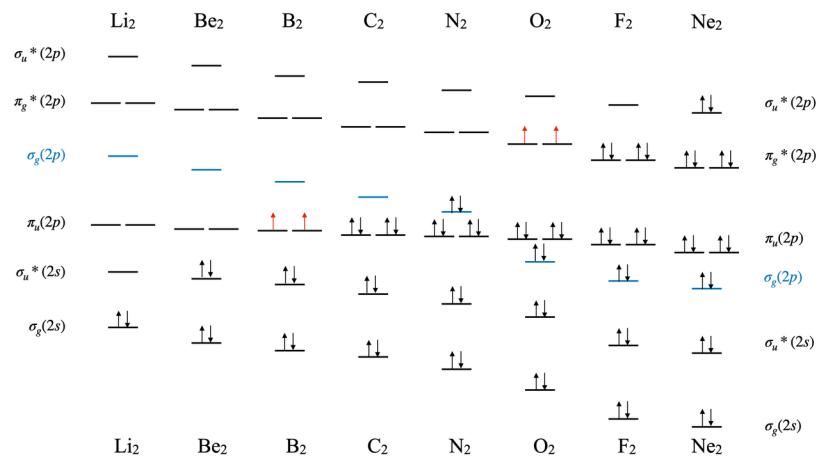
Draw the complete molecular orbital diagrams for H_2 and for He_2. Include sketches of the atomic and molecular orbitals.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Second Period Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules

The second period elements span from Li to Ne. The valence orbitals are 2s and 2p. In their molecular orbital diagrams, non-valence orbitals (1s in this case) are often disregarded in molecular orbital diagrams.

Orbital mixing has significant consequences for the magnetic and spectroscopic properties of second period homonuclear diatomic molecules because it affects the order of filling of the $\sigma_g(2p)$ and $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals. Early in period 2 (up to and including nitrogen), the $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals are lower in energy than the $\sigma_g(2p)$ (see Figure $4.9.1$). However, later in period 2, the $\sigma_g(2p)$ orbitals are pulled to a lower energy. This lowering in energy of $\sigma_g(2p)$ is not unique; all of the σ orbitals in the molecule are pulled to lower energy due to the increasing positive charge of the nucleus. The π orbitals in the molecule are also affected, but to a much lesser extent than σ orbitals. The reason has to do with the high penetration of s atomic orbitals compared to p atomic orbitals (recall our previous discussion on penetration and shielding, and its effect on periodic trends). The σ molecular orbitals have more s character and thus their energy is more influenced by increasing nuclear charge. As nuclear charge increases, the energy of the $\sigma_g(2p)$ orbital is lowered significantly more than the energy of the $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals (Figure $4.9.1$).



	Li_2	Be_2	B_2	C_2	N_2	O_2	F_2	Ne_2
Unpaired e^-	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0
Bond Order	1	0	1	2	3	2	1	0
Experimental* Bond Length (pm)	267.3	246.0	159.0	124.3	109.8	120.8	141.2	310.0

*Experimental bond lengths from "List of Experimental Diatomic Bond Lengths", NIST, https://cccbdb.nist.gov/diatomicexpbondx.asp

Figure 4.9.1: Molecular orbital energy-level diagrams for the diatomic molecules of the period 2 elements. Unlike earlier diagrams, *only the valence molecular orbital energy levels for the **molecules** are shown here (atomic orbitals not shown for simplicity).* For Li_2 through N_2, the $\sigma_g(2p)$ orbital is higher in energy than the $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals. In contrast, from O_2 onward, the $\sigma_g(2p)$ orbital is *lower* in energy than the $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals because the nuclear charge increases across the row. The experimental bond lengths correlate with the calculated bond order. (CC-BY-NC-SA, Kathryn Haas)

Dilithium, Li_2 $[\sigma_g^2(2s)]$**:** This molecule has a bond order of one and is observed experimentally in the gas phase to have one Li-Li bond.

Diberylium, Be_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(2s)]$**:** This molecule has a bond order of zero due to the equal number of electrons in bonding and antibonding orbitals. Although Be_2 does not exist under ordinary conditions, it can be produced in a laboratory and its bond length measured (Figure 4.9.2). Although the bond is very weak, its bond length is surprisingly ordinary for a covalent bond of the second period elements.[2]

Diboron, B_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(2s)\pi_u^1\pi_u^1(2p)]$**:** The case of diboron is one that is much better described by molecular orbital theory than by Lewis structures or valence bond theory. This molecule has a bond order of one. The molecular orbital description of diboron also predicts, accurately, that diboron is paramagnetic. The paramagnetism is a consequence of orbital mixing, resulting in the σ_g orbital's being at a higher energy than the two degenerate π_u^* orbitals.

Dicarbon, C_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(2s)\pi_u^2\pi_u^2(2p)]$**:** This molecule has a bond order of two. Molecular orbital theory predicts two bonds with π symmetry, and no σ bonding. C_2 is rare in nature because its allotrope, diamond, is much more stable.

Dinitrogen, N_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(2s)\pi_u^2\pi_u^2\sigma_g^2(2p)]$**:** This molecule is predicted to have a triple bond. This prediction is consistent with its short bond length and bond dissociation energy. The energies of the $\sigma_g(2p)$ and $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals are very close, and their relative energy levels have been a subject of some debate (see next section for discussion).

Dioxygen, O_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(2s)\sigma_g^2\pi_u^2\pi_u^2\pi_g^{*1}\pi_g^{*1}(2p)]$**:** This is another case where valence bond theory fails to predict actual properties. Molecular orbital theory correctly predicts that dioxygen is paramagnetic, with a bond order of two. Here, the molecular orbital diagram returns to its "normal" order of orbitals where orbital mixing could be somewhat ignored, and where $\sigma_g(2p)$ is lower in energy than $\pi_u(2p)$.

Difluorine, F_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(2s)\sigma_g^2\pi_u^2\pi_u^2\pi_g^{*2}\pi_g^{*2}(2p)]$**:** This molecule has a bond order of one and like oxygen, the $\sigma_g(2p)$ is lower in energy than $\pi_u(2p)$.

Dineon, Ne_2 $[\sigma_g^2\sigma_u^{*2}(2s)\sigma_g^2\pi_u^2\pi_u^2\pi_g^{*2}\pi_g^{*2}\sigma_u^{*2}(2p)]$**:** Like other noble gases, Ne exists in the atomic form and does not form bonds at ordinary temperatures and pressures. Like Be_2, Ne_2 is an unstable species that has been created in extreme laboratory conditions and its bond length has been measured (Figure 4.9.2)

Exercise 4.9.2

Draw the complete molecular orbital diagram for O_2. Show calculation of its bond order and tell whether it is diamagnetic or paramagnetic.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.9.3: The Peroxide Ion

Use a qualitative molecular orbital energy-level diagram to predict the electron configuration, the bond order, and the number of unpaired electrons in the peroxide ion (O_2^{2-}).

Answer available at the end of this section.

Bond Lengths in Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules

The trends in experimental bond lengths are predicted by molecular orbital theory, specifically by the calculated bond order. The values of bond order and experimental bond lengths for the second period diatomic molecules are given in Figure 4.9.1, and shown in graphical format on the plot in Figure 4.9.2. From the plot, we can see that bond length correlates well with bond order, with a minimum bond length occurring where the bond order is greatest (N_2). The shortest bond distance is at N_2 due to its high bond order of 3. From N_2 to F_2 the bond distance increases despite the fact that atomic radius decreases.

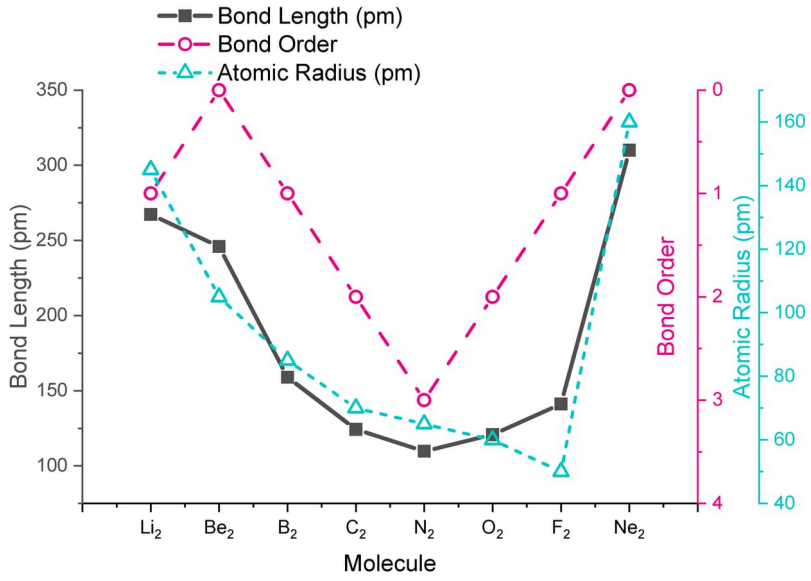


Figure 4.9.2: Overlayed plots of bond length (black squares), bond order (pink circles), and atomic radius (teal triangles) versus atomic number for second period homonuclear diatomic molecules. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn Haas)

References

1. NIST, Calculated Geometries available for H_2^+ (Hydrogen cation) 2Σg+ D∞h, available at https://cccbdb.nist.gov/diatomicexpbondx.asp
2. Merritt, J. M.; Bondybey, V. E.; Heaven, M. C., Beryllium Dimer-Caught in the Act of Bonding. *Science* **2009,** *324* (5934), 1548-1551.

Answers

Exercise 4.9.1

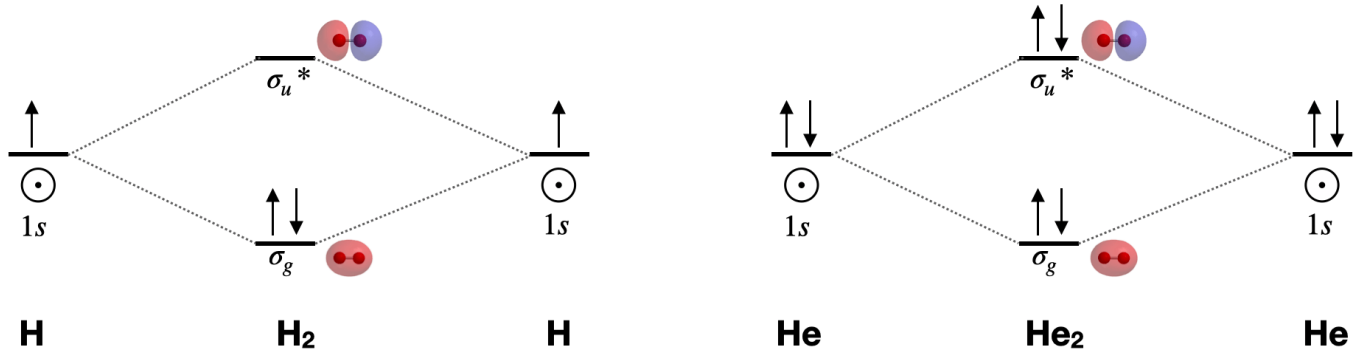


Figure for Exercise 4.9.1: Molecular orbital diagrams for dihydrogen and dihelium. Molecular orbital surfaces calculated using Spartan software. (CC-BY-NC-SA; Kathryn Haas)

A complete molecular orbital diagram includes all atomic orbitals and molecular orbitals, their symmetry labels, and electron filling.

Exercise 4.9.2

O_2 is paramagnetic with a bond order of 2. Its $\sigma_g(2p)$ molecular orbital is lower in energy that the set of $\pi_u(2p)$ orbitals.

$$\text{Bond order } = \frac{1}{2}\left[\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{8 electrons in}\\ \text{valence bonding orbitals}\end{array}\right) - \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{4 electrons in}\\ \text{valence antibonding orbitals}\end{array}\right)\right]$$

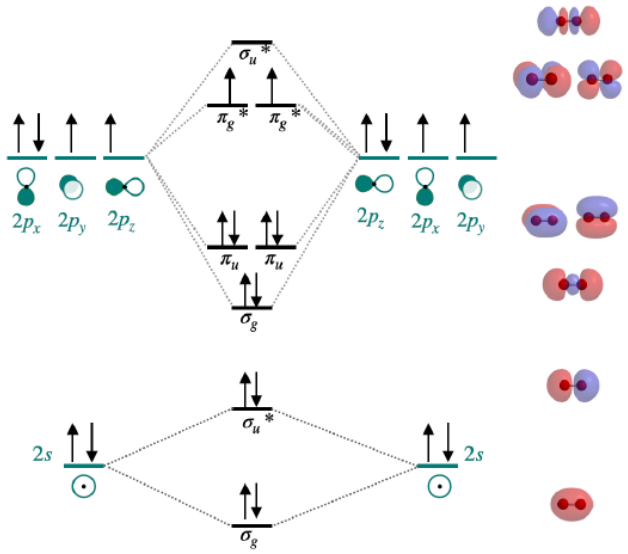


Figure for Exercise 4.9.2. Molecular orbital diagram of O_2. (CC-BY-NC-SA, Kathryn Haas)

Exercise 4.9.3**: The Peroxide Ion**

This diagram looks similar to that of O_2, except that there are two additional electrons.
$(\sigma_g(2s))^2 (\sigma_u^*(2s))^2 (\sigma_g(2p))^2 (\pi_u(2p))^4 (\pi_g(2p))^4$; bond order of 1; no unpaired electrons.

This page titled 4.9: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.2.3: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.
- 5.P: Problems is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.10: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules

Diatomic molecules with two non-identical atoms are called **heteronuclear** diatomic molecules. When atoms are not identical, the molecule forms by combining atomic orbitals of unequal energies. *The result is a polar bond in which atomic orbitals contribute unevenly to each molecular orbital.*

The application of molecular orbital theory to heteronuclear diatomic molecules is similar to the case of homonuclear diatomics, except that the atomic orbitals from each atom have different energies and contribute unequally to molecular orbitals. Recall that atomic orbitals must have compatible symmetry and similar energy to combine into molecular orbitals. In the case where atomic orbitals of like symmetry have different energies, they combine less favorably than orbitals that are closer to one another in energy. As a general rule, orbitals that have energy differences of greater than 10-14 eV do not combine favorably. In the molecular orbital diagram, the closer a molecular orbital is to an atomic orbital, the more that atomic orbital contributes to the molecular orbital. This last point is helpful for back-of-the napkin estimations of what the molecular orbitals "look" like.

In this section, you should learn how to generate molecular orbital diagrams of heteronuclear diatomic molecules. To approach such a problem, we must start with a knowledge of the relative energies of electrons in different atomic orbitals. In other words, we need knowledge of the orbital potential energies (or orbital ionization energies).

- **5.3.1: Orbital ionization energies**
- **5.3.2: Polar bonds**

  The molecular orbital diagram of a heteronuclear diatomic molecule is approached in a similar way to that of homonuclear diatomic molecule. The orbital diagrams may also look similar. A major difference is that the more electronegative atom will have orbitals at a lower energy level. Two examples of heteronuclear diatomic molecules will be explored below as illustrative examples.
- **5.3.3: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals**

Sources:

- Gray, Harry. *Electrons and Chemical Bonding*, Benjamin, 1964.
- Miessler, Gary L, and Donald A. Tarr. *Inorganic Chemistry*. Upper Saddle River, N.J: Pearson Education, 2014. Print.

This page titled 4.10: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.3: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.11: Orbital ionization energies

To generate molecular orbital diagrams of heteronuclear diatomic molecules, we must start with a knowledge of the relative energies of electrons in different atomic orbitals. In other words, we need knowledge of the orbital potential energies (or orbital ionization energies).

Orbital Ionization Energies

There are two approaches you can use to "know" or estimate the atomic orbital energy levels.

1. Use a table of atomic orbital ionization energies, like those found in Table 4.11.1.
2. When you do not have access to a table of values like the one below, use periodic trends in electronegativity and/or ionization energies as your guide to approximate relative values for different atoms.

Table 4.11.1: These are one-electron ionization energies of the valence orbitals calculated by average energies of both the ground-state and ionized-state configurations. (From Harry Gray, “Electrons and Chemical Bonding,” Benjamin, 1964, Appendix) Values are expressed in eV.



This page titled 4.11: Orbital ionization energies is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.3: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.12: Polar bonds

Molecular orbital diagrams for heteronuclear diatomic molecules

The molecular orbital diagram of a heteronuclear diatomic molecule is approached in a way similar to that of a homonuclear diatomic molecule. The orbital diagrams may also look similar. A major difference is that the more electronegative atom will have orbitals at a lower energy level. Two examples of heteronuclear diatomic molecules will be explored below as illustrative examples.

Carbon monoxide MO diagram

Carbon monoxide is an example of a heteronuclear diatomic molecule where both atoms are second-row elements. The valence molecular orbitals in both atoms are the $2s$ and $2p$ orbitals. The molecular orbital diagram for carbon monoxide (Figure $4.12.1$) is constructed in a way similar to how you would construct dicarbon or dioxygen, except that the oxygen orbitals have a lower potential energy than analogous carbon orbitals. The labeling of molecular orbitals in this diagram follows a convention by which orbitals are given serial labels according to type of orbital (σ, π, etc.). The lowest energy orbitals of any type are assigned a value of 1 and higher energy orbitals of the same type are assigned by increasing intervals (..2, 3, 4...). The orbital labeling system described previously is inappropriate for heteronuclear diatomic molecules that cannot be assigned g and u subscripts.

A consequence of unequal atomic orbital energy levels is that orbital mixing is significant. Notice the order of the molecular orbitals labeled 1π and 3σ in Figure $4.12.1$. This is a similar order of π and σ orbitals to the one we saw in the case of the σ_g and π_u orbitals of N_2 and lighter diatomics of the second period. Because the oxygen $2p_z$ orbital is close in energy to both the carbon $2p_z$ and carbon $2s$, these three orbitals will have significant interaction (mixing). The result is an increase in the energy of the 3σ orbital and a decrease in energy of the $2\sigma^*$ orbital, resulting in the diagram shown in Figure $4.12.1$.

In the case of carbon monoxide (Figure $4.12.1$), atomic orbitals contribute unequally to each molecular orbital. For example, because the $2s$ orbital of oxygen is very close in energy to the 2σ moelcular orbital, it contributes to that molecular orbital more than the $2s$ orbital from carbon. Notice the shape of this 2σ orbital and how it is unevenly distributed over the two atoms; it is more heavily distributed on the oxygen because it is most like the oxygen $2s$. This is in line with the assumption that electron density is distributed more on oxygen because it is more electronegative than carbon. Likewise, the 1π orbitals are unevenly distributed, with more distribution close to the oxygen.

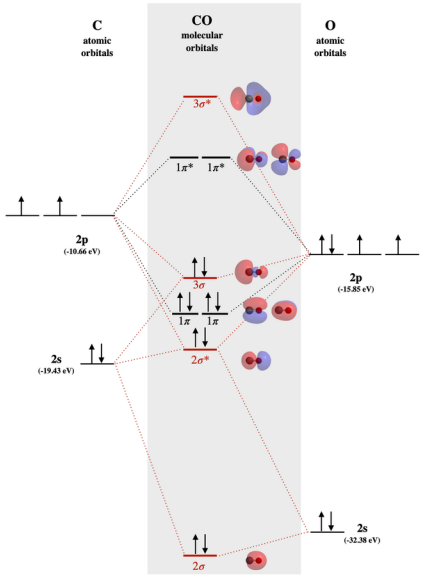
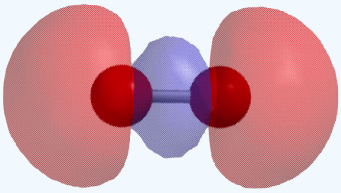


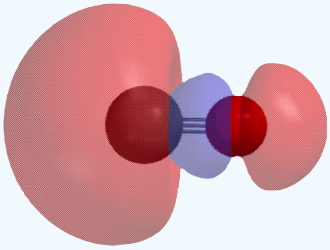
Figure $4.12.1$: Molecular orbital diagram of carbon monoxide. The labeling of molecular orbitals in this diagram follows a convention by which orbitals are given serial names according to the type of orbital (σ, π, etc.). The lowest energy orbitals of any type are assigned a value of 1 and higher energy orbitals of the same type are assigned by increasing intervals (..2, 3, 4...). The orbital labeling system described previously is inappropriate for heteronuclear diatomic molecules that cannot be assigned g and u subscripts. Molecular orbital surfaces were calculated using Spartan software. (Kathryn Haas, CC-BY-NC-SA)

Exercise 4.12.1

Examine the shape of the 3σ orbital of carbon monoxide in Figure $4.12.1$. Describe what ways this shape is different from the shape of the σ_g orbitals from second period homonuclear diatomic molecules (see Fig. 5.2.1.1). Rationalize these differences. Both orbitals are re-created below for convenience.



σ_g of homonuclear diatomic



3σ of CO

Answer available at the end of this section.

Hydrogen fluoride MO diagram

Hydrogen fluoride is an example of a heteronuclear diatomic molecule in which the two atoms are from different periods. In this case, the valence orbital of H is $1s$ while those of F are $2s$ and $2p$. The molecular orbital diagram for HF is shown in Figure $4.12.2$.

Three of these orbitals have compatible symmetry for mixing; these are the hydrogen $1s$, fluorine $2s$, and fluorine $2p$. However, the extent to which they will interact depends on their relative energies. Fluorine is more electronegative than H, and the fluorine atom has a higher first ionization energy than does hydrogen. From these trends, we can expect that the fluorine valence orbitals are lower in energy than that of hydrogen. From Table 5.3.1, we find that the 1s orbital of H (-13.6 eV) is higher in energy than both fluorine orbitals (-18.7 and -40.2 eV, respectively for $2p$ and $2s$). The energies of hydrogen $1s$ and fluorine $2p$ are a good match for combination; however, the fluorine $2s$ orbital is much too different to create a productive interaction. Therefore, we expect that the fluorine $2s$ will create a non-bonding molecular orbital, while the $1s$ and $2p_z$ orbitals combine to make σ bonding and σ^* antibonding molecular orbitals. The remaining $2p_x$ and $2p_y$ orbitals do not have compatible symmetry for bonding with hydrogen, and they will form non-bonding π molecular orbitals. The non-bonding orbitals will have similar energy and character as their component atomic orbitals.

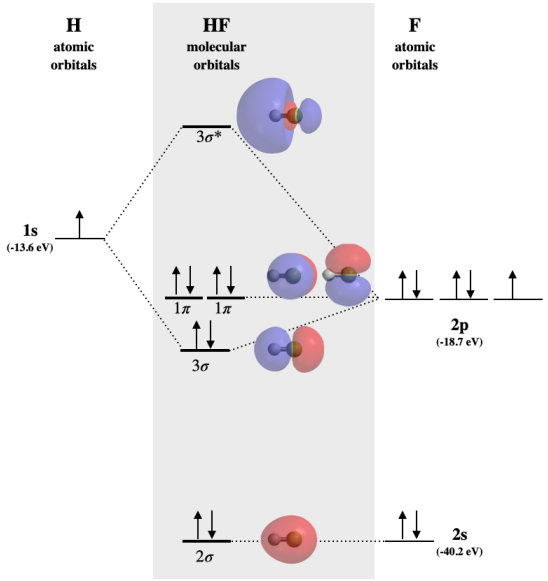


Figure 4.12.2: Molecular Orbital diagram of hydrogen fluoride. Molecular orbitals calculated using Spartan software. (Kathryn Haas, CC-BY-NC-SA)

Chemical reactions take place at the HOMO and LUMO orbitals

Knowledge of molecular orbital diagrams, and the shapes of molecular orbitals, can be used to accurately explain and predict chemical reactivity. Chemical reactions take place using the highest occupied molecular orbitals (HOMO) of a nucleophile or Lewis base, and the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO) of an electrophile or Lewis acid.

> Lewis bases react using electrons in the HOMO, while Lewis acids react using the empty LUMO.

Example: Reactivity of CO with metal ions

CO is an excellent ligand for many metal ions. In fact, the strong affinity between CO and the heme iron (Fe) ions in hemoglobin can explain the mechanism of carbon monoxide poisoning. When CO binds in place of O_2 to hemoglobin, that hemoglobin can no longer carry O_2 to tissue cells. CO binding to hemoglobin is strong and practically irreversible. When CO binds to metal ions, it does so through the carbon atom. This is contrary to expectations based on the Lewis structure and the known bond polarity, where electron density is polarized toward oxygen. The distribution of the electron density of the HOMO of CO can explain this observation!

Exercise 4.12.2

Refer to the MO diagram for CO. Identify the HOMO and explain why CO bonds to metal ions through the carbon atom rather than through the oxygen atom.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 4.12.1

The 3σ orbital is like the σ_g in that it has three lobes and two nodes distributed along the internuclear bond. They are different in their distribution. The two external lobes of σ_g are evenly distributed because they are an equal combination of two p_z orbitals (one from each atom). The 3σ orbital is more heavily distributed toward the carbon atom, the less electronegative atom, than toward the oxygen. The unequal distribution of 3σ is apparent in the unequal sizes of its exterior lobes and the uneven shape of the interior lobe. The heavier distribution within the exterior lobe on carbon is caused by the mixing of the carbon $2s$ orbital with carbon and oxygen $2p_z$ orbitals. The uneven shape of the interior lobe, where it leans toward oxygen, is best explained by the fact that the 3σ orbital is closer in energy to the oxygen $2p_z$ than the carbon $2p_z$.

Exercise 4.12.2

In the interaction between CO and a metal ion, CO would act as a Lewis base; thus it will react using electrons in its HOMO. The MO diagram for CO is shown in

Figure $4.12.1$: the HOMO is the 3σ orbital (also discussed in Exercise $4.12.1$). The electron density of that MO is centered around the carbon atom, thus the carbon atom will be a better Lewis base than the O atom.

This page titled 4.12: Polar bonds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.3.2: Polar bonds by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

4.13: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals

Ionic interactions lie at one extreme on a spectrum of bonding. On the opposite end of the spectrum are the non-polar covalent bonds (e.g., homonuclear diatomics). In these molecules, molecular orbitals are formed by equal-energy atomic orbitals, resulting in electron density evenly distributed over the molecule. In the middle of the spectrum are the cases of polar covalent bonds (e.g., heteronuclear diatomics), in which atomic orbitals of unequal energies contribute unequally to molecular orbitals, resulting in uneven distribution of electron density across the molecule. In the case of polar bonds, the electron density is shifted toward the more electronegative atom since that atom contributes more to the lowest energy bonding molecular orbitals. Molecular orbital diagrams can be drawn for ionic compounds as if they are extremely polar bonds in which electrons are not only shifted toward, but are transferred completely to the more electronegative atom.

Example: NaCl

In NaCl, the sodium $3s$ orbital (-5.2 eV) is significantly higher in energy than the chlorine valence orbitals. The chlorine $3s$ and $3p_z$ orbitals have compatible symmetry, yet only the $3p_z$ orbital (-13.8 eV) is close enough in energy to interact with the Na $3s$; still, the energy difference is large enough to make bonding weak. The Na $3s$ orbital combines with Cl $3p_z$ to form the molecular orbitals labeled 4σ and $4\sigma^*$ in Figure $4.13.1$. The 4σ orbital is weakly bonding, but is very close in energy to the Cl $3p_z$ orbital, and is mostly Cl-like in character. Notice that all σ orbitals look very much like either s or p orbitals centered on the Cl atom, while the $4\sigma^*$ orbital is centered almost entirely on Na. The lack of molecular orbitals that are distributed over both atoms at once is consistent with a lack of significant covalent bond character in NaCl. The bonding here is characterized by transfer of one electron from Na to Cl and is almost entirely electrostatic. Bonding that is mostly electrostatic in character is non-directional, unlike true covalent bonding.

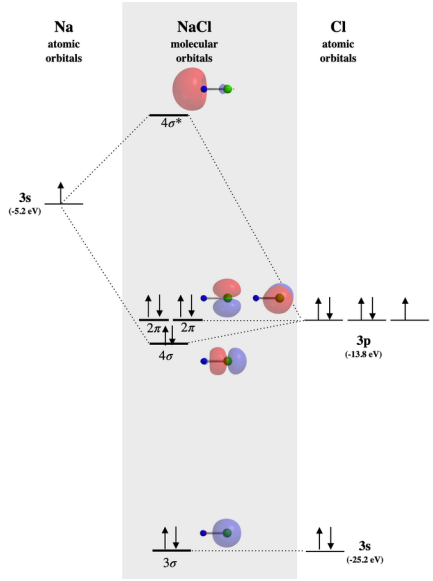


Figure $4.13.1$: The molecular orbital diagram for sodium chloride. Molecular orbital surfaces calculated using Spartan software indicate almost no covalent nature of bonding. (CC-BY-NC-SA, Kathryn Haas)

Exercise $4.13.1$

Draw the molecular orbital diagram for LiF. Make sure to label all molecular orbitals appropriately, and specify whether they are mostly bonding, non-bonding, or antibonding. Identify the HOMO and LUMO. Sketch the approximate shapes of all orbitals.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 4.13.1

We expect LiF to be an ionic compound because the energy difference in valence orbitals is at least 10-14 eV. (See Table 5.3.1) There are a variety of ways used to label molecular orbitals. In the figure below, we are using the convention of labeling each type of orbital with numbers starting from the lowest-energy orbitals. The 1σ orbital would be mostly F $1s$ in character and is not shown. The 2σ orbital is mostly non-bonding in nature, although it has a very small contribution from $2s$ of Li due to compatible symmetry. The 3σ orbital is slightly bonding but it is mostly F$2p$ in character. The two 1π orbitals are completely non-bonding. The $3\sigma^*$ orbital is antibonding.

- HOMO is 1π
- LUMO is $3\sigma^*$

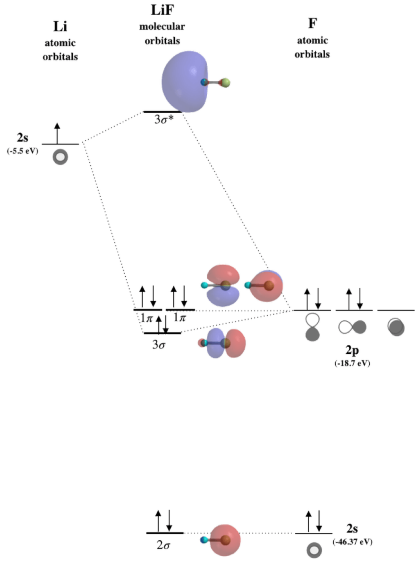


Figure for Exercise 4.13.1: Molecular orbital diagram for the ionic compund, LiF. (CC-BY-NC-SA, Kathryn Haas)

This page titled 4.13: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 5.3.3: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals by Kathryn Haas is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

5: ACID-BASE AND DONOR-ACCEPTOR CHEMISTRY

5.1: Acid-Base Models as Organizing Concepts

5.2: Arrhenius Concept

5.3: Brønsted-Lowry Concept

5.4: Rules of Thumb for thinking about the relationship between Molecular Structure and Brønsted Acidity and Basicity*

5.5: The acid-base behavior of binary element hydrides is determined primarily by the element's electronegativity and secondarily by the element-hydrogen bond strength.*

5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom*

5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals

5.8: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital.

5.9: All other things being equal, electron withdrawing groups tend to make Lewis acids stronger and bases weaker while electron donating groups tend to make Lewis bases stronger and acids weaker

5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct.

5.11: Hard and Soft Acids and Bases

5.12: Hard-Hard and Soft-Soft preferences may be explained and quantified in terms of electrostatic and covalent and electronic stabilization on the stability of Lewis acid-base adducts

5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors

This page titled 5: Acid-Base and Donor-Acceptor Chemistry is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

5.1: Acid-Base Models as Organizing Concepts

> In a very real sense, we can make an acid anything we wish. The differences between the various acid-base concepts are not concerned with which is 'right', but which is *most convenient to use in a particular situation*.
>
> James E. Huheey, Ellen A. Keiter, and Richard L. Keiter

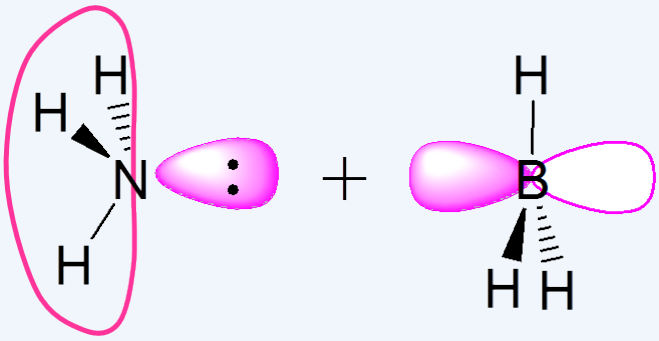
The concept of acids and bases is often associated with the movement of hydrogen ions from one molecule or ion to another. However, a host of acid-base concepts have been developed to help chemists organize and make sense of a wide range of reactions (Table 6.1).

Table 6.1. Summary of major acid-base models.

Definition	Theoretical paradigm and notable features.	Acid	Base	Illustrative sam
Arrhenius (1894)	Interested in what the substance does to the state of an aqueous solution. In particular it assesses proton donation to & removal from water using $[H_3O^+]$ as a proxy. Readily accommodates the pH concept as a measure of the state of a solution.	Increases $[H_3O^+]$	Decreases $[H_3O^+]$	$\underset{acid}{HCl} + H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+ + Cl^-$ $\underset{base}{NH_3} + H_2O \rightarrow NH_4^+ + OH^-$
Brønsted-Lowry (1923)	Envisions acid-base reactivity in terms of the transfer of an H^+ from one substance to another. Allows for conjugate acids and bases and solvent autoionization.	Donates H^+	Accepts H^+	$\underset{acid}{HCl} + \underset{base}{NH_3} \rightarrow \underset{conj.\ acid}{NH_4^+} + \underset{conj.\ base}{Cl^-}$ $\underset{acid}{HOAc} + \underset{base}{NH_3} \rightarrow \underset{conj.\ acid}{NH_4^+} + \underset{conj.\ base}{OAc^-}$ $\underset{amphoteric}{2\ H_2O} \rightarrow \underset{conj.\ acid}{H_3O^+} + \underset{conj.\ base}{OH^-}$

Definition	Theoretical paradigm and notable features.	Acid	Base	Illustrative sam
Lux-Flood (1939-~47)	Describes reactions involving oxides and oxyanions in terms of the transfer of oxide ion (O^{2-}). Mainly used in geochemistry, although it also can be used to describe some redox reactions.	Oxide acceptor	Oxide donor	$\underset{acid}{SiO_2} + \underset{base}{CaO} \rightarrow CaSiO_3$ $\underset{base}{H_2O} + \underset{acid}{CO} \rightarrow H_2 + CO_2$
Solvent System	Applies aspects of the Arrhenius , Brønsted-Lowry, and Lux-Flood acid base concepts to solvent cation & anion formation in a generalized reaction. Can be used to describe solution chemistry in nonaqueous solvent systems like BrF_3.	Is a solvent cation or increases the solvent cation concentration, often by receiving a lone pair-bearing group	Is a solvent anion or increases the solvent anion concentration, often by donating a lone pair-bearing group	$\underset{acid}{SbF_5} + \underset{base}{BrF_3} \rightarrow \underset{conj.\ base}{SbF_6^-} + \underset{conj.\ acid}{BrF_2^+}$ $\underset{amphoteric}{2\ BrF_3} \rightarrow \underset{conj.\ acid}{BrF_2^+} + \underset{conj.\ base}{BrF_4^-}$

Definition	Theoretical paradigm and notable features.	Acid	Base	Illustrative sam
Lewis (1923)	Envisions acid-base reactivity in terms of electron pair donation. Encompasses the Arrhenius , Brønsted-Lowry, Lux-Flood, and Solvent System definitions and readily integrates with molecular orbital descriptions of chemical reactivity in Frontier orbital theory.	Accepts an electron pair	Donates an electron pair	$: \underset{base}{NH_3} + \underset{acid}{BF_3} \rightarrow H_3N + BF_3$
Nucleophile-Electrophile	Applies the Lewis concept to organic reactivity. Nucleophiles are Lewis bases which tend to react to form a bond with Lewis acid sites called electrophilic centers.	(The electrophile) Tends to react by receiving an electron pair from a nucleophile, forming a bond in the process	(The nucleophile) Donates an electron pair to form a bond to an electrophile	$\underset{base}{Br^-} + \underset{acid}{CH_3-Cl} \rightarrow Br-CH_3 + Cl^-$
Usanovich (1939)	Extends Lewis theory to include the donation and acceptance of any number of electrons, whether through the formation of an adduct or electron transfer.	Accepts electrons	Donates electrons	$: \underset{base}{NH_3} + \underset{acid}{BH_3} \rightarrow \underset{adduct}{H_3N-BH_3}$ $\underset{acid}{Fe^{2+}} + \underset{base}{Zn^0} \rightarrow Fe^0 + Zn^{2+}$

Definition	Theoretical paradigm and notable features.	Acid	Base	Illustrative sam
Frontier Orbital (1960s)	Envisions Lewis Acid-base/ Electrophile-nucleophile reactions in terms of the donation and acceptance of electrons between the reactant's frontier orbitals. Specifically, the reaction is envisioned in terms of donation of the base's HOMO electrons into the acid's LUMO level.	Possesses a LUMO capable of forming an occupied bonding MO on mixing with a base's HOMO.	Possesses an electron-bearing HOMO capable of forming a filled bonding MO on mixing with an acid's LUMO.	 base acid adduct

Some concepts involve defining acids and bases in particular ways that allow for the understanding of particular types of chemical systems. For example, the familiar Arrhenius and Brønsted acid and base concepts used in general chemistry help chemists make sense of the behavior of compounds which can transfer H^+ ions among themselves, often in aqueous solution. However, the solvent system acid-base concept defines acids and bases in terms of the transfer of a lone-pair bearing group and is particularly useful for conceptualizing the reactivity of main group halides, oxides, and related compounds. Some acid-base definitions seek to encompass an extremely wide range of chemical reactions. For instance, the Lewis acid-base definition encompasses the Arrhenius , Brønsted, and solvent system definitions and has also found wide use in inorganic chemistry owing to the ease with which Lewis acid-base interactions may be described by the Frontier Orbital approach in terms of interacting molecular orbitals on the acid and base.

References

Huheey, J. E.; Keiter, E. A.; Keiter, R. L., *Inorganic Chemistry: Principles of Structure and Reactivity. 4th ed.*; HarperCollins: New York, NY, 1993, pg. 318.

This page titled 5.1: Acid-Base Models as Organizing Concepts is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.1: Acid-Base Models as Organizing Concepts by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.2: Arrhenius Concept

The Arrhenius acid-base concept defines acids and bases in terms of how they affect the amount of hydronium ions, $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$, (and by extension hydroxide ions, $\mathrm{OH^-}$) in aqueous solutions. Simply, in the Arrhenius definition an acid is a substance that increases the concentration of hydronium ions when it is dissolved in water. This typically occurs when the acid dissociates by loss of a proton to water according to the general equation:

$$\mathrm{HA\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+\,(aq) + A^-\,(aq)} \tag{5.2.1}$$

where A is the deprotonated form of the acid. For example, what hydrochloric and acetic acid, $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}$, have in common is that both increase the amount of hydronium ion when they are dissociated in solution.

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)}$$

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+\,(aq) + CH_3CO_2{}^-\,(aq)}$$

In terms of the Arrhenius definition, the major difference between hydrochloric and acetic acid is that hydrochloric acid dissociates completely in solution to yield stoichiometric amounts of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$, while acetic acid only partially dissociates. Acids like HCl that completely dissociate in water are classified as strong in the Arrhenius definition, while those like acetic acid that do not are classified as weak.

Although all weak acids incompletely dissociate, the extent of dissociation can vary widely. The relative strengths of weak Arrhenius acids is conveniently expressed in terms of the equilibrium constant for their acid dissociation reaction, K_a.

$$K_a = \frac{[\mathrm{H^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]}$$

The pK_a values for selected weak acids are given in Table $5.2.1$.

Table $5.2.1$: Values of K_a, pK_a, K_b, and pK_b for selected monoprotic acids.

Acid	HA	K_a	pK_a	A^-	K_b	pK_b
sulfuric acid (2nd ionization)	HSO_4^-	1.0×10^{-2}	1.99	SO_4^{2-}	9.8×10^{-13}	12.01
hydrofluoric acid	HF	6.3×10^{-4}	3.20	F^-	1.6×10^{-11}	10.80
nitrous acid	HNO_2	5.6×10^{-4}	3.25	NO_2^-	1.8×10^{-11}	10.75
formic acid	HCO_2H	1.78×10^{-4}	3.750	HCO_2^-	5.6×10^{-11}	10.25
benzoic acid	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	6.3×10^{-5}	4.20	$C_6H_5CO_2^-$	1.6×10^{-10}	9.80
acetic acid	CH_3CO_2H	1.7×10^{-5}	4.76	$CH_3CO_2^-$	5.8×10^{-10}	9.24
pyridinium ion	$C_5H_5NH^+$	5.9×10^{-6}	5.23	C_5H_5N	1.7×10^{-9}	8.77
hypochlorous acid	$HOCl$	4.0×10^{-8}	7.40	OCl^-	2.5×10^{-7}	6.60
hydrocyanic acid	HCN	6.2×10^{-10}	9.21	CN^-	1.6×10^{-5}	4.79
ammonium ion	NH_4^+	5.6×10^{-10}	9.25	NH_3	1.8×10^{-5}	4.75
water	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00	OH^-	1.00	0.00
acetylene	C_2H_2	1×10^{-26}	26.0	HC_2^-	1×10^{12}	–12.0
ammonia	NH_3	1×10^{-35}	35.0	NH_2^-	1×10^{21}	–21.0
***The number in parentheses indicates the ionization step referred to for a polyprotic acid.**						

As can be seen from the table the K_a values for weak acids are less than one (otherwise they would not be weak) and vary over many orders of magnitude. Consequently it is customary to tabulate acid ionization constants as pK_a values:

$$pK_a = -\log K_a$$

Because pK_a values essentially place the K_a values on a negative base ten logarithmic scale, the stronger the weak acid, the lower its pK_a. Weak acids with larger K_a values will have lower pK_a values than weaker acids with smaller K_a. Moreover, each unit increase or decrease in the pK_a corresponds to a tenfold increase or decrease in the corresponding K_a.

While Arrhenius acids increase the concentration of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ in aqueous solution, Arrhenius bases decrease $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$. Strong bases do this stoichiometrically. Most are hydroxide salts of alkali metals or quaternary ammonium salts that dissociate completely when dissolved in water:

$$\mathrm{MOH\,(aq) \longrightarrow M^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

This added hydroxide decreases the concentration of H_3O^+ by shifting the water autoionization equilibrium towards water.

$$\mathrm{2\,H_2O\,(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

In contrast, most weak bases react with water to produce an equilibrium concentration of hydroxide ion according to the base dissociation reaction

$$\mathrm{B\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \rightleftharpoons BH^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

in which B is the weak base. The ionization constant for this reaction, called the **base ionization constant** or K_b, is typically used as a measure of a weak base's strength.

Because both hydroxide and hydronium ion are products of water autoionization, the concentrations of hydronium ion and hydroxide ion in aqueous solution will vary reciprocally with one another. This means that Arrhenius acids can be recognized as substances that decrease the hydroxide concentration and Arrhenius bases as substances that increase it.

Since the Arrhenius acid-base concept is concerned about the state of the water autoionization reaction, Arrhenius acids and bases may also be recognized by their effect on the solution pH. Arrhenius acids decrease the pH and Arrhenius bases will increase it.

NOTE

To qualify as an Arrhenius acid, upon the introduction to water, the chemical must cause, either directly or otherwise:

- an increase in the aqueous hydronium concentration,
- a decrease in the aqueous hydroxide concentration, or
- a decrease in the solution pH.

Conversely, to qualify as an Arrhenius base, upon the introduction to water, the chemical must cause, either directly or otherwise:

- a decrease in the aqueous hydronium concentration,
- an increase in the aqueous hydroxide concentration, or
- an increase in the solution pH.

Because the Arrhenius acid-base model defines acids and bases in terms of their impact on the state of an aqueous solution the Arrhenius concept is unable to describe reactions in nonaqueous solvents, gases, molten liquids, and the solid state. Consequently other models should be used to describe reactions involving the transfer of H^+ and other fragments in nonaqueous media.

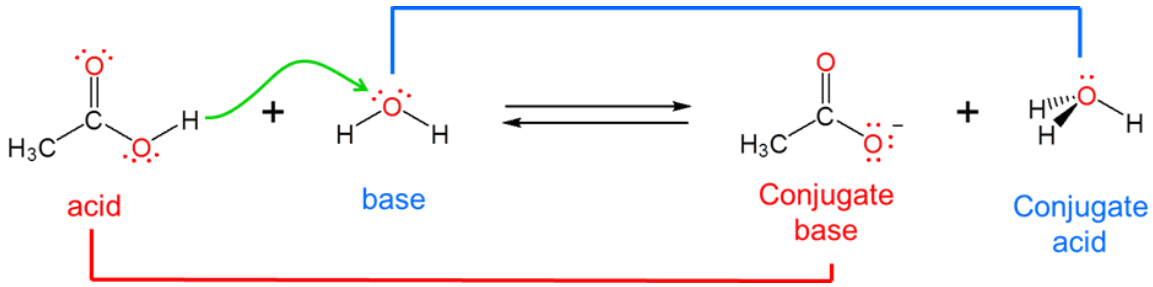
This page titled 5.2: Arrhenius Concept is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 7.1A: Acid-Base Theories and Concepts by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY-NC 4.0.
- 6.2: Arrhenius Concept by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

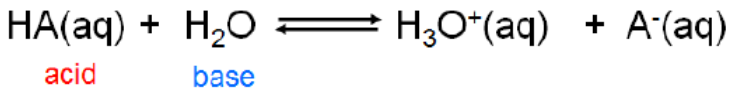
5.3: Brønsted-Lowry Concept

The Brønsted-Lowry acid-base concept

The Brønsted-Lowry acid-base concept overcomes the Arrhenius system's inability to describe reactions that take place outside of aqueous solution by moving the focus away from the solution and onto the acid and base themselves. It does this by redefining acid-base reactivity as involving the transfer of a hydrogen ion, H^+, between an acid and a base. Specifically, a Brønsted acid is a substance that loses an H^+ ion by donating it to a base. This means that a Brønsted base is defined as a substance which accepts H^+ from an acid when it reacts.

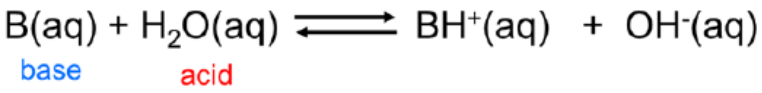


Because the Brønsted-Lowry concept is concerned with H^+ ion transfer rather than the creation of a particular chemical species, it is able to handle a diverse array of acid-base concepts. In fact, from the viewpoint of the Brønsted-Lowry concept, Arrhenius acids and bases are just a special case involving hydrogen ion donation and acceptance involving water. Arrhenius acids donate H^+ ion to water, which acts as a Brønsted base in accepting it to give H_3O^+:



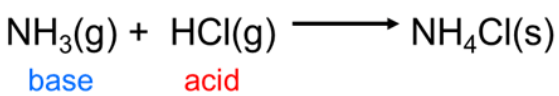
(5.3.1)

Similarly, Arrhenius bases act as Brønsted bases in accepting a hydrogen ion from the Brønsted acid water:



In this way it can be seen that Arrhenius acids and bases are defined in terms of their causing hydrogen ions to be donated to and abstracted from water, respectively, while Brønsted acids and bases are defined in terms of their ability to donate and accept hydrogen ions to and from anything.

Becasue the Brønsted-Lowry concept can handle any sort of hydrogen ion transfer it readily accommodates many reactions that Arrhenius theory cannot, including those that take place outside of water, such as the reaction between gaseous hydrochloric acid and ammonia:

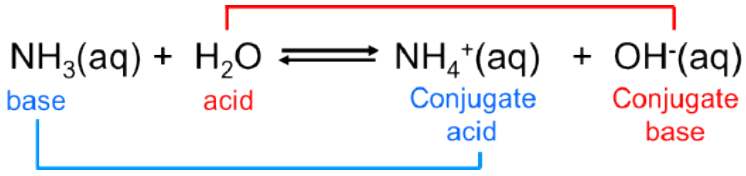


The classification of acids as strong or weak usually refers to their ability to donate or abstract hydrogen ions to or from water to

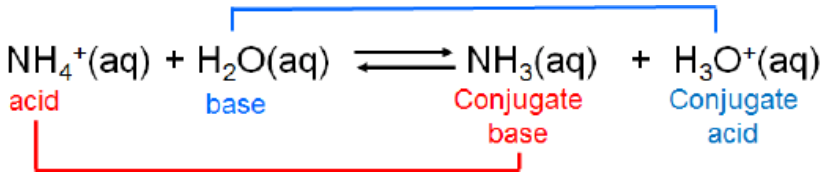
give H_3O^+ and OH^-, respectively, *i.e.,* their Arrhenius acidity and basicity. However, acids and bases may be classified as strong and weak under the Brønsted-Lowry definition based on whether they completely transfer or accept hydrogen ions; it is just that in this case it is important to specify the conditions under which a given acid or base acts strong or weak. For example, acetic acid acts as a weak acid in water but is a strong acid in triethylamine, since in the latter case it completely transfers a hydrogen ion to triethylamine to give triethylammonium acetate. Alternatively, the acidity or basicity of a compound may be specified using a thermodynamic scale like the Hammett acidity.

Conjugate Acids and Bases

By redefining acids and bases in terms of hydrogen ion donation and acceptance, the Brønsted-Lowry system makes it easy to recognize that when an acid loses its hydrogen ion it becomes a substance that is capable of receiving it back again, namely, a base. Consider, for example, the base dissociation of ammonia in water. When ammonia acts as a Brønsted base and receives a hydrogen ion from water, ammonium ion and hydroxide are formed:

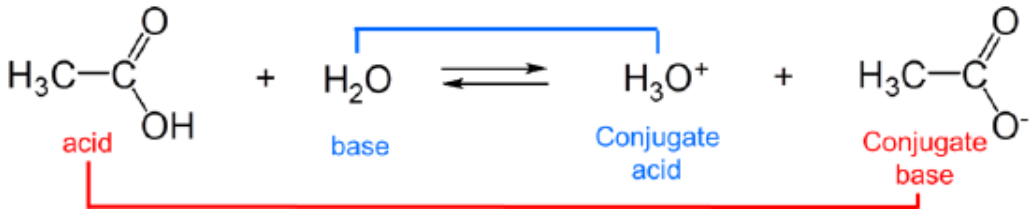


The ammonium ion is itself a weak acid that can undergo dissociation:

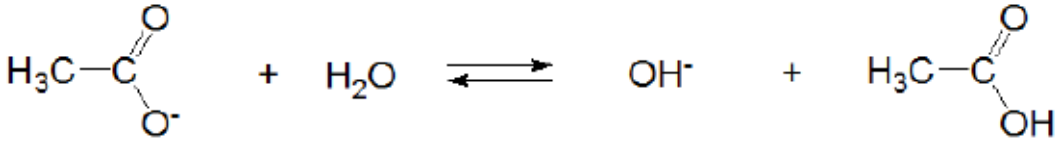


In this case ammonia and ammonium ion are acid-base conjugates. In general acids and bases that differ by a *single ionizable hydrogen ion* are said to be conjugates of one another.

The strengths of conjugates vary reciprocally with one another, so the stronger the acid the weaker the base and vice versa. For example, in water, acetic acid acts as a weak Brønsted acid:



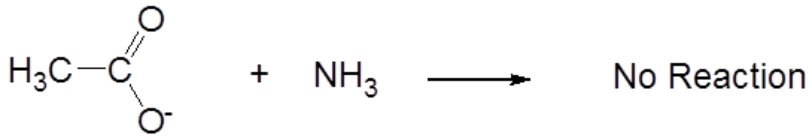
and acetic acid's conjugate base, acetate, acts as a weak Brønsted base.



However, in liquid ammonia acetic acid acts as a strong Brønsted acid:



while its conjugate base, acetate, is neutral.

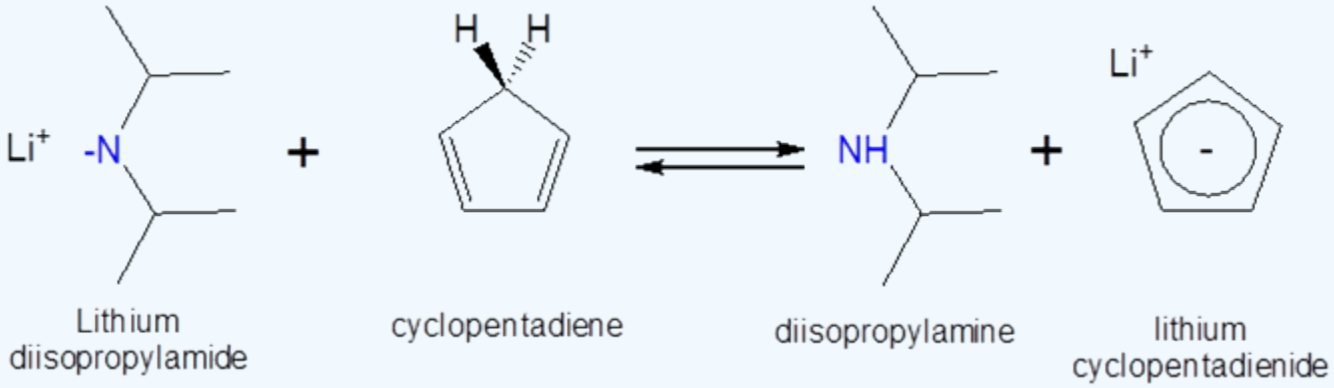


The reciprocal relationship between the strengths of acids and their conjugate bases has several consequences:

1. Under conditions when an acid or base acts as a weak acid or base its conjugate acts as weak as well. Conversely, when an acid or base acts as a strong acid or base its conjugate acts as a neutral species.
2. When a Brønsted acid and base react with one another, the equilibrium favors formation of the weakest acid-base pair. That is why the acid-base reaction between acetic acid and ammonia in liquid ammonia proceeded to give the weak acid ammonium ion and neutral acetate. This consequence is particularly important for understanding the behavior of acids and bases in nonaqueous solvents, as illustrated by the following example.

Example 5.3.1

Can a solution of lithium diisopropylamide in heptane be used to form lithium cyclopentadienide? The pK_a of cyclopentadiene and diisopropylamine are ~15 and 40, respectively, and the proposed reaction is as follows:



Solution: available at the end of this section.

Answers

Example 5.3.1

Since cyclopentadiene is a stronger acid than diisopropylamine (the stronger the acid the lower the pK_a) the equilibrium will favor protonation of the diisopropylamine by cyclopentadiene. Consequently addition of a heptane solution of lithium diisopropylamide to monomeric cyclopentadiene should give lithium cyclopentadienide.

This page titled 5.3: Brønsted-Lowry Concept is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.3.1: Brønsted-Lowry Concept by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.4: Rules of Thumb for thinking about the relationship between Molecular Structure and Brønsted Acidity and Basicity*

Because the acidity of a given substance depends on the interplay between the relatively large values of its proton affinity and the energy associated with solvation of an acid's conjugate base, it can sometimes be difficult to estimate the strength of an acid in a given solvent in the absence of detailed computations. Nevertheless a variety of simple ideas may be used to roughly estimate the relative strengths of acids. These should never be substituted for a detailed consideration of solvation but can serve as useful aids when thinking about trends and designing new Brønsted acids and bases.

Four main factors should be considered when thinking about the relationship between molecular structure and Brønsted acidity and basicity

Some simple factors that it can be helpful to consider when thinking about the strength of a given acid or base are:

1. Bond strength effects

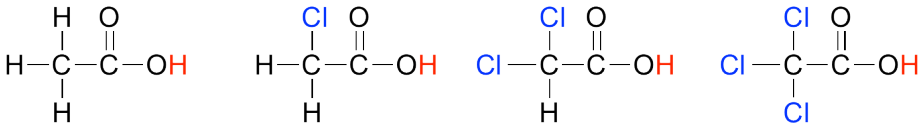
The weaker the bond to the ionizable hydrogen, the stronger the acid. Strongly bonded hydrogen ions are difficult to remove, weakly bonded ones much less so.

2. Inductive effects

Inductive effects involve the donation or withdrawal of electrons from an atom by a group connected to it through bonds. **Electron donating groups** increase the electron density while **electron withdrawing groups** decrease it. Atoms or groups that withdraw electron density away from a center increase its acidity while those which donate electrons to the center decrease its acidity. The reasons for this follow from the heterolytic bond cleavage of acid ionization:

$$E-H \rightarrow E:^{-} + H^{+}$$

- When a bond to hydrogen is more polarized away from the H (more like $^{-\delta}E-H^{\delta+}$) it is easier to cleave off the hydrogen ion from that E-H bond. This may be seen from how the pK_a values of acetic acid and its mono-, di-, and tri-chlorinated derivatives decreases with the extent of chlorination of the methyl group.



$pK_a = 4.8$ $pK_a = 2.8$ $pK_a = 1.3$ $pK_a = 0.64$

- Polarized E-H bonds also make for stronger Brønsted acids because the resulting $E:^{-}$ conjugate base is more stable.

This leads to the third major factor that should be considered when thinking about acid strength.

3. Electronegativity Effects, Especially as Seen Using the Conjugate Base Principle

The more stable the acid's conjugate base, the stronger the Brønsted acid. All reactions are in theory reversible, and so when considering the propensity of an acid to donate hydrogen ions, it can be helpful to look at the reverse of hydrogen ion donation, namely, protonation of the acid's conjugate base. If deprotonation of the acid gives a very stable conjugate base then

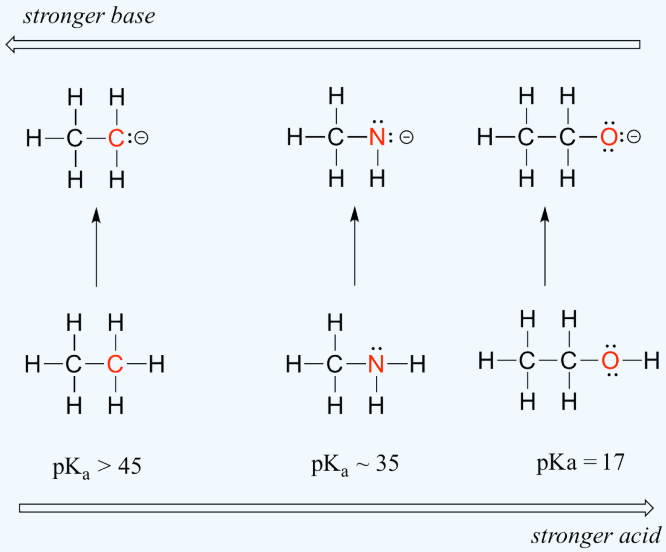
deprotonation of the acid will be more favorable.

Two factors determine the stability of an acid's conjugate base.

- Conjugate bases in which a small amount of charge is on a large atom, spread over a large number of atoms, and on electronegative atoms tend to be more stable. Conjugate bases in which a small amount of charge is spread over a large number of electronegative atoms are especially stable. That is why magic acid, a mixture of HF and SbF_5, is so acidic: the single negative charge on its conjugate base is spread over six F atoms and on Sb in SbF_6^-.

- Groups which tend to inductively polarize E-H bonds also tend to stabilize the conjugate base formed when that bond ionizes. In general, the more electronegative an atom, the better able it is to bear a negative charge. All other things being equal, weaker bases have negative charges on more electronegative atoms; stronger bases have negative charges on fewer electronegative atoms. This is apparent from how inductive effects lead to an increase in the acidity of E-H bonds as the electronegativity of the element to which the acidic hydrogen is bound increases from left to right across a row of the periodic table. This horizontal periodic trend in acidity and basicity is apparent from the homologous series below:

Horizontal periodic trend in acidity and basicity



Notice how the inductive polarization of the E-H bond, which results in greater acidity, contributes to the greater stability of the conjugate base. For the case above, look at where the negative charge ends up in each conjugate base. In the conjugate base of ethane, the negative charge is borne by a carbon atom, while on the conjugate base of methylamine and ethanol the negative charge is located on a nitrogen and an oxygen, respectively. Remember that electronegativity also increases as we move from left to right along a row of the periodic table, meaning that oxygen is the most electronegative of the three atoms, and carbon the least.

Thus, the methoxide anion is the most stable (lowest energy, least basic) of the three conjugate bases, and the ethyl carbanion anion is the least stable (highest energy, most basic). Conversely, ethanol is the strongest acid, and ethane the weakest acid.

4. Size effects on Bond Strength and Charge Delocalization

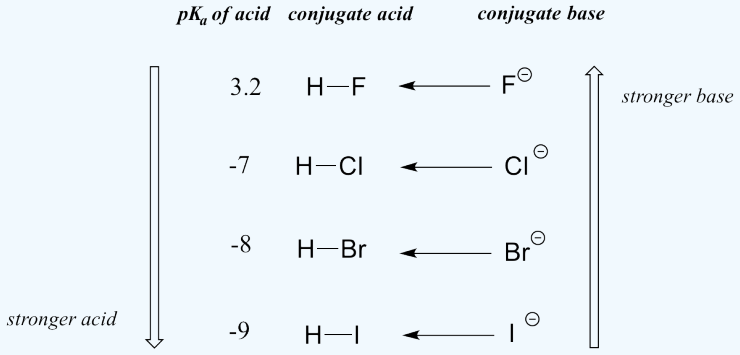
There are two classes of size effects to be considered:

a. The larger the atom to which a H is bound in an E-H bond, the weaker the bond and the stronger the acid.
b. Increased charge delocalization with increasing size. Electrostatic charges, whether positive or negative, are more stable when they are ‘spread out’ over a larger area. The greater the volume over which charge is spread in the acid's conjugate base, the more stable that base and the stronger the acid.

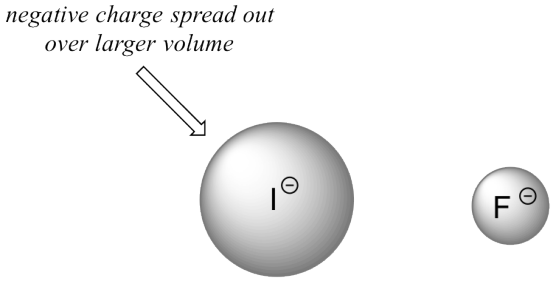
The impact of size effects are readily seen in the increase in acidity of the hydrogen halides, as illustrated by the vertical periodic

trend in acidity and basicity below:

Vertical periodic trend in acidity and basicity



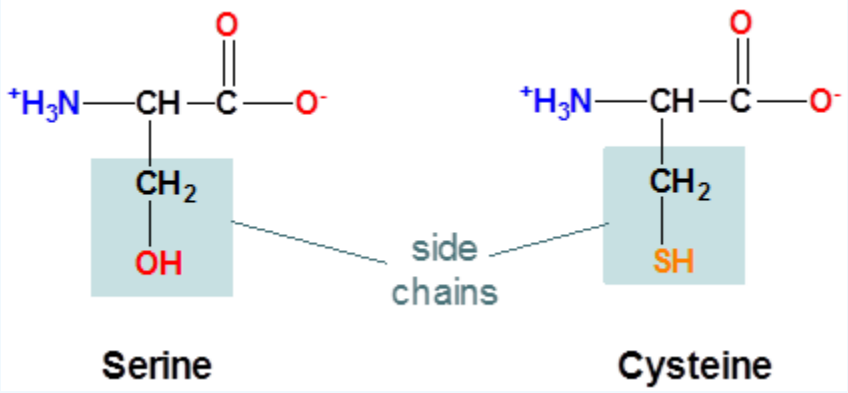
On going vertically down the halogen group from F to I the H-X bond strength decreases in the acid, making it easier to ionize, while the charge becomes more diffuse in the resultant X^- ion, making the conjugate base more stable.



The increase in the acidity of the hydrogen halides down a group suggests that size effects are more important than inductive effects. In the case of the hydrogen halides, because fluorine is the most electronegative halogen element, we might expect fluoride to also be the least basic halogen ion. But in fact, it is the *least* stable, and the most basic! It turns out that when moving vertically in the periodic table, the *size* of the atom trumps its electronegativity with regard to basicity. The atomic radius of iodine is approximately twice that of fluorine, so in an iodide ion, the negative charge is spread out over a significantly larger volume.

Exercise

The structure of the amino acids serine and cysteine are shown below. Which do you expect will have the more acidic side chain?



Answer available at the end of this section.

Contributors and Attributions

Stephen M. Contakes (Westmont College),

* who expanded this section from a combination of

https://chem.libretexts.org/Courses/University_of_Arkansas_Little_Rock/Chem_1403%3A_General_Chemistry_2/Text/16%3A_Acids_and_Bases/16.6%3A_Molecular_Structure%2C_Bonding%2C_and_Acid-Base_Behavior

https://chem.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Organic_Chemistry/Book%3A_Organic_Chemistry_with_a_Biological_Emphasis_(Soderberg)/Chapter_07%3A_Organic_compounds_as_acids_and_base/7.3%3A_Structural_effects_on_acidity_and_basicity

Answers

Exercise

Cysteine, since the cysteine side chain possesses an ionizable S-H bond while serine's side chain possesses an ionizable O-H bond. Since S is larger than O, cysteine's S-H bond will be weaker than serine's O-H bond, and the cysteine side chain's thiolate conjugate base more stable than the serine side chain's alkoxide conjugate base. In fact, the side chain pK_a of cysteine is 8.3 while serine is considered to be nonionizable under physiological conditions.

This page titled 5.4: Rules of Thumb for thinking about the relationship between Molecular Structure and Brønsted Acidity and Basicity* is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 6.3.2: Rules of Thumb for thinking about the relationship between Molecular Structure and Brønsted Acidity and Basicity* by Stephen Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.5: The acid-base behavior of binary element hydrides is determined primarily by the element's electronegativity and secondarily by the element-hydrogen bond strength.*

The compounds formed between the elements and hydrogen are called binary hydrides. All such compounds can in principle act as Brønsted acids in reactions with a suitably strong base. However, as the electronegativity decreases down a group and increases from left to right across the periodic table, the acidity of binary hydrides increases. In fact, on the left side of the periodic table the hydrides of extremely electropositive alkali and alkaline earth metals are not acidic but basic. They are perhaps best considered to be ionic salts of the hydride ion (H^-). Consequently substances such as NaH and CaH_2 tend to act as Brønsted bases in their reactions.

$$NaH\,(s) + H_2O\,(l) \longrightarrow Na^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq) + H_2\,(g)$$

$$CaH_2\,(s) + 2\,H_2O\,(l) \longrightarrow Ca^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,OH^-\,(aq) + 2\,H_2\,(g)$$

On the right side of the periodic table the binary hydrides of the nonmetals exhibit appreciable acidity.

$$HBr\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \longrightarrow H^+\,(aq) + Br^-\,(aq)$$

For this reason the binary nonmetal hydrides are termed acidic hydrides. Nevertheless not all are equally acidic. The dilute aqueous acid ionization constants for these hydrides are given in Figure 5.5.1. As can be seen from the constants in Figure 5.5.2, the ability of the hydrides to transfer a hydrogen to water increases across a period and down a group.

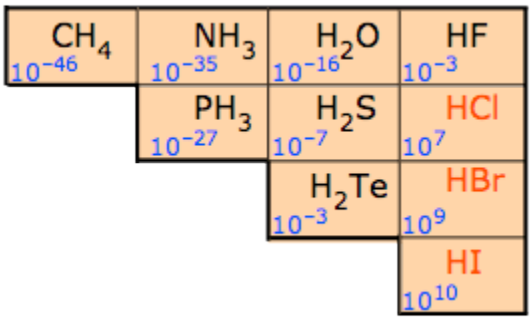


Figure 5.5.1: The acid ionization constants of nonmetal hydrides increase across a period and down a group. (CC BY-NC 3.0; Stephen Lower via Chem1)

These trends are largely due to changes in the electronegativity and size of the nonmetal atom:

1. Foing across a period, the acid strength increases as there is an increase in electronegativity and the molecule gets more polar, with the hydrogen getting a larger partial positive charge. This makes it easier to heterolytically cleave the E-H bond to produce a stable anion.

$$E - H \rightarrow E:^- + H^+$$

2. Going down a group, the acid strength increases because the bond strength decreases as a function of increasing size of the nonmetal, and this has a larger effect than the electronegativity. In fact HF is a weak acid because it is so small that the hydrogen-fluorine bond is so strong that it is difficult to break. Remember, the weaker the bond, the stronger the acid strength. This is further illustrated in Table 5.5.1, where the weakest bond has produced the strongest acid.

Table 5.5.1 Acid strength as function of bond energy

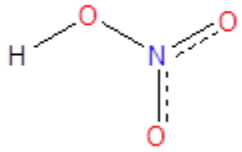
Relative Acid Strength	HF	<<	HCl	<	HBr	<	HI
H–X Bond Energy (kJ/mol)	570		432		366		298
K_a	10^{-3}		10^{7}		10^{9}		10^{10}

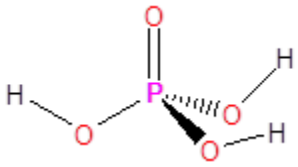
This page titled 5.5: The acid-base behavior of binary element hydrides is determined primarily by the element's electronegativity and secondarily by the element-hydrogen bond strength.* is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 6.3.3: The acid-base behavior of binary element hydrides is determined primarily by the element's electronegativity and secondarily by the element-hydrogen bond strength by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom*

Oxyacids (also known as **oxoacids**) are compounds of the general formula $\mathrm{H}_n\mathrm{EO}_m$, where E is a nonmetal or early transition metal and the acidic hydrogens are attached directly to oxygen (not E). This class of compounds includes such well-know acids as nitric acid ($\mathrm{HNO_3}$) and phosphoric acid, ($\mathrm{H_3PO_4}$).





The acidity of oxyacids follows three trends:

Trend 1: In a homologous series the acidity increases with the electronegativity of the central atom

Elements in the same group frequently form oxyacids of the same general formula. For example, chlorine, bromine, and iodine all form oxyacids of formula HOE: hypochlorous, hypobromous and hypoiodous acids. In the case of these homologous oxyacids, the acidity is largely determined by the electronegativity of the central element. Central atoms that are better able to inductively pull electron density towards themselves make the oxygen-hydrogen bond that is to be ionized more polar and stabilize the conjugate base, $\mathrm{OE^-}$. Thus the acid strength in such homologous series increases with the electronegativity of the central atom. This may be seen from the data for the hypohalous acids in Table $5.6.1$, in which the acid strength increases with the electronegativity of the halogen so that the order of acidity is:

$$\mathrm{HClO} > \mathrm{HBrO} > \mathrm{HIO}$$

and the order of basicity is:

$$\mathrm{ClO^-} < \mathrm{BrO^-} < \mathrm{IO^-}$$

Table $5.6.1$: Relationship of central atom's electronegativity to acid ionization constant in the hypohalous acids.

HOX	Electronegativity of X	K_a
HOCl	3.0	4.0×10^{-8}
HOBr	2.8	2.8×10^{-9}
HOI	2.5	3.2×10^{-11}

Note that the influence of central atom electronegativity on the strength of oxyacids is exactly the opposite to that observed for the binary hydrides in Table $5.6.5$, for which the acidity increased down a group, giving the order of acidity:

$$\mathrm{HI} > \mathrm{HBr} > \mathrm{HCl} \gg \mathrm{HF}$$

The reason for this is that in the hydrogen halides, the bond to be broken (H-E bond) decreased in strength down the group, while in oxyacids the bond to be broken is always an O-H bond and so varies much less in strength with the electronegativity of the central atom.

Trend 2: For oxoacids of a given central atom the acidity increases with the central element's oxidation state or, in other words, the number of oxygens bound to the central atom.

Here we are looking at the trend for acids in which there are variable numbers of oxygen bound to a given central atom. An examples is the perchloric (ClO_4^-), chloric (ClO_3^-), chlorous (ClO_2^-), and hypochlous (ClO^-) acid series. In such a series, the greater the number of oxygens, the stronger the acid. This can be explained in several ways. From the viewpoint of the acid itself the key factor is again the inductive effect, in this case involving the ability of the oxygens attached to the central atom to pull on electron density across the OH bond. This is seen from the charge density diagram for the chlorine oxoacids shown in Figure 5.6.1, in which the partial positive charge on the acidic hydrogen increases with the number of oxygens present.

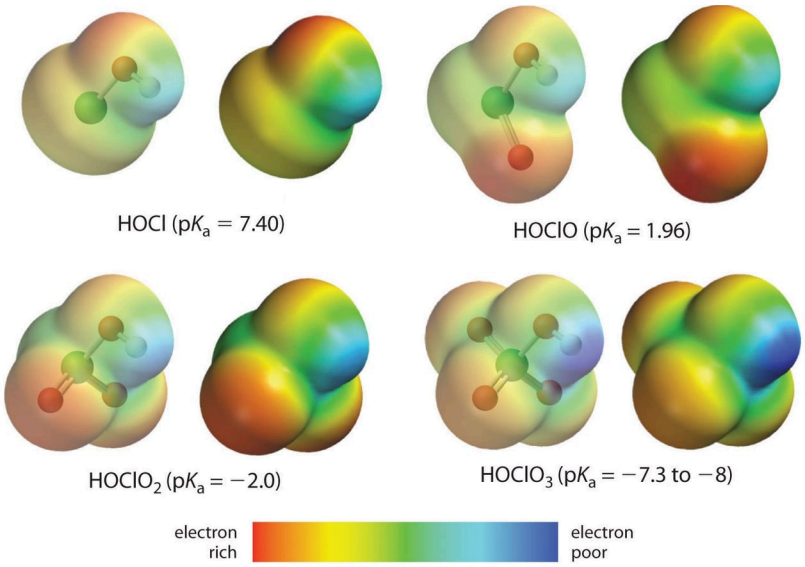


Figure 5.6.1: Increasing the number of oxygens increases K_a, as evidenced by the decreased electron density on the acidic hydrogen (which is most blue in $HClO_4$). Note, $K_a = 10^{-pK_a}$, and so the larger the pK_a, the smaller the K_a. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The increase in oxoacid acidity with the number of oxygens bound to the central atom may also be seen by considering the stability of the conjugate oxyanion. That the stability of the conjugate base increases with the number of oxygens may be seen from the charge distribution diagrams and Lewis bonding models for the chlorine oxyanions shown in figure 5.6.2. As the negative charge is spread over more oxygen atoms it becomes increasingly diffuse.

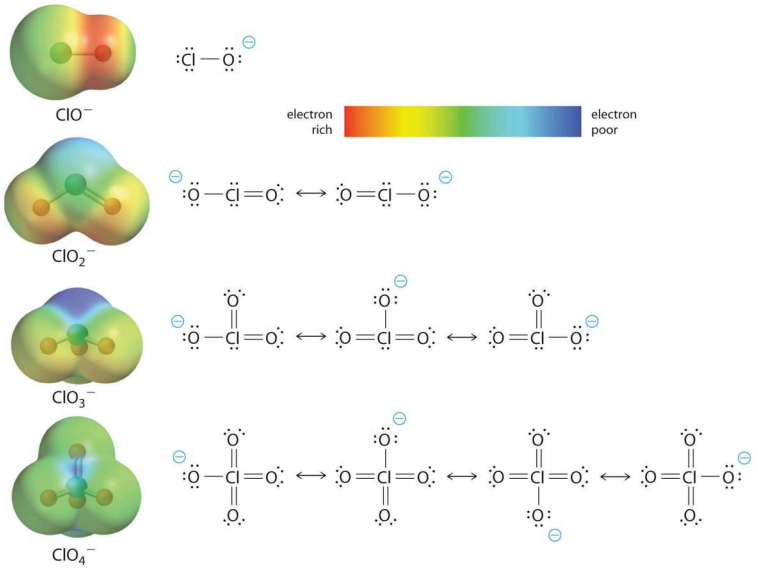


Figure 5.6.2: Increased diffusion of charge in chlorine oxyanions with increasing number of oxygens. The larger the ion the more dispersed the charge and thus the less the charge density, making the perchlorate the most stable anion in the series. Even the simplistic treatment of bonding depicted in the resonance structures correctly shows an increased dispersion of the charge density. (CC BY-SA-NC 3.0; anonymous)

Exercise 5.6.1

Sulfur and selenium both forms oxoacids of formula $\mathrm{H_2EO_3}$, where E is either S or Se. These are called sulfurous and selenous acid, respectively. Which oxoacid would you expect to be more acidic: selenous acid or sulfurous acid?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Trend 3: For polyprotic oxoacids the acidity decreases as each successive proton is removed

Oxoacids with multiple O-H bonds are called **polyprotic** since they can donate more than one hydrogen ion. In this case hydrogen ions are removed in successive ionization reactions. Examples include phosphoric and carbonic acid:

$$\mathrm{H_3PO_4 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + H_2PO_4^-} \qquad pK_{a1} = 2.2$$
$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HPO_4^{2-}} \qquad pK_{a2} = 7.2$$
$$\mathrm{HPO_4 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + PO_4^{3-}} \qquad pK_{a3} = 12.4$$
$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^-} \qquad pK_{a1} = 3.6$$
$$\mathrm{HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + CO_3^{2-}} \qquad pK_{a1} = 10.3$$

The dissociation constants for successive ionization constants decrease by about five orders of magnitude between successive hydrogen ions. This is reflected in Linus Pauling's rules for oxoacids and their oxyanions:

Pauling's Rules

1. The pK_a for an oxyacid of general formula $\mathrm{E(OH)_q(O)_p}$ is given by
$$pK_a = 8 - 5 \times p \tag{5.6.1}$$
2. As an oxoaxid undergoes successive ionizations the pK_a increases by five each time (i.e., K_a decreases 10,000-fold).

The central theme of Pauling's Rules is that the more oxygens there are on the central atom, the more resonance structures that

can be constructed for the conjugate base, which increases its stability and increases the acidity of the acid. However, as the acids successively ionize, they have fewer resonance structures. Pauling's Rules are phenomenological (i.e., not based on a theoretical framework). However, as empirical rules, they often work quite well, but it should be borne in mind that they are approximate.

Exercise 5.6.2: How well do Pauling's rules for oxoacids work?

Calculate the theoretical pK_a values for phosphoric and carbonic acid and their dissociation produces and compare the results with the experimental pK_a values.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 5.6.1

Sulfurous acid should be more acidic. Since sulfur is more electronegative than selenium sulfur will polarize OH bonds to a greater extent, making them more acidic. This prediction is borne out by a comparison of the pK_a values for the acids:

Acid	pK_{a1}	pK_{a2}
sulfurous acid, H_2SO_3	1.85	7.2
selenous acid, H_2SeO_3	2.62	8.32

Exercise 5.6.2**: How well do Pauling's rules for oxoacids work?**

For phosphoric acid, Pauling's rules (Equation 5.6.1) predict the pK_a values quite well:

- H_3PO_4: $p = 3$ and $q = 1$ and

$$pK_{a1,\text{predicted}} = 8 - 5 \times 1 = 3$$

  This is slightly greater than the observed value of 2.2.
- $H_2PO_4^-$:

$$pK_{a2,\text{predicted}} = pK_{a1,\text{experimental}} + 5 = 7.2$$

  This is spot on with experiment.
- HPO_4^{2-}:

$$pK_{a3,\text{predicted}} = pK_{a2,\text{experimental}} + 5 = 12.2$$

  This is slightly less than the experimental value of 12.4.

For carbonic acid Pauling's rules predict pK_{a1} reasonably well, but pK_{a2} less so:

- H_2CO_3: $p = 2$, $q = 1$ and

$$pK_{a1,\text{predicted}} = 8 - 5 \times 1 = 3$$

  This is slightly lower than the observed value of 3.6.
- HCO_3^-:

$$pK_{a2,\text{predicted}} = pK_{a1,\text{experimental}} + 5 = 8.6$$

  This is 1.7 units less than the experimental value of 10.3.

In some cases discrepancies between experimental pK_a values and those predicted by Pauling's rules suggest that structural rearrangements may be taking place upon ionization or else that the reported pK_a values do not really represent the ionization in question because they do not fully account for all the equilibria taking place in solution. In the case of carbonic acid, however, the reason for the discrepancy between the predicted and experimental pK_{a2} values is not entirely clear.

This page titled 5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom* is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.3.7: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom* by Stephen Contakes is licensed CC BY 3.0.

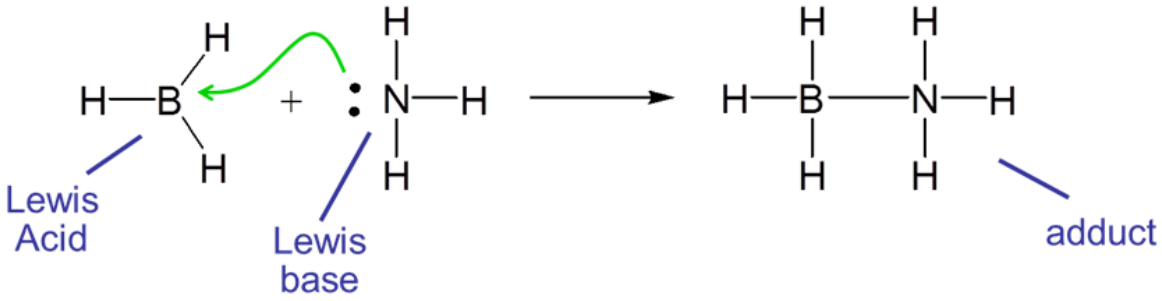
5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals

The Lewis acid-base concept generalizes the Brønsted and solvent system acid base concepts by describing acid-base reactions in terms of the donation and acceptance of an electron pair.

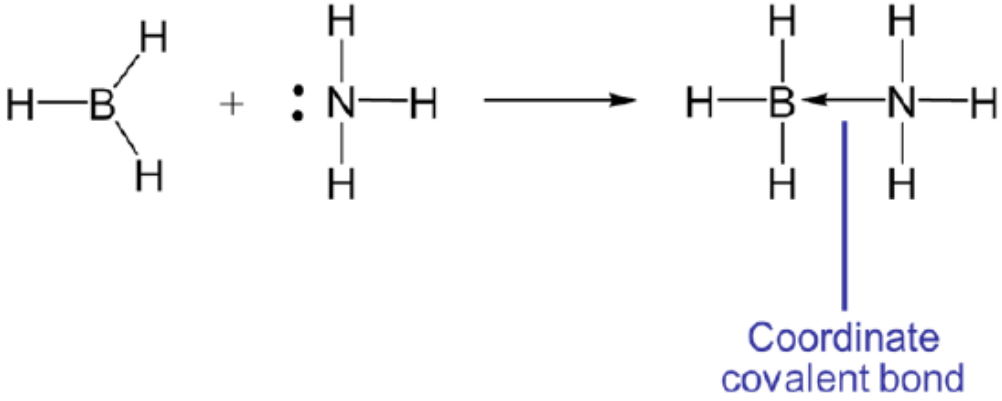
Under the Lewis definition

- **Lewis acids** are electron pair acceptors
- **Lewis bases** are electron pair donors

and in Lewis acid-base reactions, a Lewis base donates an electron pair to the Lewis acid, which accepts it. The reaction between borane, BH_3, and NH_3 is the classic example:

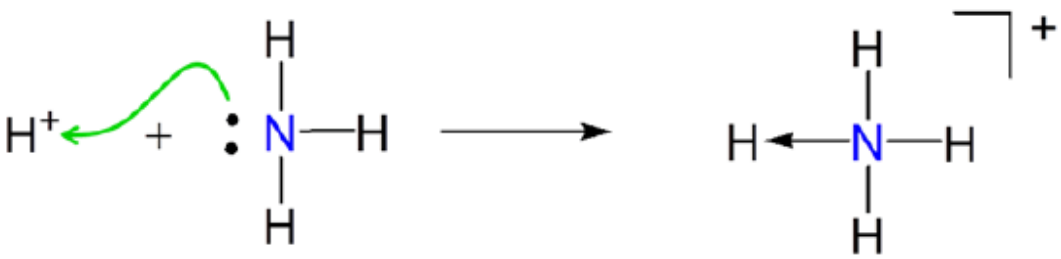


In this case the Lewis acid-base reaction results in the formation of a bond between BH_3, and NH_3. When the acid and base combine to form a larger unit, that unit is said to be an adduct, and the resulting bond is said to be a coordinate covalent or dative bond. Such coordinate covalent bonds are often represented by an arrow that indicates the direction of electron donation from the base to the acid. For instance, the reaction between BH_3 and NH_3 could also have been written as

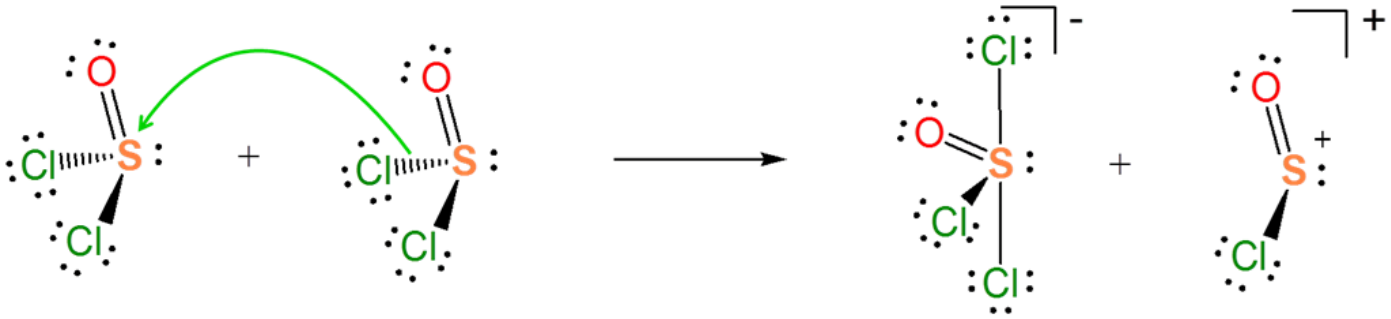


The arrow notation for the coordinate covalent bond is really just a convenient formalism - a bookkeeping tool to help keep track of where the electrons came from and where they might return if the reverse reaction occurs. In actuality a coordinate covalent bond is just an ordinary covalent bond like any other.

For example, in Brønsted acid-base reactions, the hydrogen ion is an acid because it accepts an electron pair from the Brønsted base. Consequently, under the Lewis acid-base concept, Brønsted acid-base reactions involve the formation of an adduct between H^+ and a base.



The Lewis acid-base concept nicely explains ionization reactions involving nonaqueous solvents. For instance, the autoionization of $SOCl_2$ is an acid-base reaction between two $SOCl_2$ molecules.

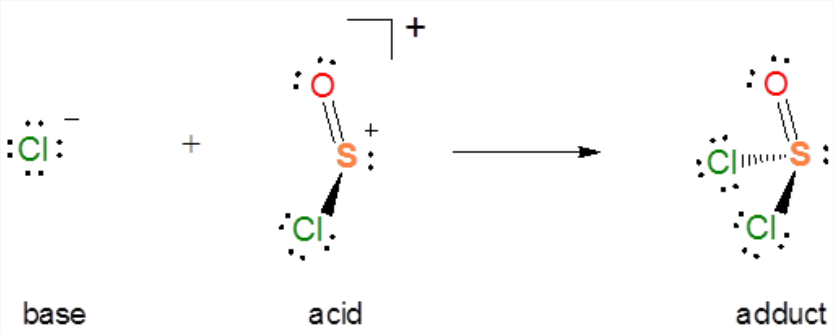


Example 5.7.1

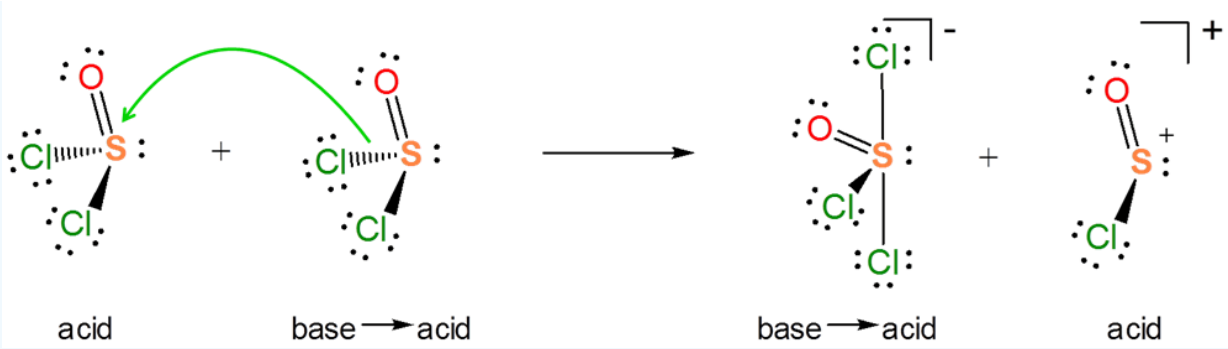
Explain how the autoionization of $SOCl_2$ is a Lewis acid-base displacement reaction.

Solution

In the autoionization of $SOCl_2$ the pair of electrons donated comes from the S-Cl bond, and the S-Cl bond is broken to give a lone pair bearing a Cl^- base and an $SOCl^+$ Lewis acid fragment. If you are having trouble seeing how this works, it can be instructive to consider the reverse of this process. It is a Lewis acid-base reaction to give a Lewis acid-base adduct:

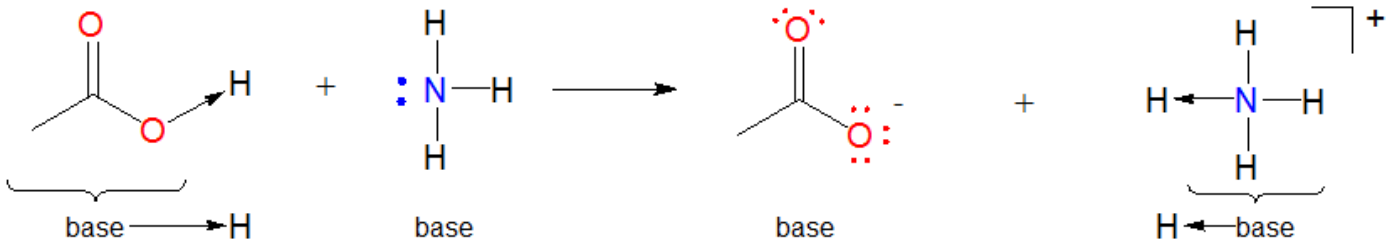


From the autoionization reaction it is also apparent that $SOCl_2$ itself acts as a Lewis acid towards the liberated Cl^-. So the autoionization reaction involves a transfer of the Cl^- base between the two Lewis acids - a Lewis acid-base displacement reaction.



It can be helpful to keep several distinctions in mind when using the Lewis acid-base concept to describe chemical reactions.

1. Many Lewis-Acid base reactions are displacement reactions. This is because the hydrogen ion is usually bound to something at the start of the reaction. In such cases the Lewis acid H^+ unit is transferred from one Lewis base to another :



Such acid-base reactions are sometimes called displacement reactions since the base group in the initial Lewis acid-base complex is displaced by the incoming Lewis base to generate another complex.

2. Substances are sometimes considered amphoteric because they exhibit Lewis acidity and basicity at different types of atomic centers. The classic example is aluminum hydroxide, $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}$. In water $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}$ can act as a Lewis acid towards OH^- ion. The reaction occurs by formation of an adduct at $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}$'s Al^{3+} center:

$$\mathrm{Al(OH)_3 + OH^- \rightarrow Al(OH)_4^-}$$

Notice that in addition to acting as a Lewis acid, in this reaction $Al(OH)_3$

- does not act as a Brønsted acid or base since no H^+ ion transfer occurs
- but does act as an Arrhenius acid since OH^- ion is consumed from solution, decreasing $[OH^-]$ and increasing $[H^+]$

In water $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}$ also acts as a Lewis base towards H^+ through the lone pairs on its hydroxide ligands.

$$\mathrm{Al(OH)_3 + 3\,H^+ + 3\,H_2O \rightarrow Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}}$$

Notice that in addition to acting as a Lewis base, in this reaction $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}$ also acts as a

- Brønsted base, since a H^+ ion is transferred onto the OH^- ligand
- Arrhenius base, since H^+ ion is consumed from solution, decreasing $[H^+]$
- Lewis acid at its Al^{3+} center, since Al-O metal-ligand bonds are formed

Substances that rapidly undergo Lewis acid-base reactions are called nucleophiles and electrophiles.

Two factors govern the course of chemical reactions - thermodynamics and kinetics. Thermodyamics determines what possible fates of the reaction can take place while kinetics determines which among those possible fates will take place quickly under a particular set of reaction conditions. Because of this, it can be helpful to distinguish Lewis acids and bases that tend to undergo reaction quickly with one another from those which do so more slowly. For this reason, synthetic chemists use the terms electrophile and nucleophile to refer to Lewis acids and bases that react quickly:

- electrophile - Lewis acids that rapidly react with a given Lewis base or class of Lewis bases are said to be good electrophiles
- nucleophile - Lewis bases that rapidly react with a given Lewis acid or class of Lewis acids are said to be good nucleophiles

The electrophile-nucleophile concept is sometimes referred to as the Ingold-Robinson acid-base concept after two organic chemists who did much to illustrate the utility of thinking about Lewis acid-base reactions in kinetic terms.

Several distinctions that should be kept in mind when using the electrophile-nucleophile/Ingold-Robinson concept to think about chemical reactivity:

1. Whether a given Lewis acid or base is able to react rapidly depends on the reaction conditions and the substrate (substance it is reacting with). This means that in principle, the terms nucleophile and electrophile should not be used without appropriately qualifying what the substances act as a nucleophile or electrophile towards and under what conditions. Unfortunately this is rarely done. In such cases, the conditions and substrate must be inferred from the context. For instance, when you learned that the chloride ion is a good nucleophile when studying organic chemistry, what was meant is that chloride is a good nucleophile towards electrophilic carbon atoms in organic molecules.

2. Acid and base strength and electrophilicity-nucleophilicity are not exactly the same thing. In many contexts where Lewis acids and bases are classified as electrophilic and nucleophilic substances, it is common to also refer to substances as being good acids or bases on the basis of their Brønsted acidity and basicity. In these contexts, the terms acid and base typically refer to the thermodynamic propensity of a substance to give and accept hydrogen ions while the terms nucleophile and electrophile refer to a substance's kinetic propensity to react with carbon-based Lewis acids and bases, respectively.

A substance may be both a good nucleophile and a strong Brønsted base. For instance, alkyllithium carbanion reagents and alkali metal hydrides are strong bases and good nucleophiles towards electrophilic carbon atoms in organic solvents at moderate temperatures. However, this is not always the case. Under such conditions iodide ion, I^-, is a good nucleophile towards electrophilic carbon atoms but is a poor Brønsted base (it is the conjugate of the strong acid HI). In fact, for the halide ions the order of Brønsted basicity is the opposite of the order of nucleophilicity towards electrophilic carbon:

stronger Brønsted base: F^-, Cl^-, Br^-, I^-: weaker Brønsted base

better nucleophlie: I^-, Br^-, Cl^-, F^-: poorer nucleophile

3. Although the nucleophile-electrophile concept is most often used to describe organic reactions, it is also useful for describing inorganic reactions as well. For instance, the formation of hypochlorite ion in chlorine water possibly involves nucleophilic attack of hydroxide on an electrophilic chlorine atom in an S_N2 type process:



The Usanovich Acid-base Concept

The Usanovich Acid-base concept encompasses a wider range of reactions than the Lewis acid-base concept but is perhaps too general to serve as a convenient framework for understanding reaction chemistry. The Usanovich acid-base concept was developed by the Russian chemist Mikhail Usanovich and extends the Lewis acid-base concept's definition of acids and bases as electron pair donors and acceptors even further. Within the Usanovich definition:

- Acids are anything that accepts electrons, increases cation concentrations, decreases anion concentrations, or reacts with bases
- Bases are anything that donates electrons, increases anion concentrations, decreases cation concentrations, or reacts with acids

These definitions essentially expand the Lewis definition by removing the requirement that the electrons donated or accepted be a pair and practically mean that Usanovich acid-base reactions include Lewis acid-base reactions plus oxidation-reduction reactions. In other words:

- Usanovich acids are Lewis acids plus oxidants
- Usanovich bases are Lewis bases plus reductants

Under this definition BF_3, Fe^{3+}, and $[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$ all act as acids, and : NH_3, CN^-, and Zn are all bases:

$$\underset{acid}{BF_3} + \underset{base}{NH_3} \rightarrow F_3B-NH_3$$

$$\underset{acid}{Fe^{3+}} + 6\underset{base}{CN:^-} \rightarrow [Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$$

$$2\underset{acid}{[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}} + \underset{base}{Zn} \rightarrow 2[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-} + Zn^{2+}$$

However, notice that while it is easy to think about how any acids might interchangeably react with a given base (and vice versa), under the other acid-base concepts chemists have found it more difficult to think about reactions between oxidants/reductants and Lewis acids and bases. For example, it is difficult to think about how a reaction between BF_3 and Zn metal might occur. Would two Zn donate a pair of electrons to the BF_3? For this reason, most chemists find it more convenient to think about Lewis acid-base and redox reactions under separate categories rather than unite them under the Usanovich definition.

$$2\underset{oxidant}{[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}} + \underset{reductant}{Zn} \rightarrow 2[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-} + Zn^{2+}$$

Again, it can be helpful to remember Huheey's dictum that deciding between acid-base concepts is not a matter of which concept is the most correct but rather of which is more convenient for a given application.

This page titled 5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.4: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.8: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital.

Another way the Lewis-Acid base concept is widely employed for understanding chemical reactivity is through the frontier orbital approach to chemical reactions. The frontier orbital concept conceptualizes chemical bonding and reactivity in terms of the interactions between frontier orbitals on the chemical species undergoing an interaction (*e.g.* molecules, atoms, ions, or groups as they interact to form a bond or undergo a reaction). Frontier orbitals are those at the frontier between occupied and unoccupied. They are often taken to be the highest energy occupied and lowest energy unoccupied molecular orbitals, called the HOMO and LUMO levels. However, it can sometimes be more convenient to think about them as atomic orbitals or Valence Bond approach-derived orbitals. When developing rough qualitative frontier orbital descriptions of the orbital interactions involved in a given system, the choice of what types of orbitals to use is often a matter of what is the most informative and convenient.

In particular, the frontier orbital concept envisions a Lewis acid-base interaction as involving an interaction between some of the frontier orbitals of the Lewis acid and base, specifically the donation of electrons from the base's HOMO level into the acid's LUMO level. For example, in the frontier orbital approach, adduct formation between NH_3 and BH_3 involves the donation of electrons from ammonia's a_1 HOMO into BH_3's a_2'' LUMO level.

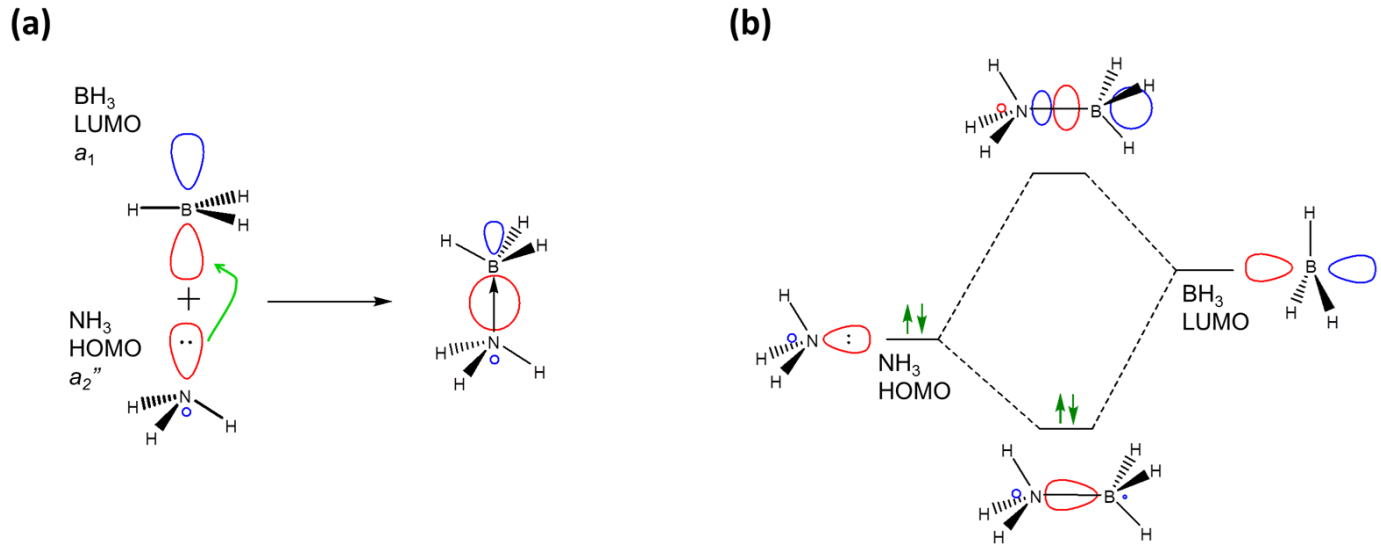


Figure 5.8.1. Frontier orbital picture of adduct formation between ammonia and borane. (a) As NH_3 and BH_3 approach one another, interaction between the NH_3 HOMO and BH_3 LUMO gives a bonding MO. (b) Partial molecular orbital diagram for $NH_3 \rightarrow BH_3$ showing the stabilization of the base (NH_3) lone pair in a sigma bonding MO upon adduct formation.

As expected when two orbitals of the appropriate symmetry combine, the result of the interaction is the formation of a lower energy bonding orbital between the acid and base (Figure 5.8.1). Since it is occupied by an electron, the net result of the interaction is the lowering of the base's lone pair energy as it interacts with the Lewis acid. In this case the interaction just follows the general pattern for Lewis-Acid base adduct formation, which is:

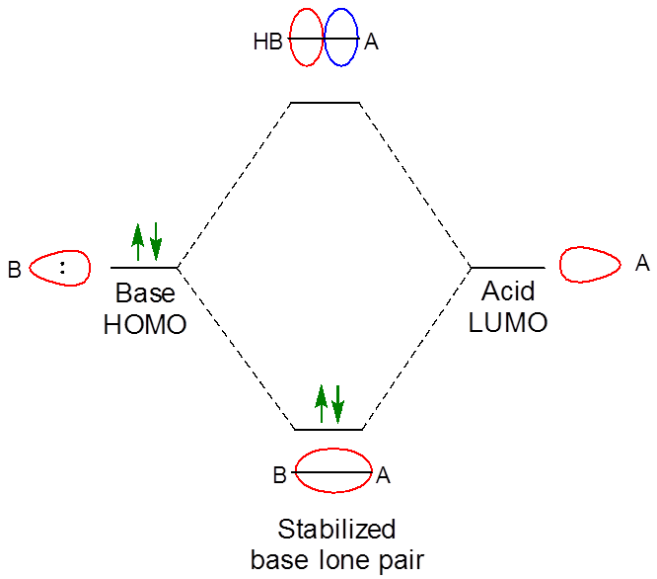
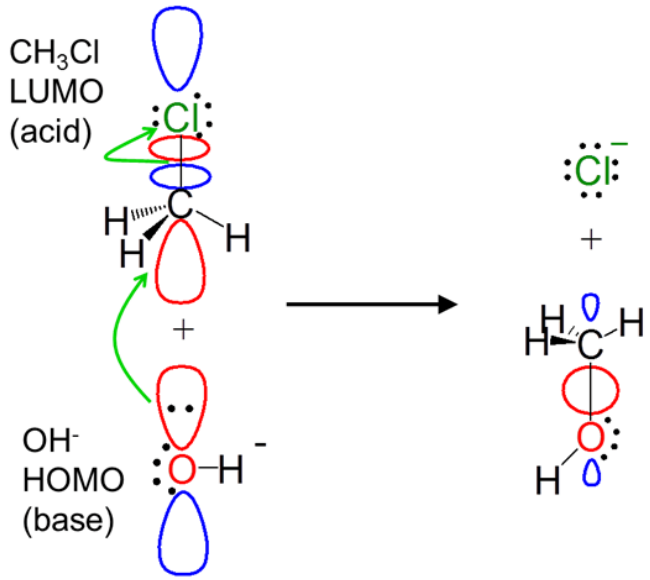


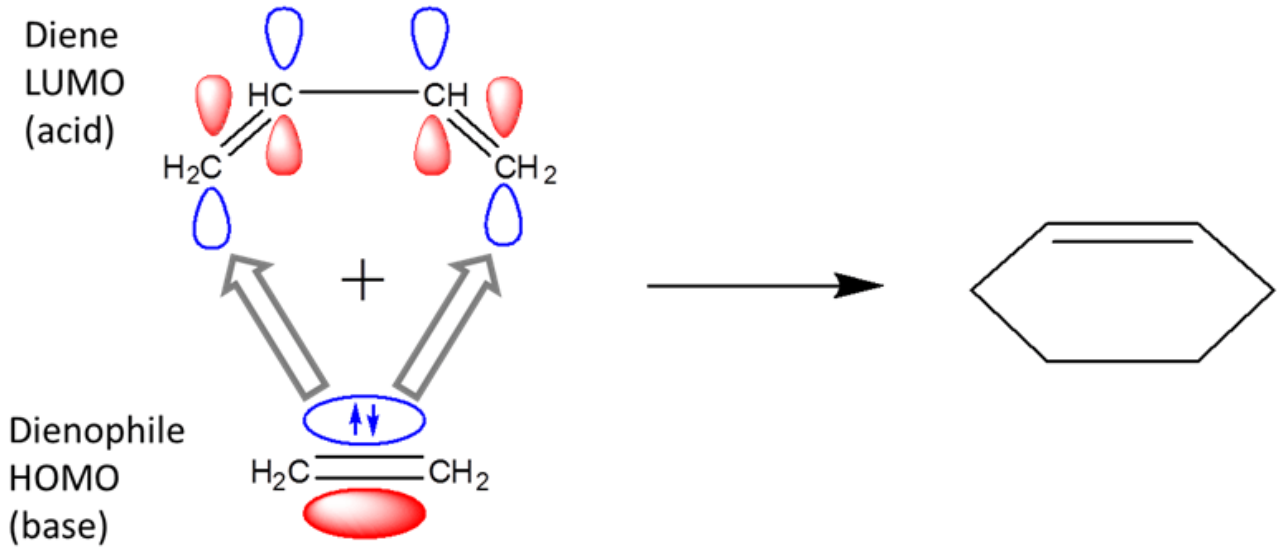
Figure 5.8.2. Generalized frontier orbital picture for adduct formation between a Lewis base (B) and a Lewis acid (A) involving stabilization of the lone pair of the base HOMO by formation of a bonding orbital with the acid LUMO. The relative energies of the acid LUMO and base HOMO affect the character of the bonding and antibonding MOs but are otherwise unimportant in determining the general features of the interaction. In some cases the base HOMO is higher in energy; in others the acid LUMO is higher in energy; in still others they are equal in energy. In any case the net result is the stabilization of the base lone pair.

The frontier orbital concept illuminates the orbital interactions involved in reactions. For instance, from a frontier orbital perspective the alkyl halide substitution reaction between hydroxide and CH_3Cl via the S_N2 mechanism involves a Lewis acid-base interaction:

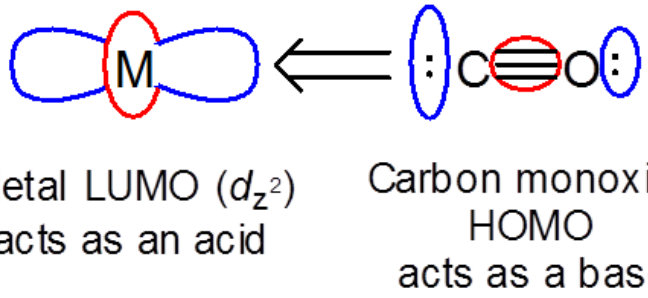


Notice how the frontier orbital approach even explains the displacement of the chloride leaving group. The donation of electrons from the hydroxide HOMO populates the antibonding CH_3Cl LUMO, breaking the C-Cl bond.

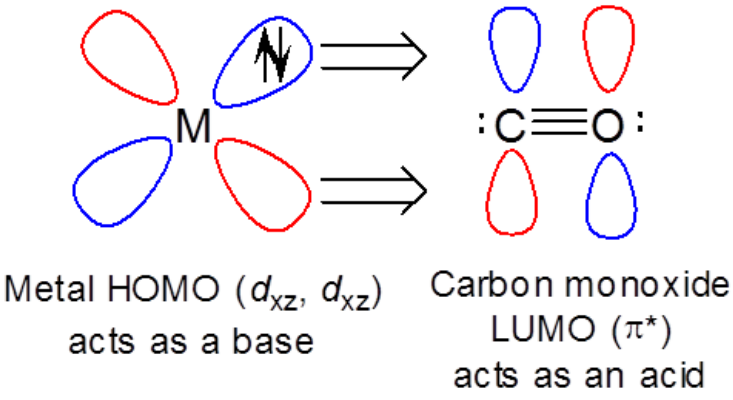
With the frontier orbital approach, it becomes apparent that pericyclic reactions are Lewis acid-base reactions. For example, in the Diels-Alder reaction, the dienophile acts as a Lewis base and the diene as a Lewis acid.



The orbital interactions involved in a given reaction can include both reactants acting as both an acid and base. In these cases the HOMO of each reactant interacts with the LUMO of the other. A good example of this involves Π-type interactions between a metal ion with occupied *d* orbitals and a pi-acceptor ligand. The ligand acts as a base and the metal as an acid to give a M-CO single bond:

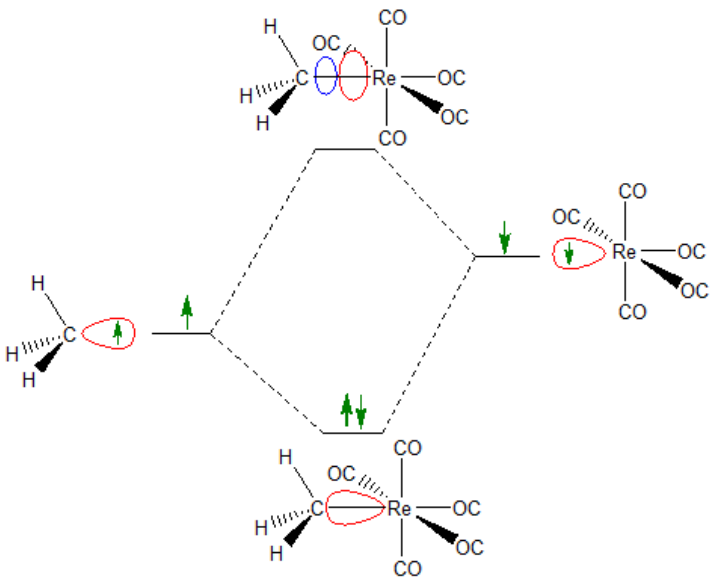


However, the metal can also act as a base towards the ligand LUMO (π^*) orbitals.



The frontier orbital concept can also be used to describe interactions between one or more singly occupied frontier orbitals. In fact, when approximate molecular orbital diagrams are being constructed, it can often be helpful to focus on one or two particularly instructive interactions. In these cases, it is sometimes convenient to think about a chemical bond as involving the formation of bonding and antibonding interactions between singly occupied frontier orbitals on different molecular fragments. For instance, when thinking about the chemistry of $CH_3Re(CO)_5$ it can sometimes be helpful to think about the C-Re bond as arising from the interaction between a singly-occupied sp^3 type orbital on a CH_3 group and a singly occupied d^2sp^3 orbital on

the Re.



In introducing singly occupied orbitals, the frontier orbital concept formally handles interactions that the Lewis acid-base concept does not, since Lewis acid-base behavior is formally confined to the acceptance and donation of electron *pairs*.

This page titled 5.8: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital. is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

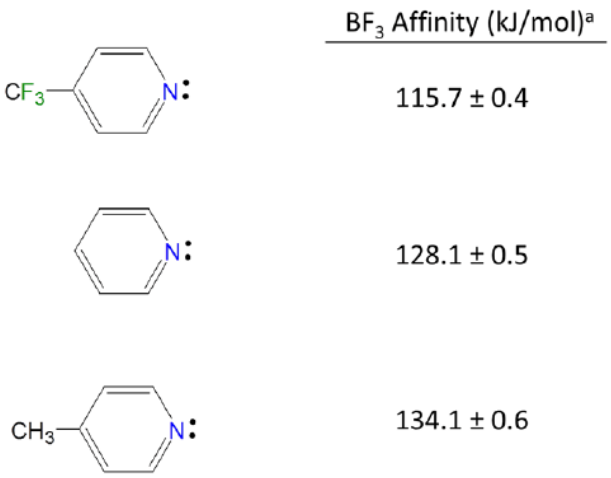
- 6.4.1: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital. by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.9: All other things being equal, electron withdrawing groups tend to make Lewis acids stronger and bases weaker while electron donating groups tend to make Lewis bases stronger and acids weaker

The electrons donated from a Lewis base to a Lewis acid in a Lewis acid-base reaction are donated and accepted at particular atomic centers. For instance, the formation of an adduct between ammonia and BF_3 involves the donation of the lone pair on the ammonia nitrogen atom to the Lewis acid site on BF_3.



Because Lewis acid-base reactions involve electron donation and acceptance at particular sites, substituent groups which alter the electron density at a site through inductively donating or withdrawing electron density will affect the Lewis acid-base properties of that site. For instance, the BF_3 affinities of 4-substituted pyridines increase slightly as the substituent on the aromatic ring is changed from electron donating Me to electron withdrawing CF_3.



a) Data from Laurence, C.; Gal, J.-F. o., *Lewis basicity and Affinity Scales: Data and Measurement. John Wiley: Chichester, West Sussex, U.K., 2010; pp. 91-101.*

Substituent inductive effects are much as one might predict. Since Lewis bases donate electron pairs and Lewis acids accept them:

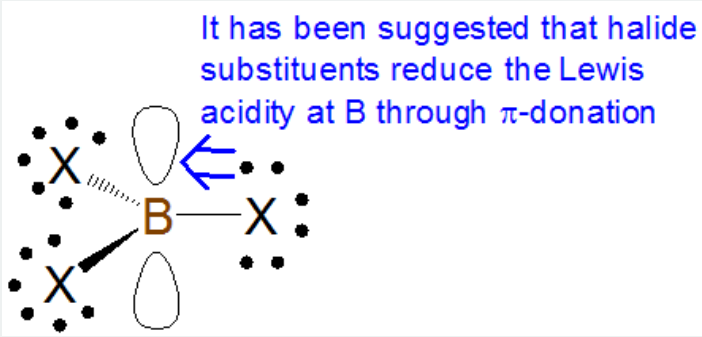
- electron withdrawing substituents tend to decrease the Lewis basicity of basic sites while electron donating substituents increase site Lewis basicity by making them more electron rich.
- electron withdrawing substituents increase the Lewis acidity of acidic sites by making those sites more electron deficient while electron donating substituents tend to decrease Lewis acidity by making sites less electron deficient.

Nevertheless it can be difficult to predict substituent-based trends in Lewis acidity and basicity by inductive effects alone. This is because inductive effects are modest and often exists in competition with other substituent effects, such as

- Steric effects, discussed in section 6.4.7
- Hardness effects, discussed in section 6.6
- π-donation and acceptance effects, which can increase or decrease electron density at a given site as well as create an energy barrier for any structural distortions that might occur upon adduct formation.

Avoid misconceptions about the impact ofπ donation and acceptance on Lewis acid-base affinity

As with σ-based induction effects, π-donation tends to increase Lewis basicity and decrease Lewis acidity while π-withdrawal tends to decrease Lewis basicity and increase Lewis acidity. However, care needs to be taken in assessing the effect of π -donation effects on Lewis acidity and basicity. For example, some textbooks claim that the Lewis acidity of boron trihalides is dominated by the reduction of boron acidity through π-donation from the halide substituents:

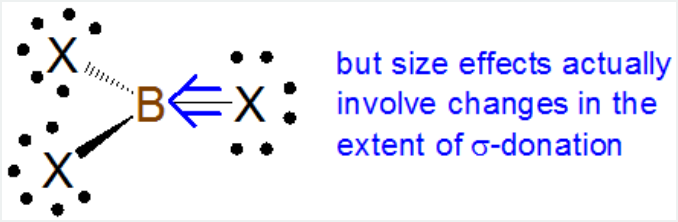


According to this explanation, the extent of this π-donation decreases down the halogen group as the boron-halogen bond distance decreases. This is consistent with the observed trend in Lewis acidity of the boron trihalides towards most bases, which runs counter to that suggested by inductive effects alone:

$$BI_3 > BBr_3 > BCl_3 >> BF_3$$

However, computational work suggests that this explanation is incorrect, since

- atomic size effects are important mainly for substituents in which the connected atom is in row 3+ or higher;
- atomic size effects mainly involve changes in the extent of σ-overlap. In other words, the larger halogens are less able to reduce the electron deficiency at the boron center through σ interactions while π-interactions play little or no role.



References:

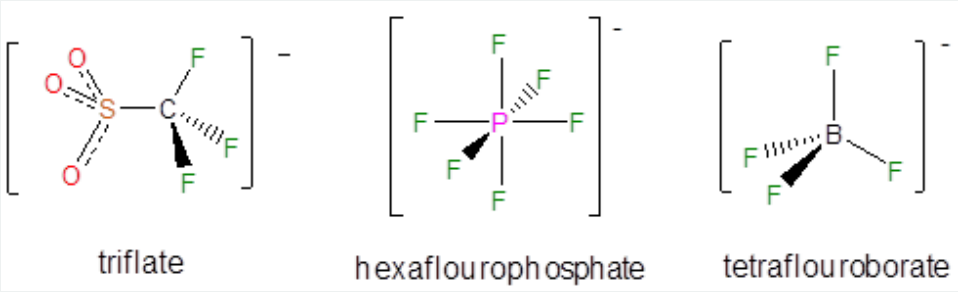
1. Plumley, J. A.; Evanseck, J. D., Periodic Trends and Index of Boron Lewis Acidity. *The Journal of Physical Chemistry A* 2009, 113 (20), 5985-5992.

2. Jupp, A. R.; Johnstone, T. C.; Stephan, D. W., Improving the Global Electrophilicity Index (GEI) as a Measure of Lewis Acidity. *Inorganic Chemistry* 2018, 57 (23), 14764-14771.

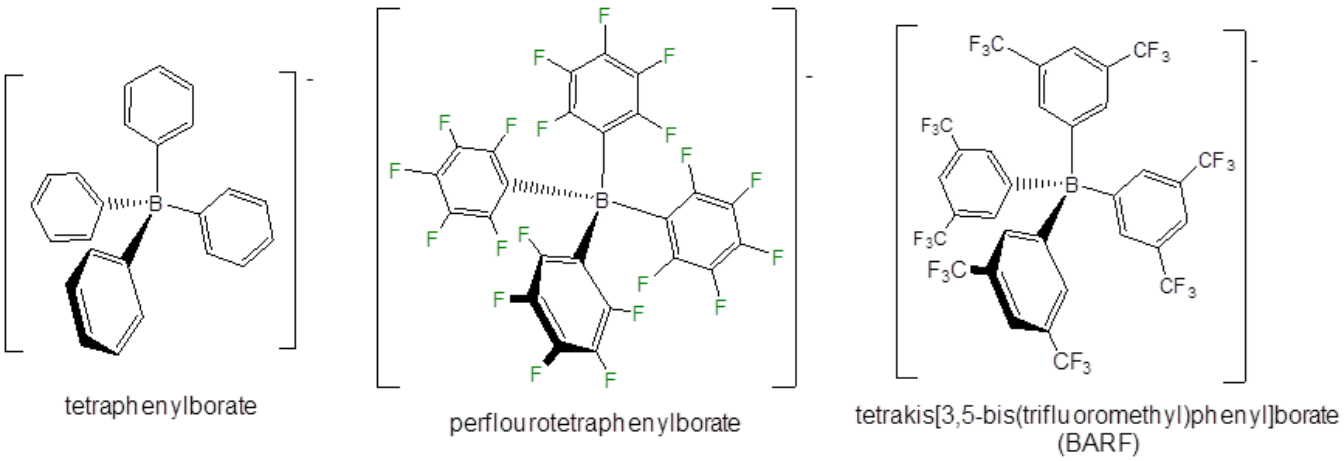
The conjugate bases of many Brønsted superacids have electron-withdrawing substituents that make them such poor Lewis bases that they are useful as noncoordinating anions.

The nonreactivity of Brønsted superacids' conjugate bases towards hydrogen ions is often mirrored in nonreactivity towards other Lewis Acids/electrophiles, most notably metals. This makes these substances useful as inert or noncoordinating ions, although since all are reactive towards suitably electrophilic centers, they are perhaps better understood as weakly coordinating.

A number of noncoordinating anions are commonly used in synthetic and other applications. The conjugate base of perchloric acid, perchlorate, was a common noncoordinating inert anion in classical coordination chemistry and continues to be used widely in electrochemistry. In contrast, the conjugate bases of triflic acid, hexafluoroboric acid, and tetrafluoroboric acid are now more commonly used as counterions for isolating reactive cations.



Even less reactive noncoordination anions include derivatives of tetraphenylborate, particularly those with electron withdrawing substituents.



Other classes of noncoordinating ions include fluoroantimonate clusters, derivatives of the carborane anion ($CB_{11}H_{11}^-$), and fluorinated aluminum tetraalkoxides.

References

Engesser, T. A.; Lichtenthaler, M. R.; Schleep, M.; Krossing, I., Reactive p-block cations stabilized by weakly coordinating anions. *Chemical Society reviews* **2016**, *45 (4)*, 789-899.

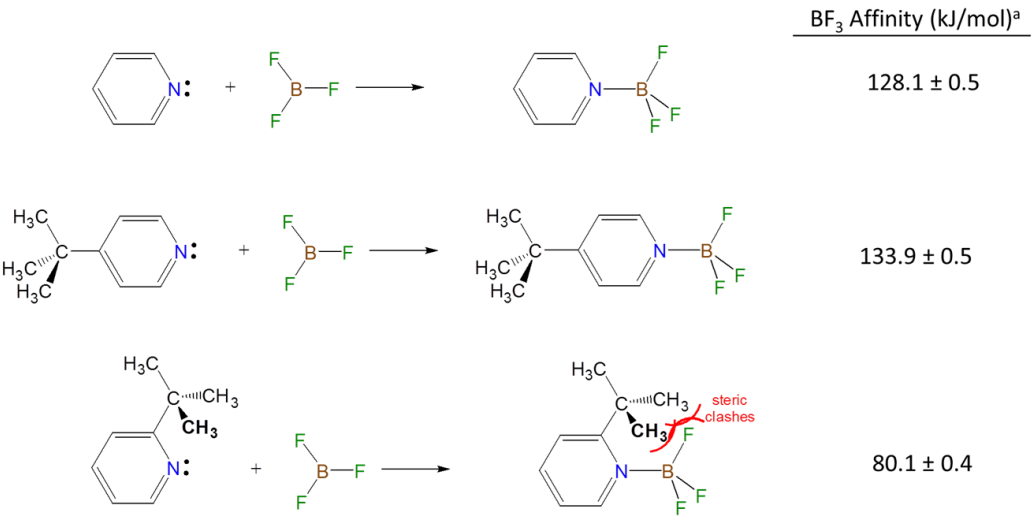
This page titled 5.9: All other things being equal, electron withdrawing groups tend to make Lewis acids stronger and bases weaker while electron donating groups tend to make Lewis bases stronger and acids weaker is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.4.2: All other things being equal, electron withdrawing groups tend to make Lewis acids stronger and bases weaker while electron donating groups tend to make Lewis bases stronger and acids weaker by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct.

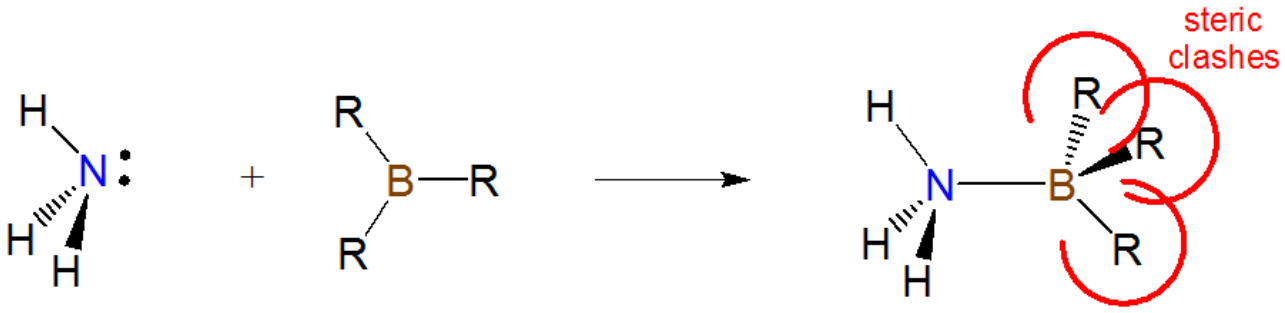
Steric effects can influence the ability of a Lewis acid or base to form adducts by introducing:

- **front strain (F-strain)** whereby bulky groups make it difficult for the Lewis acid and Lewis base centers to approach and interact.



a) Data from Laurence, C.; Gal, J.-F. o., *Lewis basicity and Affinity Scales: Data and Measurement. John Wiley: Chichester, West Sussex, U.K., 2010; pp. 91-101.*

- **back strain (B-strain)** associated with steric interactions that do not directly impede the Lewis acid and base centers from interacting but instead occur as the acid and base rearrange upon adduct formation. For instance, when trivalent boron compounds form adducts with amines, the boron center changes from a more open trigonal geometry to a more hindered tetrahedral one:



- **internal strain (I-strain)** is also associated with the geometry changes incident on adduct formation. However, while B-strain involves direct steric clashes that occur on adduct formation, I-strain is the strain involved in deforming bond and torsional angles away from more stable local geometries. Thus it is more important for Lewis base centers embedded in rings or clusters.

References

1. Alder, R. W., Strain effects on amine basicities. *Chemical Reviews* 1989, 89 (5), 1215-1223.

This page titled 5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct. is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.4.7: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct. by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.11: Hard and Soft Acids and Bases

Origin of the Hard-Soft Acid-Base Principle

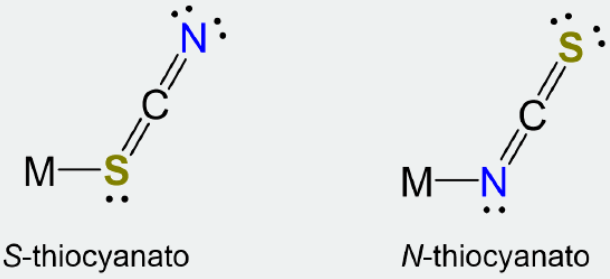
One of the strengths of the Lewis acid-base concept is the readiness with which it illuminates the role that covalent and electrostatic interactions in acid base behavior, specifically through its ability to explain chemical interactions in terms of frontier orbitals and the interactions between charged groups as electrons are donated from a base to an acid. However, simply acknowledging the presence of such interactions does little to illuminate the degree to which each mode of explanation best explains the bonding in a given system? To what extent is a given adduct better described as held together by covalent bonds as opposed to ionic ones - *e.g.* better described as a molecule rather than an ion pair? Moreover, does it even matter, given that the orbitals of quantum mechanics result from the combination of electrons' wavelike behavior with their electrostatic attraction to nuclei in either case?[1] These questions and more are addressed by one of the most important conceptual tools in contemporary inorganic chemistry, the Hard-Soft acid-base principle.

The **Hard-Soft acid-base principle (HSAB principle)** stems from the recognition that some Lewis acids and bases seem to have a natural affinity for one another.* Consider the following:

- Some metals are commonly found in nature as salts of chloride or as oxide ores while others are found in combination with sulfur. Geochemists even use the Goldschmidtt classification scheme to classify the halide and oxide formers as lithophiles and the sulfide formers as chalcophiles.
- In living systems small highly charged metals ions like Fe^{3+} are usually found bound to N and O atoms while larger metals with lower charges such as Zn^{2+} are often found attached to at least one S atom. Similarly, metals prefer to bind to one coordination site over the other when forming complexes with ambidentate ligands. The most well-known instances involve complexes of cyanate and thiocyanate, which can coordinate metals through either the N or chalcogen atom. For instance, Cu^{2+} and Zn^{2+} form *N*-thiocyanato complexes in species like $[Cu(NCS)_2(py)_2]$ and $[Zn(NCS)_4]^{2-}$ while their larger cogeners Au^{3+} and Hg^{2+} preferentially forms *S*-thiocyanato complexes, giving species like $[Hg(SCN)_4]^{2-}$.

Ambidentate ligands

Ambidentate ligands possess multiple coordination sites through which a metal may bind. For instance, thiocyanate may coordinate metals (M) at either the S or N to give *S*-thiocyanato or *N*-thiocyanato complexes.



S-thiocyanato *N*-thiocyanato

- The solubility trends for the alklai metal halides and silver halides are opposite, even though both involve salts of formula M^+X^- (salts can be thought of as involving Lewis acid-base adduct formation between the anions and cations). Specifically, although the silver halides are all relatively insoluble in water, the very modest solubility they possess follows the order:

$$X = F >> Cl > Br > I \text{ (for the solubility of AgX)}$$

In contrast, the much more ample solubility of the alkali metal halides** follows the opposite order. For example, the order for the lithium halides is

$$X = F << Cl < Br << I \text{ (for the solubility of LiX)}$$

Notes

1. Albeit suitably fudged through such niceties as the Aufbau principle and other approximations.

* Despite the fruitfulness of this observation, in general it is important to reduce the potential for observer bias by checking observations like these against compounds reported in the chemical literature and databases like the Inorganic Crystal Structure and Cambridge Crystallographic Databases.

** These are very soluble in water, to the point where some solutions are perhaps better described as solutions of water in the halide.

† This can be predicted based on the relative hardness of BF_3, BR_3, and BH_3 in the list of hard and soft acids. However, for those of you who may be confused as to why H is considered a better electron donor for the purposes of softening a Lewis acid center while alkyl groups are better electron donors for the purposes of stabilizing carbocations in organic chemistry, the dominant effect is the lower electronegativity of H relative to carbon (in CH_3). The effect of electron donation due to hyperconjugation isn't as great for thermodynamically stable bases like BX_3/BR_3.

This page titled 5.11: Hard and Soft Acids and Bases is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.6: Hard and Soft Acids and Bases by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.12: Hard-Hard and Soft-Soft preferences may be explained and quantified in terms of electrostatic and covalent and electronic stabilization on the stability of Lewis acid-base adducts

The Hard Soft Acid Base Principle is a Conceptual Tool for Thinking About Patterns of Lewis Acid-Base Reactivity

The explanation of the trends in metal distribution, halide salt solubility, and preferred metal coordination patterns is rooted in Arland, Chatt, and Davies' observation that *Lewis acids and bases could be classified into two groups based on their propensity to form stable compounds with one another* (*e.g.* acids in a class tend to form more stable adducts with bases in the same class than they did with bases in the other).[1] Arland, Chatt, and Davies somewhat boringly termed these groups class a and class b but today they are known by Ralph Pearson's name for them. Pearson called the class a acids and bases hard and class b acids and bases soft. These terms reflect how "soft" these substance's electron clouds are towards distortion or, in other words, their polarizability (Figure 5.12.1). Pearson terms acids and bases which are relatively polarizable **soft** and those which are difficult to polarize **hard.**

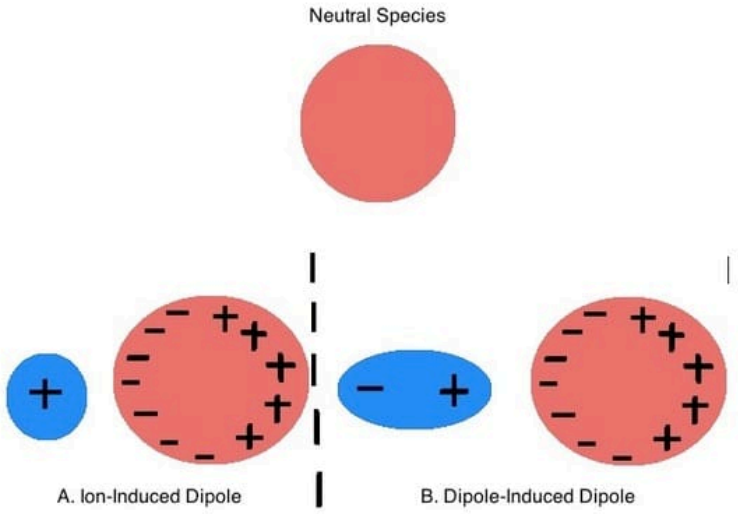


Figure 5.12.1: Polarizability refers to the ease with which a substance's electron cloud may be distorted under the action of an electric field. A fragment's polarizability determines the degree to which its electron cloud is distorted by A.) an Ion and B.) a polar molecule to induce a dipole moment. The figure is taken from (and the caption expanded from) Cox, Kelly and Dana Reusser "Polarizability"

Recognizing Hard and Soft Acids and Bases

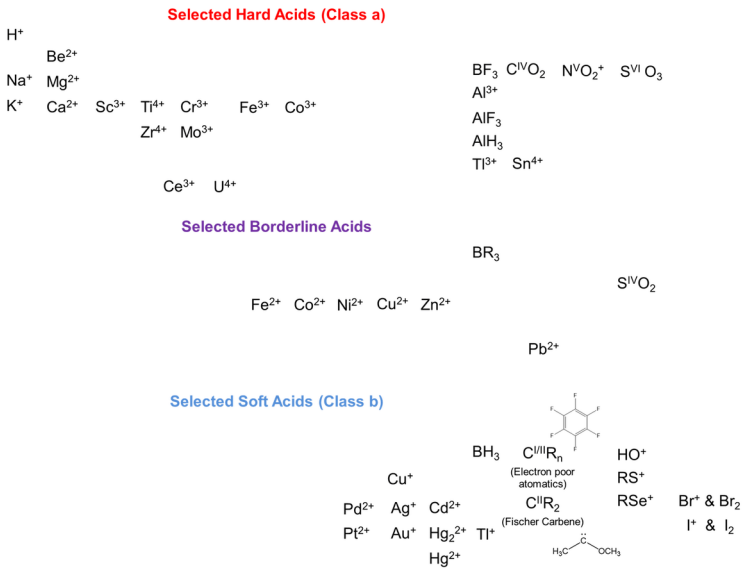
Hard acids and bases come in two varieties:

1. hard acid and base sites that possess few valence electrons and for which polarization therefore involves distorting core electrons, which are difficult to distort because they are close to the nucleus and experience a high nuclear charge. The most common examples of such substances are Lewis acid hard acids towards the left of the periodic table.
2. hard acid and base sites with a high charge density (highly charged relative to size) and/or which are electron deficient. In these cases polarization involves distorting electrons that already experience strong unshielded electrostatic interactions.

Soft acids and bases also come in two varieties

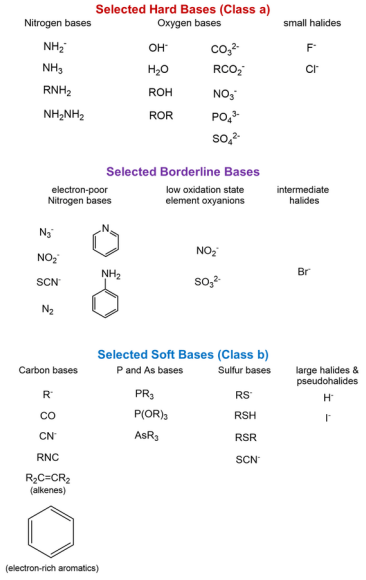
1. soft acids and bases which posses many valence electrons and so are more readily polarized. In consequence, all other things being equal, soft acids and bases are more likely to be found towards the middle or right of the periodic table.
2. soft acids and bases with little charge density and/or which are relatively electron rich.

Note that the hard-soft classification should not be thought of as if all hard acids and bases are equally hard and all soft acids and bases equally soft. There is a graduation in hardness and softness and a number of intermediate acids and bases which do not fit neatly in either category. With this caveat in mind, representative **hard, soft, and borderline acids** are given below. Notice how they illustrate the trends just outlined.



As expected, hard acids tend to be found towards the left side of the periodic table and involve higher oxidation states and/or electron donating substituents while soft acids are more common to the right of the periodic table and involve lower oxidation states and/or electron donating substituents.

Illustrative hard, soft, and borderline bases are given below. Again, notice how these substances illustrate the general trends.



Qualitative Estimation of the Relative Hardness and Softness of Lewis Acids and Bases

As can be seen from the examples above, **hard acids are relatively electron-poor and hard bases electron-rich** since they have comparatively

- small frontier orbitals, reflective of their relatively small atom/ion/fragment sizes
- high (for acids) or low (for bases) oxidation states on the base atom, reflected in a large positive formal charge (for acids) or negative formal charge (for bases)
- low polarizability, due to loss or gain of substantial numbers of electrons, or the localization of
  - positive charge on an electropositive element or an atom bearing electron-withdrawing substituents
  - negative charge on an electronegative element or an atom bearing electron-donating substituents

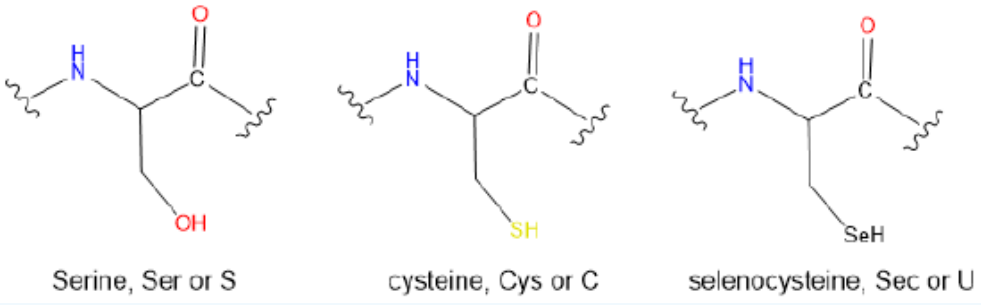
In contrast to hard acids and bases, **soft acids are relatively electron-rich and soft bases larger and more electron poor** since they have comparatively

- large frontier orbitals, reflective of their relatively large atom/ion/fragment sizes
- low oxidation states, often resulting in small or nonexistent atomic charges
- high polarizability, as might be expected of species in which electron-electron repulsions are lower and electrons are spread over a large volume. Sometimes this is indicated by
  - positive charge on an electronegative element or an atom bearing electron-donating substituents
  - negative charge on an electropositive element or an atom bearing electron-withdrawing substituents

Exercise 5.12.1

Rank the acids or bases in each set in increasing order of expected hardness.

a. Cr^{2+} and Cr^{3+}
b. H^+, Cs^+, and Tl^+
c. SCN^- (acting as a base at N) and SCN^- (acting as a base at S)
d. AlF_3, AlH_3, $AlMe_3$
e. The side chains of the following proteinogenic amino acids



Answer available at the end of this section.

The Hard-Soft Acid-Base Principle (HSAB Principle)

The **Hard-Soft acid-base principle (HSAB Principle) explains patterns in Lewis acid-base reactivity in terms of a *like reacts with like preference***. Both thermodynamically and kinetically, hard acids prefer hard bases and soft acids soft bases. Specifically,

- Thermodynamically, hard acids form stronger acid-base complexes with hard bases while soft acids form stronger complexes with soft bases.

- Kinetically, hard acids/electrophiles react more quickly with hard bases/nucleophiles while soft acids/electrophiles react more quickly with soft bases/neucleophiles.

Applications of the HSAB principle include

1. Predicting the equilibrium or speed of *Lewis acid-base metathesis and displacement reactions*. In a Lewis acid-base **metathesis reaction** the acids and bases swap partners

$$\mathrm{A_1 : B_1 + A_2 : B_2 \overset{k_1,\, K_{eq}}{\rightleftharpoons} A_1 : B_2 + A_2 : B_1}$$

For example, the equilibrium position of the metathesis reaction between TlF and $\mathrm{K_2S}$ favors the products:

$$\mathrm{2\,TlF + H_2S \rightleftharpoons Tl_2S + 2\,KF}$$

consistent with the HSAB's hard-hard and soft-soft preference.



The HSAB principle also allows for prediction of the position of displacement reactions, in which a Lewis acid or base forms an adduct using a base or acid from an existing Lewis acid-base complex. In these reactions, the displacement of acid or base from the reactant complex may be thought of as a sort of metathesis reaction, one in which in the unbound acid or base switches places with one in the complex. For example, the reaction between HI and methylmercury cation

$$\mathrm{HI + HgSCH_3^+ \rightleftharpoons CH_3SHgI + H^+}$$

involves displacement of an iodide from HI to give $\mathrm{CH_3HgI}$. The position of the equilibrium favors $\mathrm{CH_3HgI}$ since both $\mathrm{CH_3Hg^+}$ and $\mathrm{I^-}$ are soft, while $\mathrm{H^+}$ is a hard acid.



Exercise 5.12.2

Predict the position of equilibrium for the following reaction.

$$\mathrm{Fe_2O_3 + 3\,Ag_2S \rightleftharpoons Fe_2S_3 + 3\,Ag_2O}$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.12.3

Predict whether K for the following equilibria will be <<1, ~1, or >>1.

a. $\mathrm{2\,HF + (CH_3Hg)_2S \rightleftharpoons 2\,CH_3HgF + H_2S}$
b. $\mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+ + 2\,PH_3 \rightleftharpoons Ag(PH_3)_2^+ + 2\,NH_3}$
c. $\mathrm{Ag(PH_3)_2^+ + 2\,H_3B{-}SH_2 \rightleftharpoons 2\,H_3B{-}PH_3 + Ag(SH_2)_2^+}$
d. $\mathrm{H_3B{-}NH_3 + F_3B{-}SH_2 \rightleftharpoons H_3B{-}SH_2 + F_3B{-}NH_3}$

Answer available at the end of this section.

2. Predicting the relative strengths of a given set of *Lewis acids or bases towards a particular substrate*. Consider, for example, the relative strengths of a BH_3, BMe_3, and BF_3 towards group 15 hydrides like NH_3, PH_3, and AsH_3. Of the boranes listed, the hardest acid BF_3 is the strongest acid towards the hard base NH_3 while BH_3 is the strongest towards AsH_3.[†]

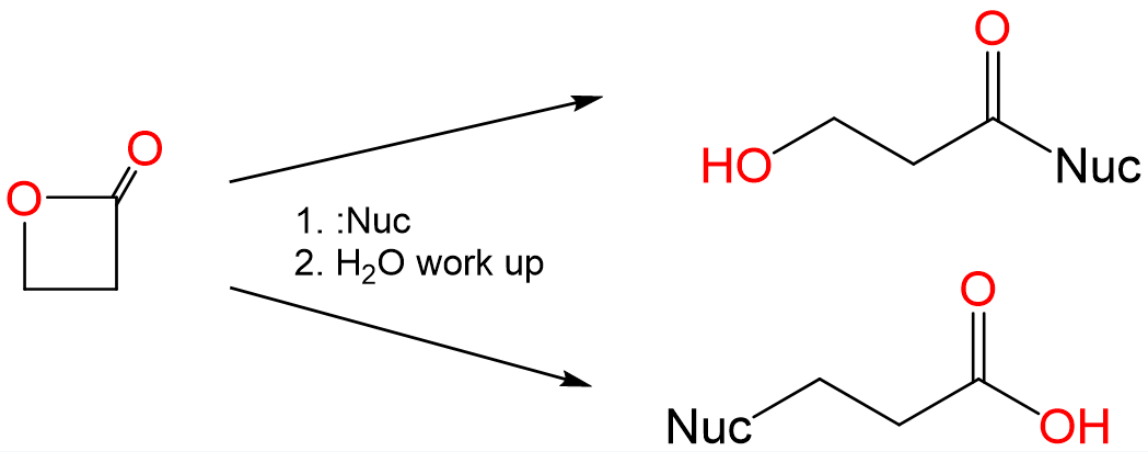
Exercise 5.12.4

Which acid will form the most stable complex with CO: BH_3, BF_3, or BMe_3?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.12.5

When lactones react with nucleophiles, they can undergo ring opening reactions to give either an alcohol or a carboxylic acid, as shown for propiolactone below:



In the reaction above, sterically unhindered alkoxides give one product and sterically unhindered thioalkoxides the other. Explain why this is the case and predict the products of the reaction between propiolactone and the sodium salts of ethoxide and thioethoxide.

Answer available at the end of this section.

The theoretical interpretation of the hard-soft acid-base principle is that hard-hard preferences reflect superior electrostatic stabilization while soft-soft preferences reflect superior covalent stabilization.

The hard-hard and soft-soft preferences in Lewis acid-base interactions reflect that

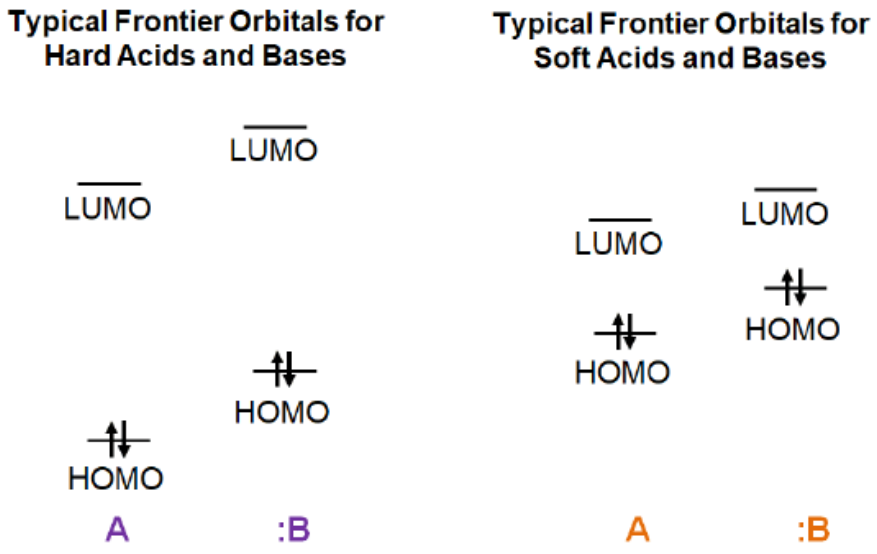
- The lone pair of a hard base is strongly stabilized electrostatically by a hard acid.
- The lone pair of a soft base is strongly stabilized by forming a covalent bond with a soft acid.
- The lone pair of a hard or soft base is comparatively weakly stabilized by an acid opposite to it in hardness or softness since the overall electrostatic and covalent stabilization of the adduct is comparatively weak.

To see why this is the case it is helpful to divide the contributions to the interaction energy between an acid and a base as follows:

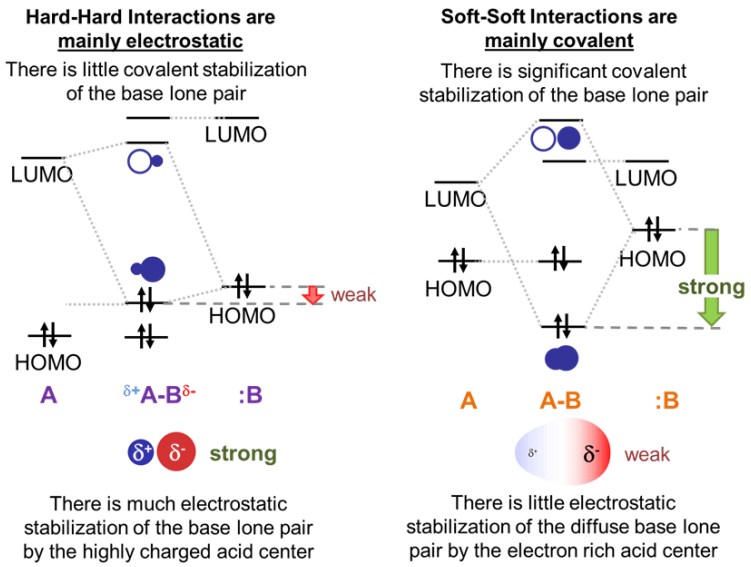
Interaction Energy = Electrostatic attractions and repulsions of partial atomic charges (Ionic term) + Interactions between filled orbitals on one fragment and unfilled orbitals on the other (Covalent term) + Electrostatic repulsions between filled orbitals on the two fragments (Steric term)

Of the three contributions to the interaction energy, only the ionic and covalent terms directly relate to the hardness of the interacting acid and base. One approach to thinking about how hardness influences the ionic and covalent contributions is to consider the frontier orbitals involved in the acid-base interaction. This is sometimes done through the use of the Salem-Klopman equation,[1,*] although in the treatment which follows a more qualitative approach will be employed.

Both hard acids and bases will have comparatively low energy HOMO levels and high energy LUMO levels, with a correspondingly high HOMO-LUMO gap. In contrast, soft acids and bases will have comparatively high-energy HOMO levels and low-energy LUMO levels, giving a comparatively smaller HOMO-LUMO gap.



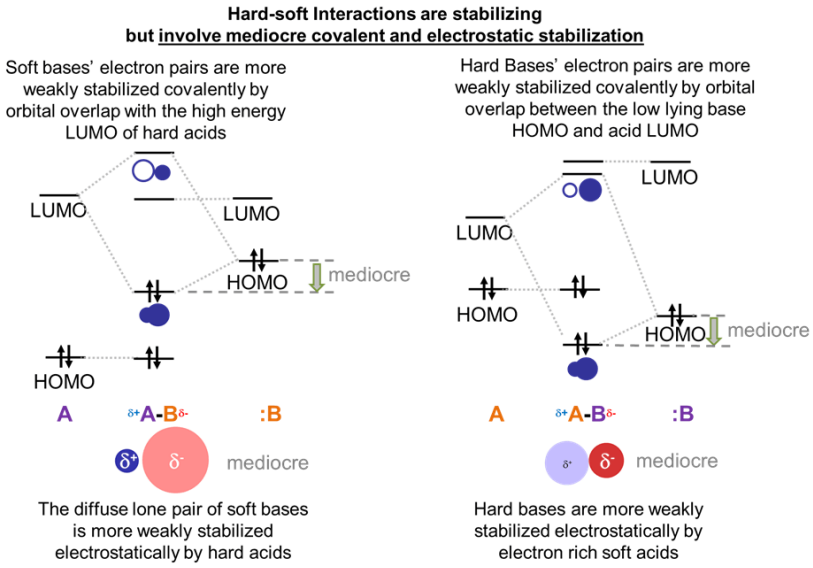
Given this, consider the frontier orbital interactions involved in the formation of an acid-base complex for the possible cases, as illustrated schematically below.



The large gap in energy between hard bases' highly stabilized HOMO lone pairs and the high energy LUMO of hard acids ensures that in **hard acid-hard base adducts the dominant stabilizing interaction will involve electrostatic attraction between the base lone pair and the electropositive Lewis acid center**. Fortunately, since the electron clouds in hard bases are relatively dense and electron rich while hard Lewis acids are highly charged and small, these electrostatic interactions are strong.

In contrast, in **soft acid-soft base adducts, the dominant stabilizing interaction will be covalent.** This is because the small gap in energy between a soft base HOMO and soft acid LUMO enables the formation of a well-stabilized bonding orbital with significant electron density between the acid and base.

The orbitals' interactions between hard acids and soft bases and soft acids and hard bases are intermediate between the hard acid-hard base and soft acid-soft base cases.



This means that the adducts are stable relative to free acid and base – just not as well stabilized as in the hard acid and hard base case. In the case of hard acids and soft bases the hard acids are less able to stabilize the soft bases' relatively diffuse electron pair electrostatically and there isn't as much covalent stabilization as in adducts of soft acids and bases due to the hard acid's high energy.

References

1. Ahrland, S.; Chatt, J.; Davies, N. R., The relative affinities of ligand atoms for acceptor molecules and ions. Quarterly Reviews, Chemical Society 1958, 12 (3), 265-276.

2. Pearson, R. G., Hard and Soft Acids and Bases. Journal of the American Chemical Society 1963, 85 (22), 3533-3539.

3. Fleming, I., Molecular orbitals and organic chemical reactions. Reference ed.; Wiley: Hoboken, N.J., 2010.

Notes

* Despite the fruitfulness of this observation, in general it is important to reduce the potential for observer bias by checking observations like these against compounds reported in the chemical literature and databases like the Inorganic Crystal Structure and Cambridge Crystallographic Databases.

** These are very soluble in water, to the point where some solutions are perhaps better described as solutions of water in the halide.

† This can be predicted based on the relative hardness of BF_3, BR_3, and BH_3 in the list of hard and soft acids. However, for those of you who may be confused as to why H is considered a better electron donor for the purposes of softening a Lewis acid center while alkyl groups are better electron donors for the purposes of stabilizing carbocations in organic chemistry, the dominant effect is the lower electronegativity of H relative to carbon (in CH_3). The effect of electron donation due to hyperconjugation isn't as great for thermodynamically stable bases like BX_3/BR_3.

†† For more on the Salem-Klopman equation see Fleming, I., Molecular orbitals and organic chemical reactions. Reference ed.; Wiley: Hoboken, N.J., 2010; pp. 138-143.

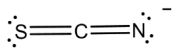
Answers

Exercise 5.12.1

(a) $Cr^{2+} < Cr^{3+}$ All other things being equal, hardness increases with oxidation state.

(b) $Tl^+ < Cs^+ < H^+$ The order reflects Cs^+ and Tl^+'s larger size relative to H^+ (which doesn't possess any electrons that can be polarized anyway) and that Tl^+ still possesses two valence electrons while Cs^+ possesses none.

(c) SCN^- (acting as a base at S) < SCN^- (acting as a base at N). The order reflects the greater electronegativity of N than S and N's possession of a more negative formal charge of -1.



Formal charge 0 0 -1

(d) $AlH_3 < AlMe_3 < AlF_3$. The hardness increases as the substituents on the Lewis acid Al center become less electron donating and more electron withdrawing (and, incidentally, harder bases) as their electronegativity increases in the order $H^- < CH_3^- < F^-$. Note that the order of electron donating ability for H^- and CH_3^- is the opposite observed for carbocations, for which hyperconjugation plays a larger role.

(e) Sec < Cys < Ser. The hardness increases as the electronegativity of the Lewis base chalcogen increases on going from a selenol to a thiol to an alcohol.

Exercise 5.12.2

The equilibrium will favor the reactants (K<1) since the hard-hard and soft-soft interactions in the reactants are more stable than the hard-soft interactions in the products.



Exercise 5.12.3

a. K< < 1 since the reactant adducts are hard-hard and soft-soft while the products involve hard-soft interactions.

b. K>>1 since the reactant complex, diamine silver(I), is a complex of a hard base, NH_3, with the soft acid, Ag^+, while the product is a complex of the same soft acid with the soft base phosphine.

c. K~1 since all the adducts amongst the reactants and products involve soft acids and bases.

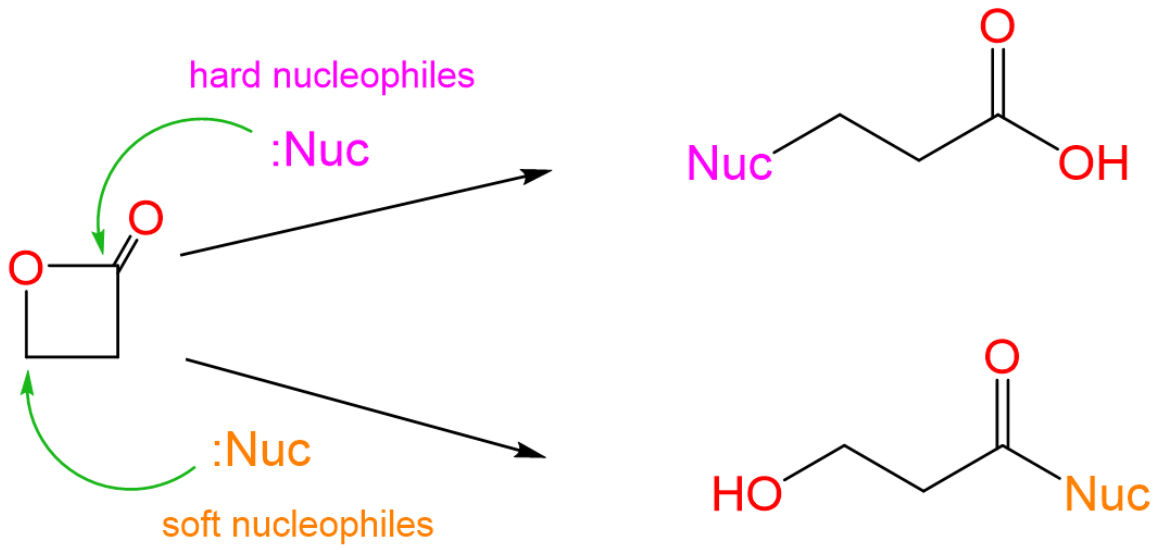
d. K>>1 since BH_3 is a softer acid than BF_3, so it will form a stronger complex with the softer base H_2S while the harder BF_3 forms a stronger complex with the harder base NH_3.

Exercise 5.12.4

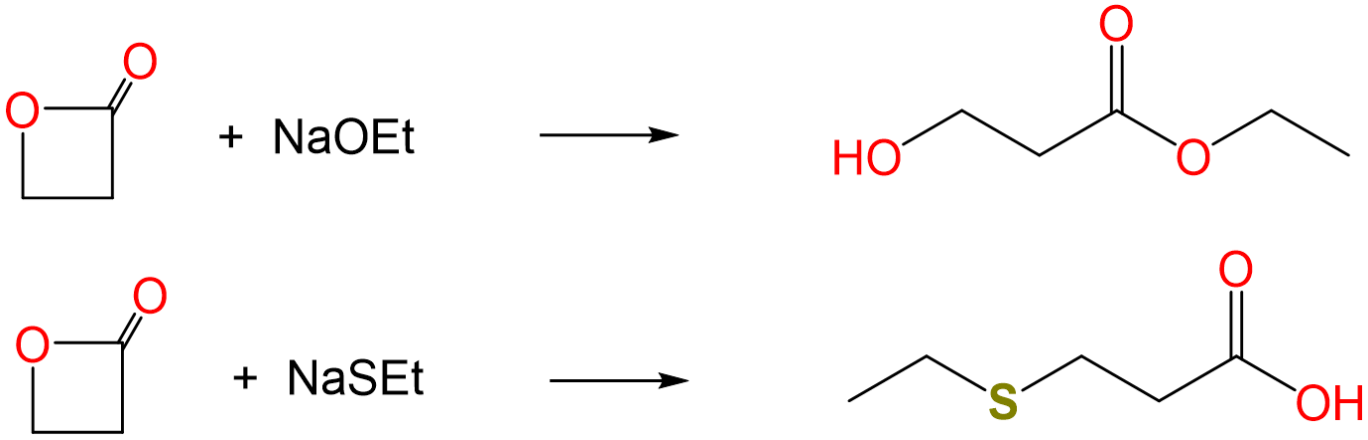
BH_3. Since CO forms complexes primarily through its carbon lone pair, it is a soft base and so will form the strongest complex with the softest Lewis acid.

Exercise 5.12.5

The two reaction products correspond to nucleophilic attack at the lactones' two electrophilic carbon centers. Specifically, the acid is produced by attack at the softer C^{I} center of the CH_2 directly attached to the ester oxygen and the alcohol by nucleophilic attack at the harder C^{III} center of the ester carbonyl.



Consequently, it is reasonable to expect that the harder base ethoxide will nucleophilically attack the harder carbonyl carbon while the softer thioethoxide will attack the softer methylene carbon.



This page titled 5.12: Hard-Hard and Soft-Soft preferences may be explained and quantified in terms of electrostatic and covalent and electronic stabilization on the stability of Lewis acid-base adducts is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.6.2: Hard-Hard and Soft-Soft preferences may be explained and quantified in terms of electrostatic and covalent and electronic stabilization on the stability of Lewis acid-base adducts by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors

Pearson Absolute Hardness is a useful metric of hardness based on orbital energies

The recognition that hard acids and bases possess a large HOMO-LUMO gap suggests that the gap size itself might serve as a useful index of hardness. The basis for this idea may be found by considering Pearson's definition of absolute hardness, η.[1] **Pearson's absolute hardness, η**, is half the second derivative of a species' energy with respect to changes in total number of electrons, N_{e^-}.

$$\text{Pearson's absolute hardness} = \eta = \frac{1}{2}\frac{d^2E}{dN_{e^-}^2}$$

$$(in \;\; eV)$$

and, since acids' and bases' hardness and softness are inversely related, Pearson's absolute softness, σ, is just the inverse of hardness.

$$\text{Pearson's softness} = \frac{1}{\eta}$$

Of these, Pearson's absolute hardness is related to the **Mulliken definition of electronegativity** as the first derivative of a species' energy with respect to changes in total number of electrons.

$$\text{Mulliken electronegativity} = \chi = \frac{dE}{dN_{e^-}}$$

$$(in \;\; eV)$$

Operationally, both the Pearson hardness and Mulliken electronegativity are approximated in terms of the energies associated with unit changes in the number of electrons – *i.e.,* in terms of ionization energies and electronegativities. Specifically,

$$\text{Pearson's absolute hardness} = \eta \approx \frac{IE–EA}{2}$$

$$\text{Mulliken electronegativity} = \chi \approx \frac{IE + EA}{2}$$

where IE and EA are in eV.

The connection between Pearson's absolute hardness/softness and the HOMO-LUMO gap then follows from Koopman's theorem, in which the ionization energy (IE) is just the opposite of the HOMO energy.

$$IE = -E_{HOMO}$$

Similarly, the electron affinity (EA), defined as the opposite of the energy released on absorption of an electron, may be taken as an approximation of the LUMO energy.

$$E_{LUMO} \approx -EA$$

So Pearson's absolute hardness is just half the HOMO-LUMO gap (band gap) size in electron volts:

$$\text{Pearson's absolute hardness} = \eta \approx \frac{E_{LUMO} - E_{HOMO}}{2}$$

where all values are given in eV,

and the Mulliken electronegativity is just the average of the HOMO and LUMO energies (~Fermi energy):

$$Mulliken\ electronegativity, \chi \approx -\frac{E_{LUMO} + E_{HOMO}}{2}$$

$$where\ all\ values\ are\ given\ in\ eV$$

The relationships between the Pearson absolute hardness, Mulliken electronegativity, and HOMO and LUMO energies are depicted schematically for the group 1A monocations in Figure 5.13.1.

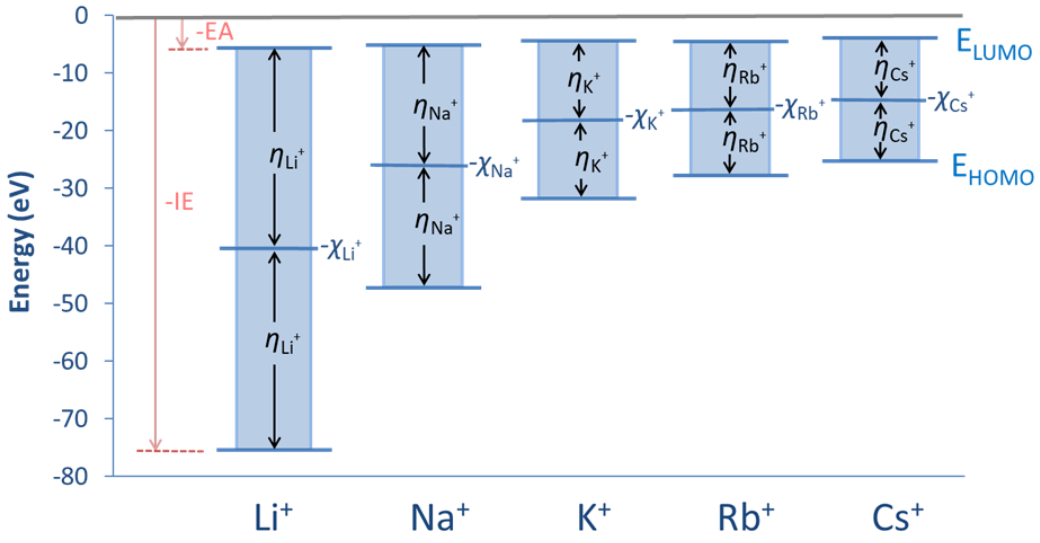


Figure 5.13.1. Relationships between Pearson absolute hardness, Mulliken electronegativity, and HOMO and LUMO energies for the group 1A monocations.

Values of the Pearson hardness and Mulliken electronegativity for several acids and bases are given in Table 5.13.1. The values in the table confirm the expected trends, showing an increase in hardness with size (down a group), with increasing charge, and as substituent electronegativity increases for a series of isolobal ions.

Table 5.13.1: Pearson Absolute Hardness and Related Parameters for Selected Acids and Bases.[2] *Taken from Pearson, R. G., Absolute electronegativity and hardness: application to inorganic chemistry. Inorganic Chemistry 1988, 27 (4), 734-740.*

Species	Ionization Energy, IE or I (eV)	Electron Affinity, EA or A (eV)	Mulliken Electronegativity, χ (eV)	Pearson Absolute Hardness, η (eV)
Selected Acids				
Group 1A monocations				
Li^+	75.64	5.39	40.52	35.12
Na^+	47.29	5.14	26.21	21.08
K^+	31.63	4.34	17.99	13.64
Rb^+	27.28	4.18	15.77	11.55
Cs^+	25.1	3.89	14.5	10.6

Species	Ionization Energy, IE or I (eV)	Electron Affinity, EA or A (eV)	Mulliken Electronegativity, χ (eV)	Pearson Absolute Hardness, η (eV)
Group 11 monocations				
Cu^+	20.29	7.73	14.01	6.28
Ag^+	21.49	7.58	14.53	6.96
Au^+	20.5	9.23	14.9	5.6
Isoelectronic Row 3 Metal Cations				
Na^+	47.29	5.14	26.21	21.08
Mg^{2+}	80.14	15.04	47.59	32.55
Al^{3+}	119.99	28.45	74.22	45.77
Changes with Transition Metal Ion Charge				
Fe^{2+}	30.65	16.18	23.42	7.24
Fe^{3+}	54.8	30.65	42.73	12.08
Co^{2+}	33.50	17.06	25.28	8.22
Co^{3+}	51.3	22.5	42.4	8.9
Boron trihalides				
BF_3	15.81	-3.5	6.2	9.7
BCl_3	11.60	0.33	5.97	5.64
BBr_3	10.51	0.82	5.67	4.85
CO_2	13.8	-3.8	5.0	8.8
CS_2	10.08	0.62	5.35	5.56
Selected Bases				
Group 17 monoanions (taken to be identical to the free atom values; for arguments as to why this is reasonable see Pearson, R. G., Inorg. Chem. 1988, 27 (4), 734-740.)				
F^-	17.42	3.40	10.41	7.01
Cl^-	13.01	3.62	8.31	4.70
Br^-	11.84	3.36	7.60	4.24
I^-	10.45	3.06	6.76	3.70
Group 15 hydrides				
NH_3	10.7	-5.6	2.6	8.2
PH_3	10.0	-1.9	4.1	6.0
Trimethylpnictides				
NMe_3	7.8	-4.8	1.5	6.3
PMe_3	8.6	-3.1	2.8	5.9
$AsMe_3$	8.7	-2.7	3.0	5.7
Group 16 hydrides				

Species	Ionization Energy, IE or I (eV)	Electron Affinity, EA or A (eV)	Mulliken Electronegativity, χ (eV)	Pearson Absolute Hardness, η (eV)
H_2O	12.6	-6.4	3.1	9.5
H_2S	10.5	-2.1	4.2	6.2
Phosphorous trihalides				
PF_3	12.3	-1.0	5.7	6.7
PCl_3	10.2	0.8	5.5	4.7
PBr_3	9.9	1.6	5.6	4.2

Drago-Wayland Acid-Base Parameters allow for estimation of the electrostatic and covalent contributions to the enthalpy of formation of a Lewis acid-base adduct.

Although Pearson hardness values are a useful metric of acids' and bases' hardness, they cannot easily be used to estimate the Lewis acid-base interaction energy. This is not the case for the EC model developed by Drago and Wayland.[3] In the **Drago and Wayland's EC Model,** the enthalpy of formation of an acid-base adduct, AB,

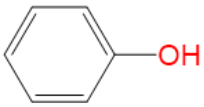
$$A + B \rightleftharpoons AB \qquad \Delta H_{AB\ adduct}$$

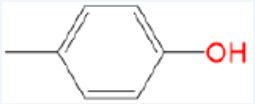
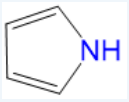
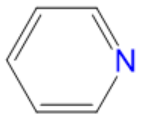
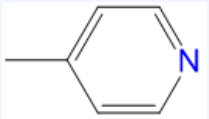
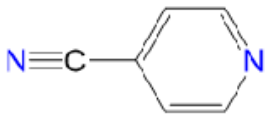
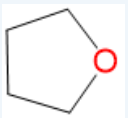
from the acid (A) and base (B) can be calculated as the sum of products of electrostatic (E) and covalent (C) factors that reflect the propensity of the acid and base to engage in strong electrostatic and covalent interactions with one another:

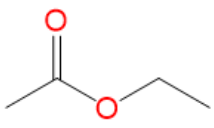
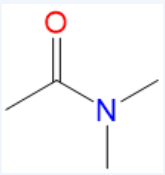
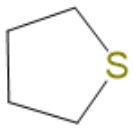
$$-\Delta H_{AB\ adduct} = E_A E_B + C_A C_B$$

where E_A and C_A are the electrostatic and covalent parameters for the acid and E_B and C_B the electrostatic and covalent parameters for the base given in units of kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$. E and C parameters for selected acids and bases are given in Table 5.13.2 .

Table 5.13.2: E and C Parameters for selected Lewis acids and bases according to the ECW model.[4,5] Taken from Vogel, G. C.; Drago, R. S., The ECW Model. Journal of Chemical Education 1996, 73 (8), 701 and Drago, R. S. A modern approach to acid-base chemistry. Journal of Chemical Education 1974, 51 (5), 300 (for BF_3).

Species	E (kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$)	C (kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$)	W (kcal mol^{-1})	C/E
Acids				
I_2	0.5†	2†	0	4
ICl	2.92	1.66	0	0.57
H_2O	1.31	0.78	0	0.59
SO_2	0.51	1.56	0	3.1
$HCCl_3$ (chloroform)	1.56	0.44	0	0.28
$(CH_3)_3COH$	1.07	0.69	0	0.65
$(CF_3)_3COH$	3.06	1.88	-0.87	0.61
	2.27	1.07	0	0.47

Species	E (kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$)	C (kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$)	W (kcal mol^{-1})	C/E
	2.23	1.03	0	0.46
	2.30	1.11	0	0.48
	1.38	0.68	0	0.49
BF_3	1.62	9.88		6.10
$B(CH_3)_3$	2.90	3.60	0	1.2
$Al(CH_3)_3$	8.66	3.68	0	0.43
$Ga(C_2H_5)_3$	6.95	1.48	0	0.21
$In(CH_3)_3$	6.60	2.15	0	0.33
$Zn[N(Si(CH_3)_3)]_2$	2.75	2.32	0	0.84
$Cd[N(Si(CH_3)_3)]_2$	2.50	1.83	0	0.73
Bases				
NH_3	2.31	2.04		0.88
CH_3NH_2	2.16	3.13		1.4
$(CH_3)_2NH$	1.80	4.21		2.3
$(CH_3)_3N$	1.21	5.61		4.6
	1.78	3.54		2.0
	1.81	3.73		2.0
	1.53	2.94		1.9
CH_3CN	1.64	0.71		0.43
$ClCH_2CN$	1.67	0.33		0.20
$CH_3C(O)CH_3$	1.74	1.26		0.72
$(C_2H_5)_2O$	1.80	1.63		0.91
	1.64	2.18		1.3

Species	E (kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$)	C (kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$)	W (kcal mol^{-1})	C/E
 (EtOAc)	1.63	0.95		0.58
	2.35†	1.31		0.56
$(CH_3)_2S$	0.25	3.75		15
$(CH_3CH_2)_2S$	0.24	3.92†		15
	0.26	4.07		16
$(CH_3)_2Se$	0.05	4.24		83
$(CH_3)_2SO$	2.4	1.47		0.61
$(CH_3)_3P$	0.25	5.81		24
$(CH_3O)_3P$	0.13	4.83		37
$(C_6H_5)_3PO$	2.59	1.67		0.64
$(C_6H_5)_3PS$	0.35	3.65		10
C_6H_6	0.70	0.45		0.64

† These values were fixed to parameterize the rest of the E and C parameters.

Trends in the relative values of C and E for the acids and bases in Table 5.13.2 are very roughly consistent with the trends in hardness and softness outlined earlier. However, the parameters suggest that some trends in hardness reflect changes in species' ability to engage in ionic interactions while others reflect changes in species' ability to engage in strong covalent interactions. For example, C_B for the dimethylchalcogenides increases steadily from 1.5 to 4.25 kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$ on going from Me_2O to Me_2Se while E_B decreases from 1.68 to 0.05 kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$, suggesting that electrostatic and covalent factors are both involved in a decrease in base hardness down group 16. However, in the case of phosphines and amines it appears that electrostatic factors are primarily responsible for the decrease in hardness down group 15. On going from Me_3N to Me_3P, C_B only increases slightly from 5.61 to 5.81 kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$ while E_B decreases from 1.21 to 0.25 kcal^{½} mol$^{-½}$ - *i.e.*, to 20% of the Me_3N value.

However, some species tend to have very high values for both E and C, reflecting their ability to engage in strong electrostatic and covalent interactions, while others have small values for both, reflecting their relative stability as free species in solution.

As can be seen by comparing the acids and bases listed in the absolute hardness table (Table 5.13.1) and the EC parameters table (Table 5.13.2). The EC model has primarily been applied to organic and main group organometallic acids and bases. However, a variety of extensions have been proposed that enable its wider applicability.

The simple EC model only includes electrostatic and covalent considerations and thus ignores steric, lattice energy, and other contributions to the interaction energy. Thus it is only useful for analyzing the interaction energies of sterically unhindered adducts in which solvation energy and other contributions to the overall interaction energy are insignificant. However, additional refinements of the model attempt to extend its usefulness by accomodating various factors, such as

- *Steric strain.* Specifically, Hancock and Martell[6] introduced a D parameter to account for any additional steric strain introduced upon adduct formation,* giving

$$-\Delta H_{AB\ adduct} = E_A E_B + C_A C_B - D_A D_B$$

- *Charge transfer upon adduct formation.* As discussed in section 6.4.2, the formation of a Lewis acid-base complex results in a net transfer of electron density from the electron donor (base) to the acceptor (acid). Drago and Wong[7] extended the EC model to include that charge transfer by adding what they called receptance factors that account for the acid's ability to receive electron density (R_A) and transference factors that account for the base's ability to donate electron density (T_B), giving

$$-\Delta H_{AB\ adduct} = E_A E_B + C_A C_B + R_A T_B$$

  This extension of the EC model is called the **electrostatic-covalent-transfer or ECT model**. Notably, it has been applied successfully to adducts involving ions, for which the R_AT_B term can account for as much as 31% of the interaction energy.

- *Any constant energy term, such as the energy needed to cleave a dimer in order to make the Lewis acid (e.g., $Al_2Cl_6 \rightarrow 2AlCl_3$).* Drago and Vogel[4] extended the EC model to accommodate these constant energy terms, which they designated W. The resulting model is called the **ECW model,** for which

$$-\Delta H_{AB\ adduct} = E_A E_B + C_A C_B + W$$

where

$$W = W_A + W_B$$

A simple application of EC and extended EC models is that they allow the enthalpy of adduct formation to be calculated. These enthalpy calculations based on the EC model are consistent with the superior interaction energy of hard-hard and soft-soft interactions compared to hard-soft ones. Consider, for example, the transfer of I_2 between BF_3 and $InMe_3$, H_3N-BF_3, and H_3N-$InMe_3$.

$$H_3N - BF_3 + InMe_3 \rightleftharpoons BF_3 + H_3N - InMe_3$$

Since H_3N is a hard base and BF_3 and $InMe_3$ are harder and softer acids, respectively, the equilibrium is expected to favor the reactant, H_3N-BF_3. Assuming the equilbrium is enthalpically driven, this qualitative analysis is consistent with the expected endothermic enthalpy of the reaction, as may be seen from the calculated enthalpies of adduct formation for both H_3N-BF_3 and H_3N-$InMe_3$.

For H_3N-BF_3:

$$-\Delta H_{H_3N-BF_3} = E_{BF_3}E_{NH_3} + C_{BF_3}C_{NH_3}$$

$$-\Delta H_{H_3N-BF_3} = (1.62)(2.31) + (9.88)(2.04)$$

$$-\Delta H_{H_3N-BF_3} = 3.74\ kcal/mol + 20.1\ kcal/mol = 23.8\ kcal/mol$$

$$\Delta H_{H_3N-BF_3} = -23.8\ kcal/mol$$

For H_3N-$InMe_3$:

$$-\Delta H_{H_3N-InMe_3} = E_{InMe_3}E_{NH_3} + C_{InMe_3}C_{NH_3}$$

$$-\Delta H_{H_3N-InMe_3} = (6.6)(2.31) + (2.15)(2.04)$$

$$-\Delta H_{H_3N-InMe_3} = 15.25\ kcal/mol + 4.39\ kcal/mol = 19.63\ kcal/mol$$

$$\Delta H_{H_3N-InMe_3} = -19.63\ kcal/mol$$

So H_3N-BF_3 is enthalpically favored by -4.2 kcal/mol [=-23.8 kcal/mol - (-19.63 kcal/mol) according to Hess' Law].

In addition to their utility for estimating enthalpies of Lewis acid-base complex formation, EC and related models serve as a

useful tool for estimating the relative importance of ionic, covalent, and steric factors in complex formation. Specifically,

- The relative contributions of ionic and covalent factors can be calculated directly, as from the E and C terms. This can provide insight into why some complexes are more stable than others. Such calculations reveal that the hard-hard adduct H_3N-BF_3 is favored over the hard-soft adduct H_3N-$InMe_3$ because of the strong covalent interaction holding together H_3N-BF_3. The covalent term accounts for 84% of the energy of the H_3N-BF_3 interaction and is largely lost upon formation of H_3N-$InMe_3$, for which it contributes only 22% of the interaction energy. When the electrostatic term is accounted for, it can be seen that the formation of H_3N-$InMe_3$ from H_3N-BF_3 is disfavored, since it would result in a loss of 15.7 kcal/mol of covalent stabilization that would be incompletely compensated for by a gain of 11.5 kcal/mol of electrostatic stabilization.
- The role of other contributions to the bonding in a Lewis acid-base complex may be estimated from the discrepancy between the experimental and EC model calculated stabilization energies. This is because the EC parameters assume sigma bonding and so any deviation between the calculated and experimental enthalpies of complex formation can be attributed to non-sigma contributions.
  - This is done explicitly in extensions of the EC model. For instance, in the case of the Hancock and Martell, ECT, and ECW extensions of the EC model, the contributions of the steric, charge transfer, and constant energy factors (like dimer dissociation) are directly computed in the model.
  - Comparisons of the difference between the energies calculated using ordinary EC parameters and the observed enthalpies has also been used as an estimate of the
    - steric strain energy in strained adducts, which exhibit a less exothermic heat of adduct formation than expected
    - π-backbonding energy in adducts which are capable of such interactions and exhibit a more exothermic heat of formation than expected.[8-10]
  - For examples see (a) Drago, R. S., The interpretation of reactivity in chemical and biological systems with the E and C model. Coordination Chemistry Reviews 1980, 33 (3), 251-277; (b) Drago, R. S.; Bilgrien, C. J., Inductive transfer and coordination of ligands in metal—metal bonded systems. Polyhedron 1988, 7 (16), 1453-1468; (c) Drago, R. S., The question of a synergistic metal-metal interaction leading to .pi.-back-bond stabilization in dirhodium tetrabutyrate adducts. Inorganic Chemistry 1982, 21 (4), 1697-1698.
- The role of electrostatic, covalent, and other contributions to the spectroscopic behavior of Lewis acid-base complexes can be assessed similarly using specialized versions of the ECW or ECT model that allow for calculation of changes in spectroscopic parameters upon adduct formation - *e.g.,* OH stretching frequencies. Details are beyond the scope of this text but may be found in the original literature,[11] for example, Drago, R. S.; Vogel, G. C. *JACS* 1992, 114 (24), 9527-9532; Vogel, G. C.; Drago, R. S., *J. Chem. Educ.* 1996, 73 (8), 701; Drago, R. S.; Wong, N. M., *J. Chem. Educ.* 1996, 73 (2), 123.).

Pearson Softness Parameters have been proposed as a means of calculating the equilibrium constant for formation of a Lewis acid-base adduct, although they are more commonly used to estimate metal toxicity

Pearson also proposed a softness parameter that can be used to estimate the thermodynamics of Lewis acid-base complex formation, this time in the form of the equilibrium constant for

$$A + B \overset{K}{\rightleftharpoons} AB$$

for which Pearson proposed

$$logK = S_A S_B + \sigma_A \sigma_B$$

where S_A and S_B are acid and base parameters related to the strength of the acid-base interaction and σ_A and σ_B are acid and base parameters related to softness. This approach hasn't found as wide an acceptance in studies of chemical reactivity as the Drago-Wayland and absolute hardness parameters. However, because the toxicity of metal ions sometimes depends on their propensity to bind soft Lewis bases in living systems, the softness parameters which Pearson and Mawby subsequently proposed based on the relative energies of metal fluorine and metal iodine bonds[12] have been widely used as a tool for predicting metal ion toxicity.[13]

References

1. Pearson, R. G., Absolute electronegativity and absolute hardness of Lewis acids and bases. *Journal of the American Chemical Society* 1985, 107 (24), 6801-6806.

2. Pearson, R. G., Absolute electronegativity and hardness: application to inorganic chemistry. *Inorganic Chemistry* 1988, 27 (4), 734-740.

3. Drago, R. S.; Wayland, B. B., A Double-Scale Equation for Correlating Enthalpies of Lewis Acid-Base Interactions. *Journal of the American Chemical Society* 1965, 87 (16), 3571-3577.

4. Vogel, G. C.; Drago, R. S., The ECW Model. *Journal of Chemical Education* 1996, 73 (8), 701.

5. Drago, R. S. A modern approach to acid-base chemistry. *Journal of Chemical Education* 1974, 51 (5), 300

6. Hancock, R. D.; Martell, A. E., Hard and Soft Acid-Base Behavior in Aqueous Solution: Steric Effects Make Some Metal Ions Hard: A Quantitative Scale of Hardness-Softness for Acids and Bases. *Journal of Chemical Education* 1996, 73 (7), 654.

7. Drago, R. S.; Wong, N. M., The Role of Electron-Density Transfer and Electronegativity in Understanding Chemical Reactivity and Bonding. *Journal of Chemical Education* 1996, 73 (2), 123.

8. Drago, R. S., The interpretation of reactivity in chemical and biological systems with the E and C model. Coordination Chemistry Reviews 1980, 33 (3), 251-277.

9. Drago, R. S.; Bilgrien, C. J., Inductive transfer and coordination of ligands in metal—metal bonded systems. Polyhedron 1988, 7 (16), 1453-1468.

10. Drago, R. S., The question of a synergistic metal-metal interaction leading to .pi.-back-bond stabilization in dirhodium tetrabutyrate adducts. Inorganic Chemistry 1982, 21 (4), 1697-1698.

11. Drago, R. S.; Vogel, G. C., Interpretation of spectroscopic changes upon adduct formation and their use to determine electrostatic and covalent (E and C) parameters. *Journal of the American Chemical Society* 1992, 114 (24), 9527-9532.

12. Pearson, R. G.; Mawby, R. J. The Nature of Metal-Halogen Bonds in Gutmann, V. *Halogen Chemistry, vol. 3.* Academic Press: London, 1967, pp. 55-84.

13. Kinraide, T. B. Improved Scales for Metal Ion Softness and Toxicity *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 2009, 28 (3), 525-533.

Notes

* More precisely, the D parameters account for the difference in steric strain in the adduct relative to a water adduct of the Lewis acid.

This page titled 5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Stephen M. Contakes.

- 6.6.1: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors by Stephen M. Contakes is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6: CRYSTALLINE SOLIDS

6.1: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids
6.2: The Solid State of Matter
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

This page titled 6: Crystalline Solids is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

6.1: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids

Learning Objectives

- To know the characteristic properties of crystalline and amorphous solids.

With few exceptions, the particles that compose a solid material, whether ionic, molecular, covalent, or metallic, are held in place by strong attractive forces between them. When we discuss solids, therefore, we consider the *positions* of the atoms, molecules, or ions, which are essentially fixed in space, rather than their motions (which are more important in liquids and gases). The constituents of a solid can be arranged in two general ways: they can form a regular repeating three-dimensional structure called a crystal lattice (a regular repeating three-dimensional structure) and thus producing a crystalline solid, or they can aggregate with no particular order, in which case they form an amorphous solid (a solid with no particular structural order; from the Greek *ámorphos*, meaning “shapeless”).

Crystalline solids, or *crystals*, have distinctive internal structures that in turn lead to distinctive flat surfaces, or *faces*. The faces intersect at angles that are characteristic of the substance. When exposed to x-rays, each structure also produces a distinctive pattern that can be used to identify the material (see Section 12.3). The characteristic angles do not depend on the size of the crystal; they reflect the regular repeating arrangement of the component atoms, molecules, or ions in space. When an ionic crystal is cleaved (Figure 12.1.1), for example, repulsive interactions cause it to break along fixed planes to produce new faces that intersect at the same angles as those in the original crystal. In a covalent solid such as a cut diamond, the angles at which the faces meet are also not arbitrary but are determined by the arrangement of the carbon atoms in the crystal.



Crystalline faces. The faces of crystals can intersect at right angles, as in galena (PbS) and pyrite (FeS_2), or at other angles, as in quartz.

Cleavage surfaces of an amorphous solid. Obsidian, a volcanic glass with the same chemical composition as granite (typically $KAlSi_3O_8$), tends to have curved, irregular surfaces when cleaved.



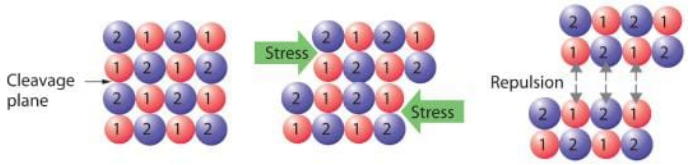
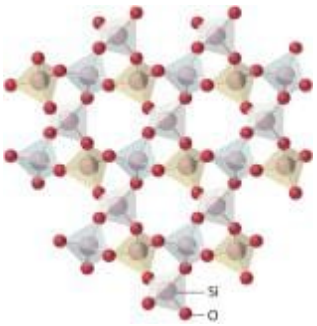


Figure 12.1.1 Cleaving a Crystal of an Ionic Compound along a Plane of Ions Deformation of the ionic crystal causes one plane of atoms to slide along another. The resulting repulsive interactions between ions with like charges cause the layers to separate.

Crystals tend to have relatively sharp, well-defined melting points because all the component atoms, molecules, or ions are the same distance from the same number and type of neighbors; that is, the regularity of the crystalline lattice creates local environments that are the same. Thus the intermolecular forces holding the solid together are uniform, and the same amount of thermal energy is needed to break every interaction simultaneously.

Amorphous solids have two characteristic properties. When cleaved or broken, they produce fragments with irregular, often curved surfaces; and they have poorly defined patterns when exposed to x-rays because their components are not arranged in a regular array. An amorphous, translucent solid is called a glassAn amorphous, translucent solid. A glass is a solid that has been cooled too quickly to form ordered crystals.. Almost any substance can solidify in amorphous form if the liquid phase is cooled rapidly enough. Some solids, however, are intrinsically amorphous, because either their components cannot fit together well enough to form a stable crystalline lattice or they contain impurities that disrupt the lattice. For example, although the chemical composition and the basic structural units of a quartz crystal and quartz glass are the same—both are SiO_2 and both consist of linked SiO_4 tetrahedra—the arrangements of the atoms in space are not. Crystalline quartz contains a highly ordered arrangement of silicon and oxygen atoms, but in quartz glass the atoms are arranged almost randomly. When molten SiO_2 is cooled rapidly (4 K/min), it forms quartz glass, whereas the large, perfect quartz crystals sold in mineral shops have had cooling times of thousands of years. In contrast, aluminum crystallizes much more rapidly. Amorphous aluminum forms only when the liquid is cooled at the extraordinary rate of 4×10^{13} K/s, which prevents the atoms from arranging themselves into a regular array.



The lattice of crystalline quartz (SiO_2). The atoms form a regular arrangement in a structure that consists of linked tetrahedra.

In an amorphous solid, the local environment, including both the distances to neighboring units and the numbers of neighbors, varies throughout the material. Different amounts of thermal energy are needed to overcome these different interactions. Consequently, amorphous solids tend to soften slowly over a wide temperature range rather than having a well-defined melting point like a crystalline solid. If an amorphous solid is maintained at a temperature just below its melting point for long periods of time, the component molecules, atoms, or ions can gradually rearrange into a more highly ordered crystalline form.

Note the Pattern

Crystals have sharp, well-defined melting points; amorphous solids do not.

Summary

Solids are characterized by an extended three-dimensional arrangement of atoms, ions, or molecules in which the components are generally locked into their positions. The components can be arranged in a regular repeating three-dimensional array (a

crystal lattice), which results in a **crystalline solid**, or more or less randomly to produce an **amorphous solid**. Crystalline solids have well-defined edges and faces, diffract x-rays, and tend to have sharp melting points. In contrast, amorphous solids have irregular or curved surfaces, do not give well-resolved x-ray diffraction patterns, and melt over a wide range of temperatures.

Key Takeaway

- Crystalline solids have regular ordered arrays of components held together by uniform intermolecular forces, whereas the components of amorphous solids are not arranged in regular arrays.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

This page titled 6.1: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 3.3: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.2: The Solid State of Matter

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define and describe the bonding and properties of ionic, molecular, metallic, and covalent network crystalline solids
- Describe the main types of crystalline solids: ionic solids, metallic solids, covalent network solids, and molecular solids
- Explain the ways in which crystal defects can occur in a solid

When most liquids are cooled, they eventually freeze and form crystalline solids, solids in which the atoms, ions, or molecules are arranged in a definite repeating pattern. It is also possible for a liquid to freeze before its molecules become arranged in an orderly pattern. The resulting materials are called amorphous solids or noncrystalline solids (or, sometimes, glasses). The particles of such solids lack an ordered internal structure and are randomly arranged (Figure 10.37).

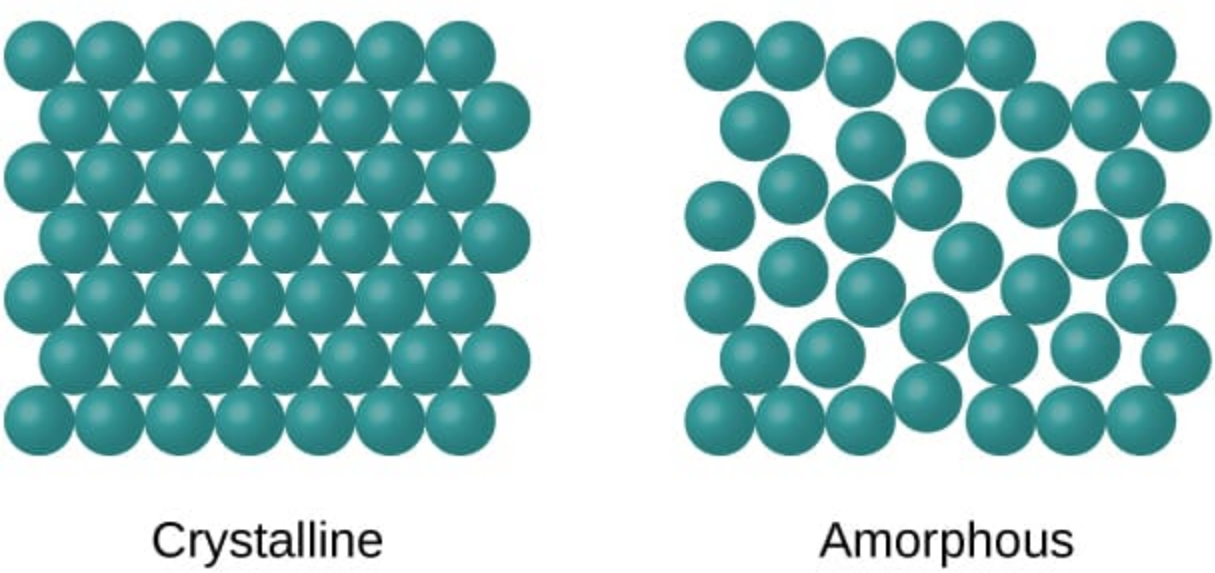


Figure 10.37 The entities of a solid phase may be arranged in a regular, repeating pattern (crystalline solids) or randomly (amorphous).

Metals and ionic compounds typically form ordered, crystalline solids. Substances that consist of large molecules, or a mixture of molecules whose movements are more restricted, often form amorphous solids. For examples, candle waxes are amorphous solids composed of large hydrocarbon molecules. Some substances, such as silicon dioxide (shown in Figure 10.38), can form either crystalline or amorphous solids, depending on the conditions under which it is produced. Also, amorphous solids may undergo a transition to the crystalline state under appropriate conditions.

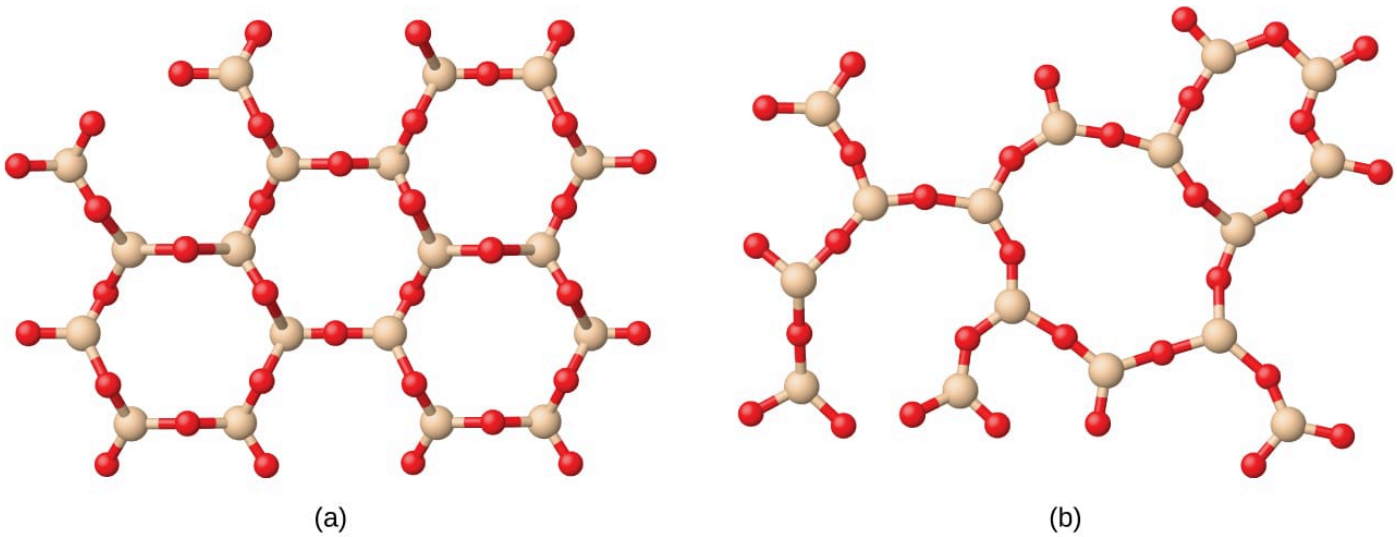


Figure 10.38 (a) Silicon dioxide, SiO_2, is abundant in nature as one of several crystalline forms of the mineral quartz. (b) Rapid cooling of molten SiO_2 yields an amorphous solid known as “fused silica”.

Crystalline solids are generally classified according to the nature of the forces that hold its particles together. These forces are primarily responsible for the physical properties exhibited by the bulk solids. The following sections provide descriptions of the major types of crystalline solids: ionic, metallic, covalent network, and molecular.

Ionic Solids

Ionic solids, such as sodium chloride and nickel oxide, are composed of positive and negative ions that are held together by electrostatic attractions, which can be quite strong (Figure 10.39). Many ionic crystals also have high melting points. This is due to the very strong attractions between the ions—in ionic compounds, the attractions between full charges are (much) larger than those between the partial charges in polar molecular compounds. This will be looked at in more detail in a later discussion of lattice energies. Although they are hard, they also tend to be brittle, and they shatter rather than bend. Ionic solids do not conduct electricity; however, they do conduct when molten or dissolved because their ions are free to move. Many simple compounds formed by the reaction of a metallic element with a nonmetallic element are ionic.

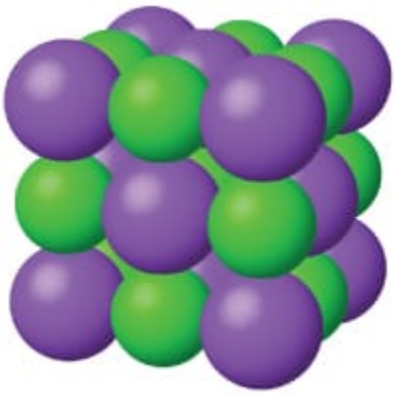


Figure 10.39 Sodium chloride is an ionic solid.

Metallic Solids

Metallic solids such as crystals of copper, aluminum, and iron are formed by metal atoms Figure 10.40. The structure of metallic crystals is often described as a uniform distribution of atomic nuclei within a “sea” of delocalized electrons. The atoms within such a metallic solid are held together by a unique force known as *metallic bonding* that gives rise to many useful and varied bulk properties. All exhibit high thermal and electrical conductivity, metallic luster, and malleability. Many are very hard and quite

strong. Because of their malleability (the ability to deform under pressure or hammering), they do not shatter and, therefore, make useful construction materials. The melting points of the metals vary widely. Mercury is a liquid at room temperature, and the alkali metals melt below 200 °C. Several post-transition metals also have low melting points, whereas the transition metals melt at temperatures above 1000 °C. These differences reflect differences in strengths of metallic bonding among the metals.

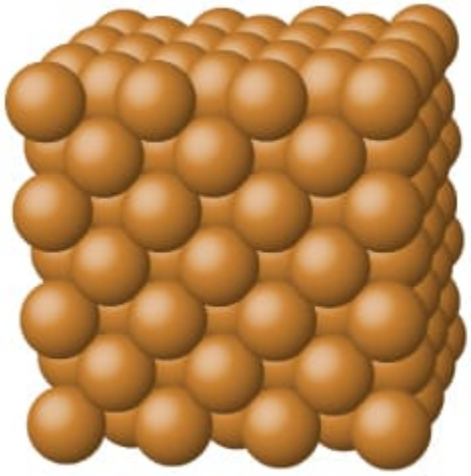


Figure 10.40 Copper is a metallic solid.

Covalent Network Solid

Covalent network solids include crystals of diamond, silicon, some other nonmetals, and some covalent compounds such as silicon dioxide (sand) and silicon carbide (carborundum, the abrasive on sandpaper). Many minerals have networks of covalent bonds. The atoms in these solids are held together by a network of covalent bonds, as shown in Figure 10.41. To break or to melt a covalent network solid, covalent bonds must be broken. Because covalent bonds are relatively strong, covalent network solids are typically characterized by hardness, strength, and high melting points. For example, diamond is one of the hardest substances known and melts above 3500 °C.

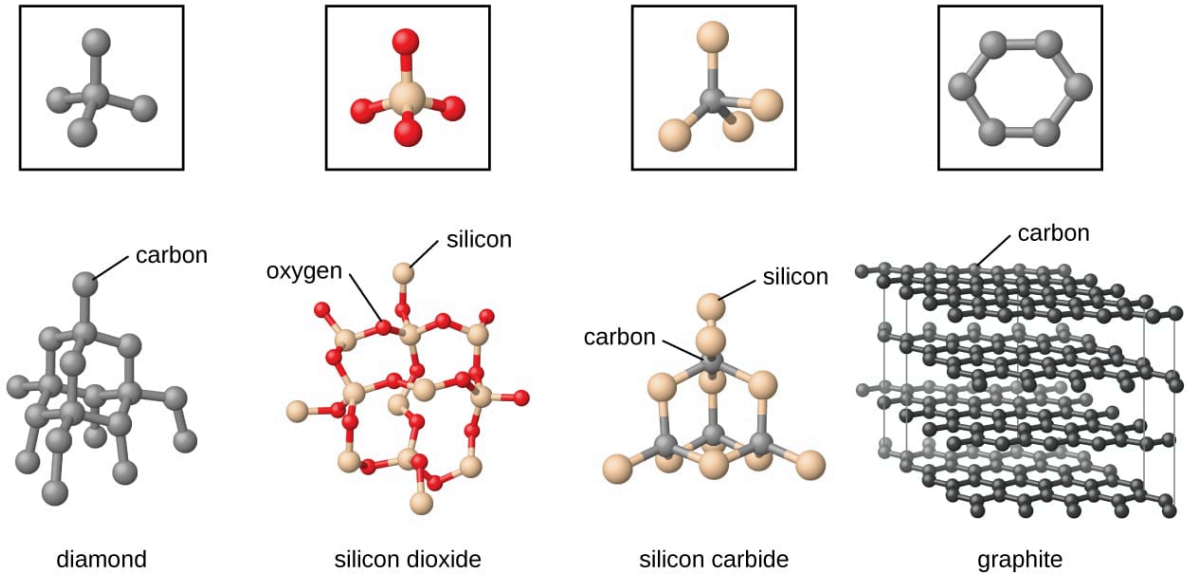


Figure 10.41 A covalent crystal contains a three-dimensional network of covalent bonds, as illustrated by the structures of diamond, silicon dioxide, silicon carbide, and graphite. Graphite is an exceptional example, composed of planar sheets of covalent crystals that are held together in layers by noncovalent forces. Unlike typical covalent solids, graphite is very soft and electrically conductive.

Molecular Solid

Molecular solids, such as ice, sucrose (table sugar), and iodine, as shown in Figure 10.42, are composed of neutral molecules. The strengths of the attractive forces between the units present in different crystals vary widely, as indicated by the melting points of the crystals. Small symmetrical molecules (nonpolar molecules), such as H_2, N_2, O_2, and F_2, have weak attractive forces and form molecular solids with very low melting points (below –200 °C). Substances consisting of larger, nonpolar molecules have larger attractive forces and melt at higher temperatures. Molecular solids composed of molecules with permanent dipole moments (polar molecules) melt at still higher temperatures. Examples include ice (melting point, 0 °C) and table sugar (melting point, 185 °C).

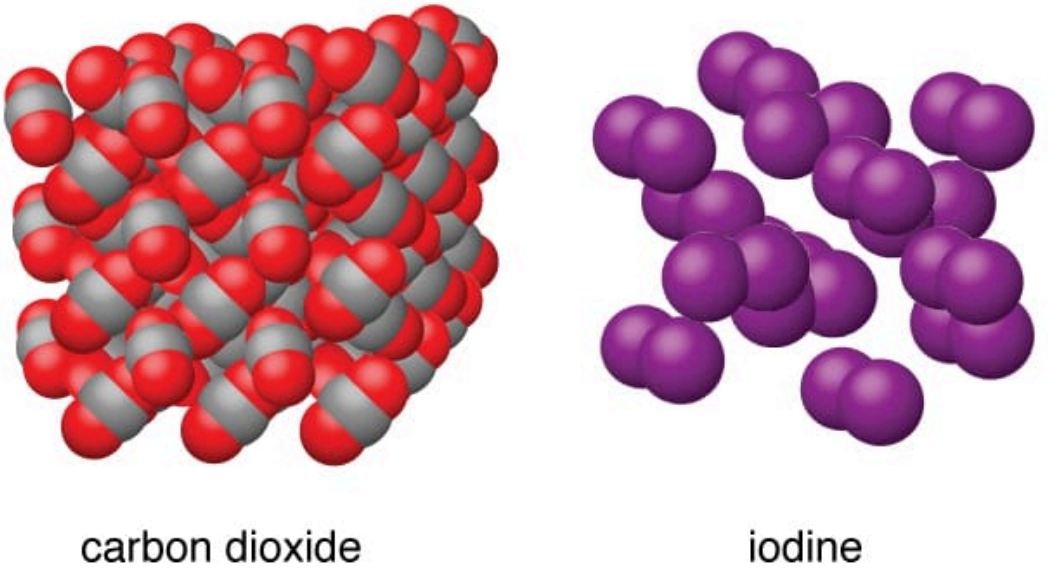


Figure 10.42 Carbon dioxide (CO_2) consists of small, nonpolar molecules and forms a molecular solid with a melting point of –78 °C. Iodine (I_2) consists of larger, nonpolar molecules and forms a molecular solid that melts at 114 °C.

Properties of Solids

A crystalline solid, like those listed in Table 10.4, has a precise melting temperature because each atom or molecule of the same type is held in place with the same forces or energy. Thus, the attractions between the units that make up the crystal all have the same strength and all require the same amount of energy to be broken. The gradual softening of an amorphous material differs dramatically from the distinct melting of a crystalline solid. This results from the structural nonequivalence of the molecules in the amorphous solid. Some forces are weaker than others, and when an amorphous material is heated, the weakest intermolecular attractions break first. As the temperature is increased further, the stronger attractions are broken. Thus amorphous materials soften over a range of temperatures.

Types of Crystalline Solids and Their Properties

Type of Solid	Type of Particles	Type of Attractions	Properties	Examples
ionic	ions	ionic bonds	hard, brittle, conducts electricity as a liquid but not as a solid, high to very high melting points	NaCl, Al_2O_3
metallic	atoms of electropositive elements	metallic bonds	shiny, malleable, ductile, conducts heat and electricity well, variable hardness and melting temperature	Cu, Fe, Ti, Pb, U
covalent network	atoms of electronegative elements	covalent bonds	very hard, not conductive, very high melting points	C (diamond), SiO_2, SiC

Type of Solid	Type of Particles	Type of Attractions	Properties	Examples
molecular	molecules (or atoms)	IMFs	variable hardness, variable brittleness, not conductive, low melting points	H_2O, CO_2, I_2, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$

Table 10.4

How Sciences Interconnect

Graphene: Material of the Future

Carbon is an essential element in our world. The unique properties of carbon atoms allow the existence of carbon-based life forms such as ourselves. Carbon forms a huge variety of substances that we use on a daily basis, including those shown in Figure 10.43. You may be familiar with diamond and graphite, the two most common *allotropes* of carbon. (Allotropes are different structural forms of the same element.) Diamond is one of the hardest-known substances, whereas graphite is soft enough to be used as pencil lead. These very different properties stem from the different arrangements of the carbon atoms in the different allotropes.

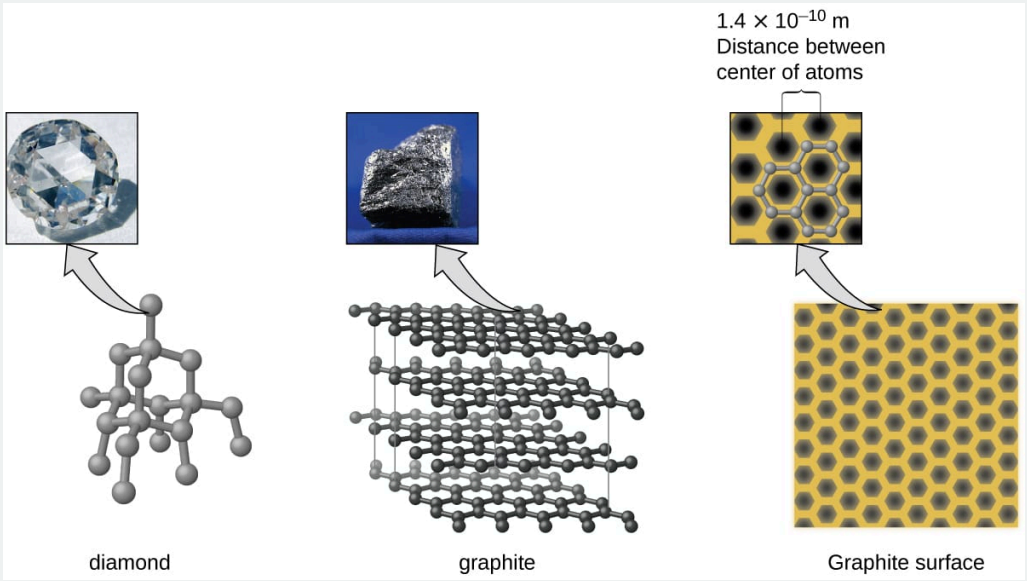


Figure 10.43 Diamond is extremely hard because of the strong bonding between carbon atoms in all directions. Graphite (in pencil lead) rubs off onto paper due to the weak attractions between the carbon layers. An image of a graphite surface shows the distance between the centers of adjacent carbon atoms. (credit left photo: modification of work by Steve Jurvetson; credit middle photo: modification of work by United States Geological Survey)

You may be less familiar with a recently discovered form of carbon: graphene. Graphene was first isolated in 2004 by using tape to peel off thinner and thinner layers from graphite. It is essentially a single sheet (one atom thick) of graphite. Graphene, illustrated in Figure 10.44, is not only strong and lightweight, but it is also an excellent conductor of electricity and heat. These properties may prove very useful in a wide range of applications, such as vastly improved computer chips and circuits, better batteries and solar cells, and stronger and lighter structural materials. The 2010 Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Andre Geim and Konstantin Novoselov for their pioneering work with graphene.

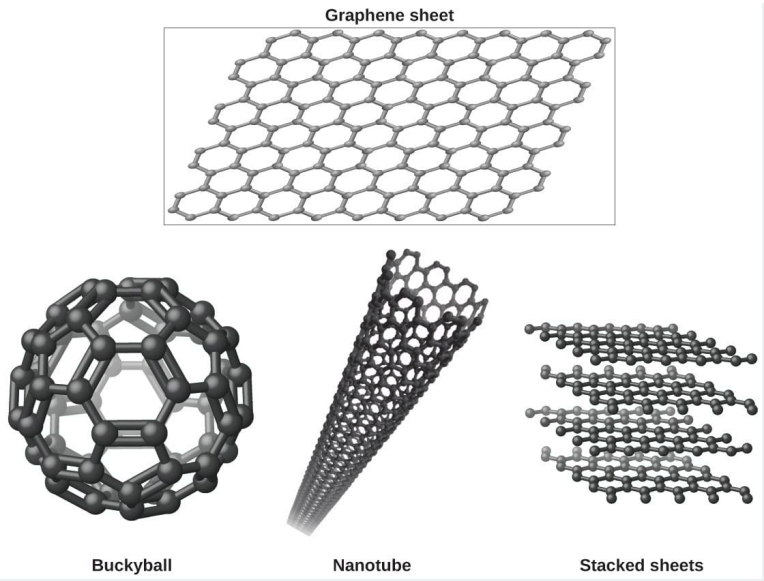


Figure 10.44 Graphene sheets can be formed into buckyballs, nanotubes, and stacked layers.

This page titled 6.2: The Solid State of Matter is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

Learning Objectives

- Describe the arrangement of atoms and ions in crystalline structures
- Compute ionic radii using unit cell dimensions
- Explain the use of X-ray diffraction measurements in determining crystalline structures

Over 90% of naturally occurring and man-made solids are crystalline. Most solids form with a regular arrangement of their particles because the overall attractive interactions between particles are maximized, and the total intermolecular energy is minimized, when the particles pack in the most efficient manner. The regular arrangement at an atomic level is often reflected at a macroscopic level. In this module, we will explore some of the details about the structures of metallic and ionic crystalline solids, and learn how these structures are determined experimentally.

The Structures of Metals

We will begin our discussion of crystalline solids by considering elemental metals, which are relatively simple because each contains only one type of atom. A pure metal is a crystalline solid with metal atoms packed closely together in a repeating pattern. Some of the properties of metals in general, such as their malleability and ductility, are largely due to having identical atoms arranged in a regular pattern. The different properties of one metal compared to another partially depend on the sizes of their atoms and the specifics of their spatial arrangements. We will explore the similarities and differences of four of the most common metal crystal geometries in the sections that follow.

Unit Cells of Metals

The structure of a crystalline solid, whether a metal or not, is best described by considering its simplest repeating unit, which is referred to as its unit cell. The unit cell consists of lattice points that represent the locations of atoms or ions. The entire structure then consists of this unit cell repeating in three dimensions, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.1.

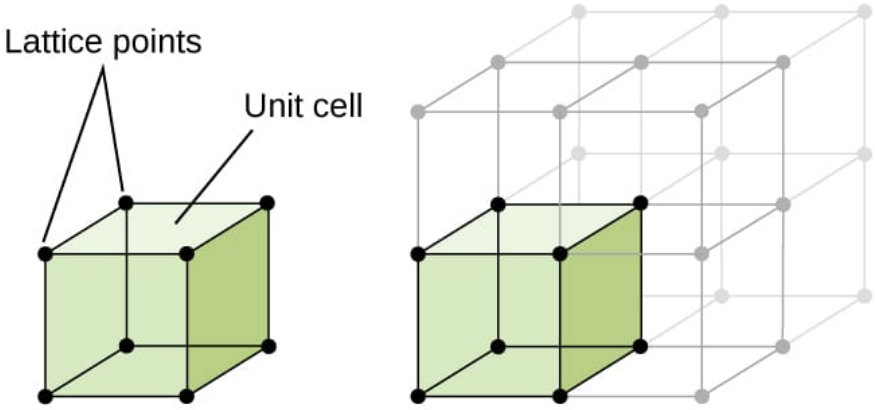


Figure 6.3.1: A unit cell shows the locations of lattice points repeating in all directions.

A diagram of two images is shown. In the first image, a cube with a sphere at each corner is shown. The cube is labeled “Unit cell” and the spheres at the corners are labeled “Lattice points.” The second image shows the same cube, but this time it is one cube amongst eight that make up a larger cube. The original cube is shaded a color while the other cubes are not.

Let us begin our investigation of crystal lattice structure and unit cells with the most straightforward structure and the most basic unit cell. To visualize this, imagine taking a large number of identical spheres, such as tennis balls, and arranging them uniformly in a container. The simplest way to do this would be to make layers in which the spheres in one layer are directly above those in the layer below, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.2. This arrangement is called simple cubic structure, and the unit cell is called the simple cubic unit cell or primitive cubic unit cell.

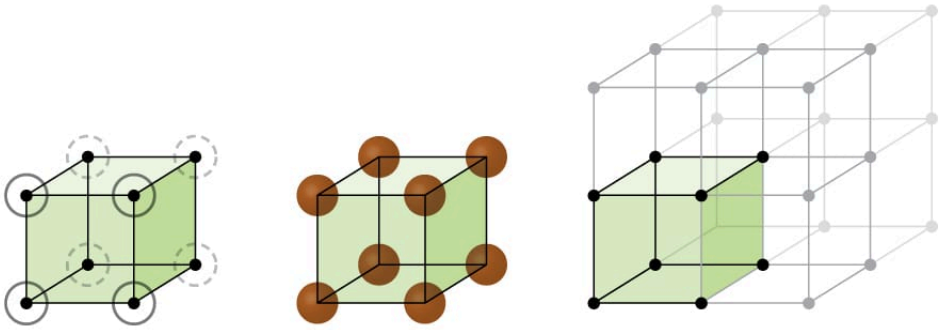


Figure 6.3.2: .When metal atoms are arranged with spheres in one layer directly above or below spheres in another layer, the lattice structure is called simple cubic. Note that the spheres are in contact.

A diagram of three images is shown. In the first image, a cube with a sphere at each corner is shown. The spheres at the corners are circled. The second image shows the same cube, but this time the spheres at the corners are larger and shaded in. In the third image, the cube is one cube amongst eight that make up a larger cube. The original cube is shaded a color while the other cubes are not.

In a simple cubic structure, the spheres are not packed as closely as they could be, and they only "fill" about 52% of the volume of the container. This is a relatively inefficient arrangement, and only one metal (polonium, Po) crystallizes in a simple cubic structure. As shown in Figure 6.3.3, a solid with this type of arrangement consists of planes (or layers) in which each atom contacts only the four nearest neighbors in its layer; one atom directly above it in the layer above; and one atom directly below it in the layer below. The number of other particles that each particle in a crystalline solid contacts is known as its coordination number. For a polonium atom in a simple cubic array, the coordination number is, therefore, six.

<div data-mt-source="1"
""
" height="200" width="463" src="/@api/deki/files/61021/CNX_Chem_10_06_SimpleCub2.jpg">

Figure 6.3.3: An atom in a simple cubic lattice structure contacts six other atoms, so it has a coordination number of six.

In a simple cubic lattice, the unit cell that repeats in all directions is a cube defined by the centers of eight atoms, as shown in Figure 6.3.4. Atoms at adjacent corners of this unit cell contact each other, so the edge length of this cell is equal to two atomic radii, or one atomic diameter. A cubic unit cell contains only the parts of these atoms that are within it. Since an atom at a corner of a simple cubic unit cell is contained by a total of eight unit cells, only one-eighth of that atom is within a specific unit cell. And since each simple cubic unit cell has one atom at each of its eight "corners," there is $8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$ atom within one simple cubic unit cell.

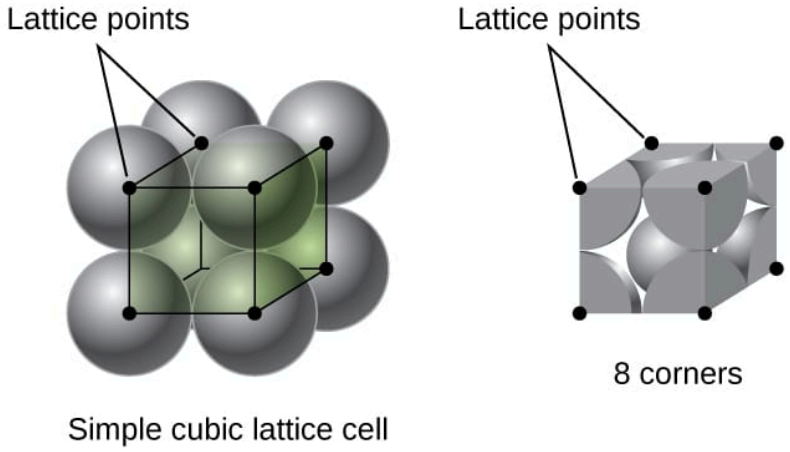


Figure 6.3.4: A simple cubic lattice unit cell contains one-eighth of an atom at each of its eight corners, so it contains one atom total.

A diagram of two images is shown. In the first image, eight spheres are stacked together to form a cube and dots at the center of each sphere are connected to form a cube shape. The dots are labeled "Lattice points" while a label under the image reads "Simple cubic lattice cell." The second image shows the portion of each sphere that lie inside the cube. The corners of the cube are shown with small circles labeled "Lattice points" and the phrase "8 corners" is written below the image.

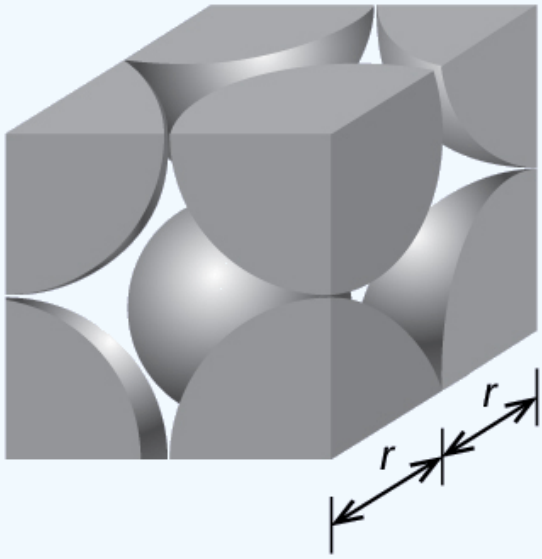
Example 6.3.1: Calculating Atomic Radius and Density for Metals (Part 1)

The edge length of the unit cell of alpha polonium is 336 pm.

a. Determine the radius of a polonium atom.
b. Determine the density of alpha polonium.

Solution

Alpha polonium crystallizes in a simple cubic unit cell:



(a) Two adjacent Po atoms contact each other, so the edge length of this cell is equal to two Po atomic radii: $l = 2r$. Therefore, the radius of Po is

$$r = \frac{l}{2} = \frac{336\ \text{pm}}{2} = 168\ \text{pm}$$

(b) Density is given by

$$\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}.$$

The density of polonium can be found by determining the density of its unit cell (the mass contained within a unit cell divided by the volume of the unit cell). Since a Po unit cell contains one-eighth of a Po atom at each of its eight corners, a unit cell contains one Po atom.

The mass of a Po unit cell can be found by:

$$1\ \text{Po unit cell} \times \frac{1\ \text{Po atom}}{1\ \text{Po unit cell}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Po}}{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \text{Po atoms}} \times \frac{208.998\ \text{g}}{1\ \text{mol Po}} = 3.47 \times 10^{-22}\ \text{g}$$

The volume of a Po unit cell can be found by:

$$V = l^3 = (336 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{cm})^3 = 3.79 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{cm}^3$$

(Note that the edge length was converted from pm to cm to get the usual volume units for density.)

Therefore, the density of

$$\text{Po} = \frac{3.471 \times 10^{-22}\ \text{g}}{3.79 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{cm}^3} = 9.16\ \text{g/cm}^3$$

Exercise 6.3.1

The edge length of the unit cell for nickel is 0.3524 nm. The density of Ni is 8.90 g/cm^3. Does nickel crystallize in a simple cubic structure? Explain.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Most metal crystals are one of the four major types of unit cells. For now, we will focus on the three cubic unit cells: simple cubic (which we have already seen), body-centered cubic unit cell, and face-centered cubic unit cell—all of which are illustrated in Figure 6.3.5. (Note that there are actually seven different lattice systems, some of which have more than one type of lattice, for a total of 14 different types of unit cells. We leave the more complicated geometries for later in this module.)

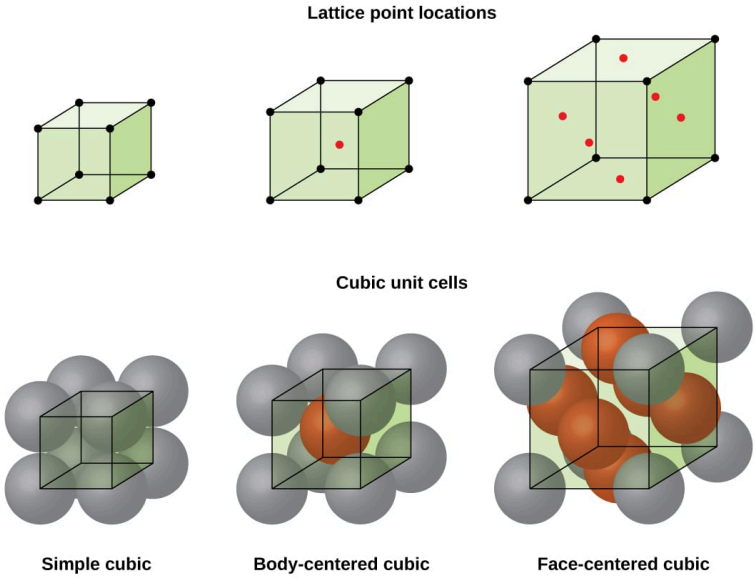


Figure 6.3.5: Cubic unit cells of metals show (in the upper figures) the locations of lattice points and (in the lower figures) metal atoms located in the unit cell.

Three pairs of images are shown. The first three images are in a row and are labeled “Lattice point locations” while the second three images are in a row labeled “Cubic unit cells.” The first image in the top row shows a cube with black dots at each corner while the first image in the second row is composed of eight spheres that are stacked together to form a cube and dots at the center of each sphere are connected to form a cube shape. The name under this image reads “Simple cubic.” The second image in the top row shows a cube with black dots at each corner and a red dot in the center while the second image in the second row is composed of eight spheres that are stacked together to form a cube with one sphere in the center of the cube and dots at the center of each corner sphere connected to form a cube shape. The name under this image reads “Body-centered cubic.” The third image in the top row shows a cube with black dots at each corner and red dots in the center of each face while the third image in the second row is composed of eight spheres that are stacked together to form a cube with six more spheres located in the center of each face of the cube. Dots at the center of each corner sphere are connected to form a cube shape. The name under this image reads “Face-centered cubic.”

Some metals crystallize in an arrangement that has a cubic unit cell with atoms at all of the corners and an atom in the center, as shown in Figure 6.3.6. This is called a body-centered cubic (BCC) solid. Atoms in the corners of a BCC unit cell do not contact each other but contact the atom in the center. A BCC unit cell contains two atoms: one-eighth of an atom at each of the eight corners ($8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$ atom from the corners) plus one atom from the center. Any atom in this structure touches four atoms in the layer above it and four atoms in the layer below it. Thus, an atom in a BCC structure has a coordination number of eight.

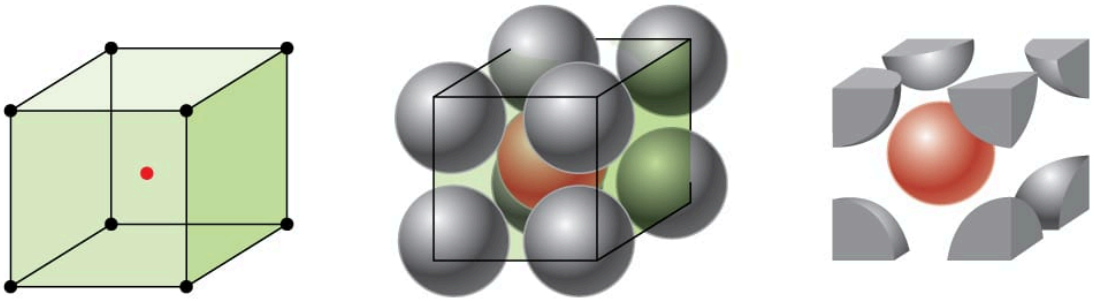


Figure 6.3.6: In a body-centered cubic structure, atoms in a specific layer do not touch each other. Each atom touches four atoms in the layer above it and four atoms in the layer below it.

Three images are shown. The first image shows a cube with black dots at each corner and a red dot in the center while the second image is composed of eight spheres that are stacked together to form a cube with one sphere in the center of the cube and dots at the center of each corner sphere connected to form a cube shape. The name under this image reads “Body-centered cubic structure.” The third image is the same as the second, but only shows the portions of the spheres that lie inside the cube shape.

Atoms in BCC arrangements are much more efficiently packed than in a simple cubic structure, occupying about 68% of the total volume. Isomorphous metals with a BCC structure include K, Ba, Cr, Mo, W, and Fe at room temperature. (Elements or compounds that crystallize with the same structure are said to be isomorphous.)

Many other metals, such as aluminum, copper, and lead, crystallize in an arrangement that has a cubic unit cell with atoms at all of the corners and at the centers of each face, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.7. This arrangement is called a face-centered cubic (FCC) solid. A FCC unit cell contains four atoms: one-eighth of an atom at each of the eight corners ($8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$ atom from the corners) and one-half of an atom on each of the six faces ($6 \times \frac{1}{2} = 3$ atoms from the faces). The atoms at the corners touch the atoms in the centers of the adjacent faces along the face diagonals of the cube. Because the atoms are on identical lattice points, they have identical environments.

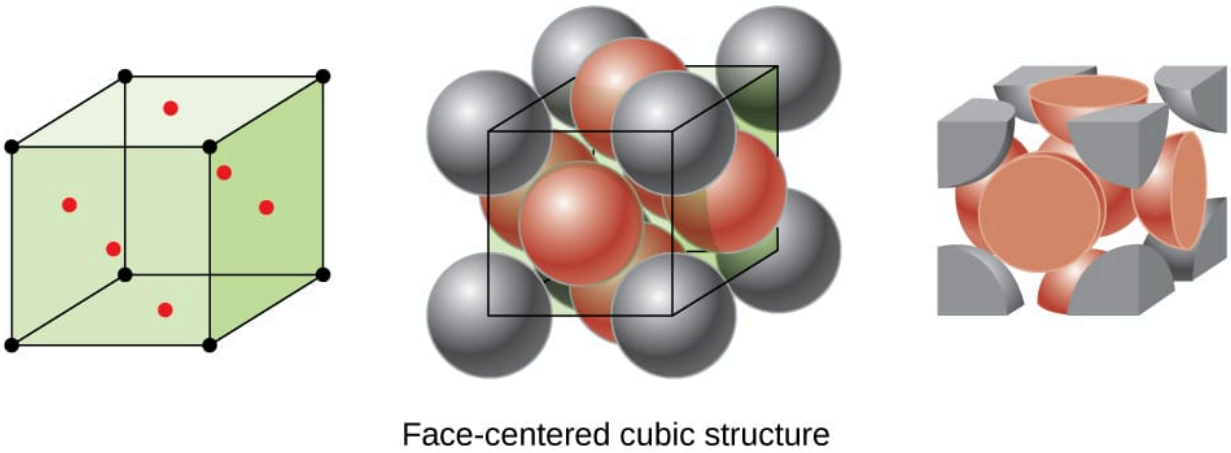


Figure 6.3.7:A face-centered cubic solid has atoms at the corners and, as the name implies, at the centers of the faces of its unit cells.

Three images are shown. The first image shows a cube with black dots at each corner and red dots in the center of each face of the cube while the second image is composed of eight spheres that are stacked together to form a cube with six more spheres, one located on each face of the structure. Dots at the center of each corner sphere are connected to form a cube shape. The name under this image reads “Face-centered cubic structure.” The third image is the same as the second, but only shows the portions of the spheres that lie inside the cube shape.

Atoms in an FCC arrangement are packed as closely together as possible, with atoms occupying 74% of the volume. This structure is also called cubic closest packing (CCP). In CCP, there are three repeating layers of hexagonally arranged atoms. Each atom contacts six atoms in its own layer, three in the layer above, and three in the layer below. In this arrangement, each atom touches 12 near neighbors, and therefore has a coordination number of 12. The fact that FCC and CCP arrangements are equivalent may not be immediately obvious, but why they are actually the same structure is illustrated in Figure 6.3.8.

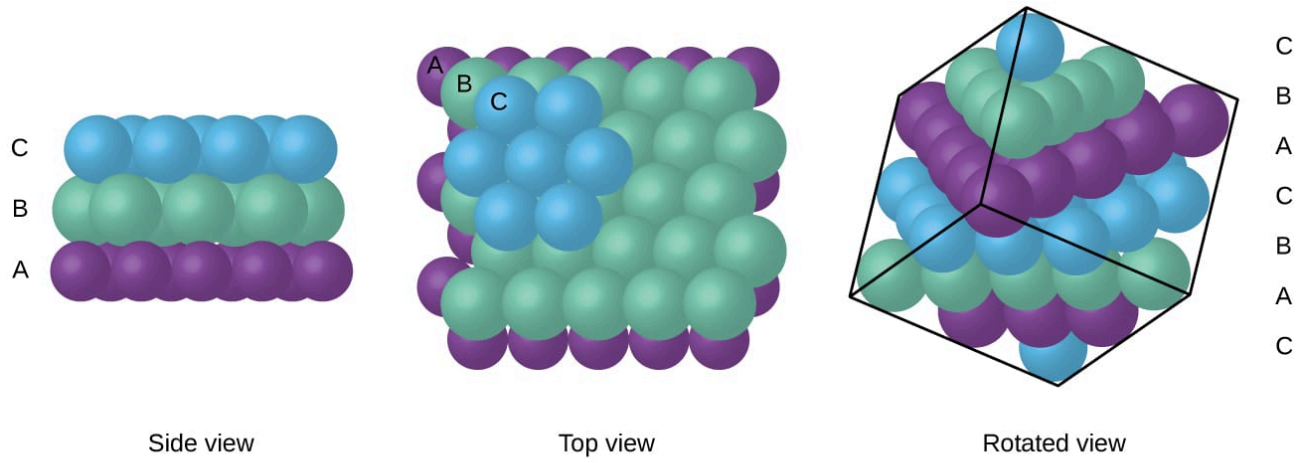


Figure 6.3.8: A CCP arrangement consists of three repeating layers (ABCABC...) of hexagonally arranged atoms. Atoms in a CCP structure have a coordination number of 12 because they contact six atoms in their layer, plus three atoms in the layer above and three atoms in the layer below. By rotating our perspective, we can see that a CCP structure has a unit cell with a face containing an atom from layer A at one corner, atoms from layer B across a diagonal (at two corners and in the middle of the face), and an atom from layer C at the remaining corner. This is the same as a face-centered cubic arrangement.

Three images are shown. In the first image, a side view shows a layer of blue spheres, labeled “C” stacked on top of, and sitting in between the gaps in a second layer that is composed of green spheres, labeled “B,” which are sitting atop a purple layer of spheres labeled “A.” A label below this image reads “Side view.” The second image shows a top view of the same layers of spheres, where the top layer is “C,” the second layer is “B” and the lowest layer is “C.” This image is labeled “Top view” and written under this is the phrase “Cubic closest packed structure.” The third image shows an upper view of the side of a cube composed of two sets of the repeating layers shown in the other images. The layers are arranged “C, B, A, C, B, A, C” and the phrase written under this image reads “Rotated view.”

Because closer packing maximizes the overall attractions between atoms and minimizes the total intermolecular energy, the atoms in most metals pack in this manner. We find two types of closest packing in simple metallic crystalline structures: CCP, which we have already encountered, and hexagonal closest packing (HCP) shown in Figure 6.3.9. Both consist of repeating layers of hexagonally arranged atoms. In both types, a second layer (B) is placed on the first layer (A) so that each atom in the second layer is in contact with three atoms in the first layer. The third layer is positioned in one of two ways. In HCP, atoms in the third layer are directly above atoms in the first layer (i.e., the third layer is also type A), and the stacking consists of alternating type A and type B close-packed layers (i.e., ABABAB⋯). In CCP, atoms in the third layer are not above atoms in either of the first two layers (i.e., the third layer is type C), and the stacking consists of alternating type A, type B, and type C close-packed layers (i.e., ABCABCABC⋯). About two–thirds of all metals crystallize in closest-packed arrays with coordination numbers of 12. Metals that crystallize in an HCP structure include Cd, Co, Li, Mg, Na, and Zn, and metals that crystallize in a CCP structure include Ag, Al, Ca, Cu, Ni, Pb, and Pt.

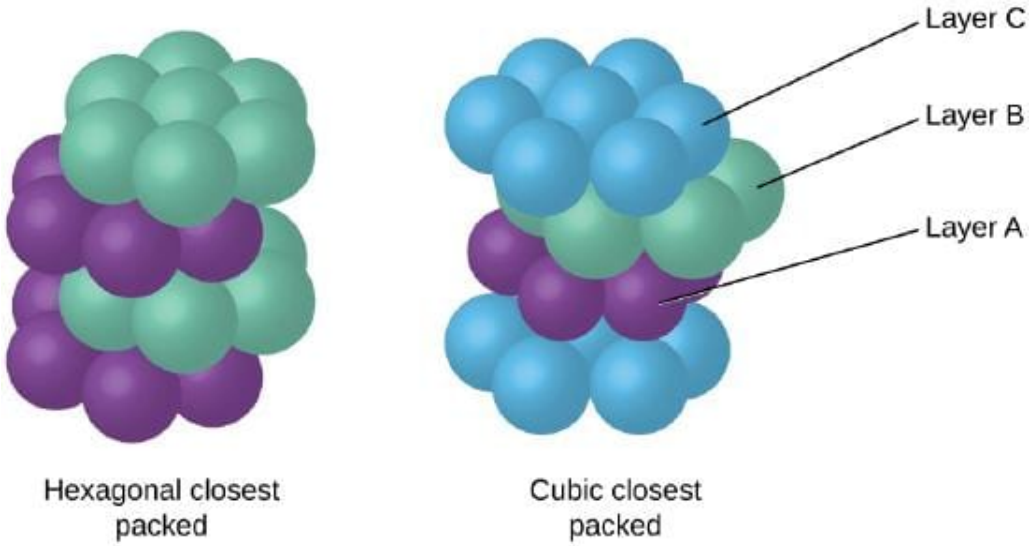


Figure 6.3.9: In both types of closest packing, atoms are packed as compactly as possible. Hexagonal closest packing consists of two alternating layers (ABABAB...). Cubic closest packing consists of three alternating layers (ABCABCABC...).

Two images are shown. The first image, labeled “Hexagonal closest packed,” shows seven green spheres arranged in a circular sheet lying atop another sheet that is the same except the spheres are purple. The second sheet is offset just a bit so that the spheres of the top sheet lie in the grooves of the second sheet. Two more alternating green and purple layers of spheres lie below the first pair. The second image shows seven blue spheres, labeled “Layer C,” arranged in a circular sheet laying atop another sheet, labeled “Layer B” that is the same except the spheres are green. The second sheet is offset just a bit so that the spheres of the top sheet lie in the grooves of the second sheet. Two more alternating purple and then blue layers of spheres lie below the first pair. The purple layer is labeled “Layer A” and the phrase written below this image reads “Cubic closest packed.”

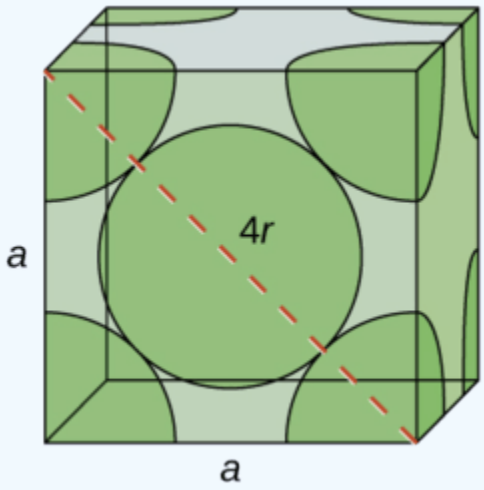
Example 6.3.2: Calculating Atomic Radius and Density for Metals (Part 2)

Calcium crystallizes in a face-centered cubic structure. The edge length of its unit cell is 558.8 pm.

a. What is the atomic radius of Ca in this structure?
b. Calculate the density of Ca.

Solution

(a) In an FCC structure, Ca atoms contact each other across the diagonal of the face, so the length of the diagonal is equal to four Ca atomic radii (d = 4*r*).



Two adjacent edges and the diagonal of the face form a right triangle, with the length of each side equal to 558.8 pm and the length of the hypotenuse equal to four Ca atomic radii:

$$a^2 + a^2 = d^2$$
$$(558.8\ \text{pm})^2 + (558.5\ \text{pm})^2 = (4r)^2$$

Solving this gives

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{(558.8\ \text{pm})^2 + (558.5\ \text{pm})^2}{16}} = 197.6\ \text{pmg for a Ca radius.}$$

(b) Density is given by $\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$. The density of calcium can be found by determining the density of its unit cell: for example, the mass contained within a unit cell divided by the volume of the unit cell. A face-centered Ca unit cell has one-eighth of an atom at each of the eight corners ($8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$atom) and one-half of an atom on each of the six faces $6 \times \frac{1}{2} = 3$ atoms), for a total of four atoms in the unit cell.

The mass of the unit cell can be found by:

$$1\ \text{Ca unit cell} \times \frac{4\ \text{Ca atoms}}{1\ \text{Ca unit cell}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Ca}}{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \text{Ca atoms}} \times \frac{40.078\ \text{g}}{1\ \text{mol Ca}} = 2.662 \times 10^{-22}\ \text{g}$$

The volume of a Ca unit cell can be found by:

$$V = a^3 = (558.8 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{cm})^3 = 1.745 \times 10^{-22}\ \text{cm}^3$$

(Note that the edge length was converted from pm to cm to get the usual volume units for density.)

Then, the density of polonium:

$$\text{Po} = \frac{2.662 \times 10^{-22}\ \text{g}}{1.745 \times 10^{-22}\ \text{cm}^3} = 1.53\ \text{g/cm}^3$$

Exercise 6.3.2

Silver crystallizes in an FCC structure. The edge length of its unit cell is 409 pm.

a. What is the atomic radius of Ag in this structure?
b. Calculate the density of Ag.

Answer a available at the end of this section.

In general, a unit cell is defined by the lengths of three axes (*a*, *b*, and *c*) and the angles (*α*, *β*, and *γ*) between them, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.10. The axes are defined as being the lengths between points in the space lattice. Consequently, unit cell axes join points with identical environments.

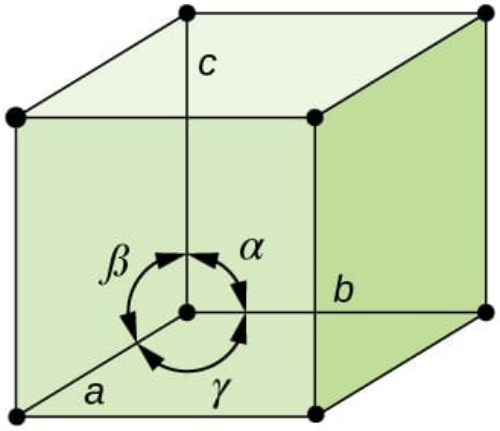


Figure 6.3.10: A unit cell is defined by the lengths of its three axes (a, b, and c) and the angles (α, β, and γ) between the axes.

A cube is shown where each corner has a black dot drawn on it. A circle in the bottom of the cube is composed of three double-ended arrows. The left top of this circle is labeled “alpha,” the top right is labeled “beta” and the bottom is labeled “gamma.” The bottom left corner of the cube is labeled “a” while the bottom of the back face is labeled “b” and the top, back, left corner is labeled “c.”

There are seven different lattice systems, some of which have more than one type of lattice, for a total of fourteen different unit cells, which have the shapes shown in Figure 6.3.11.

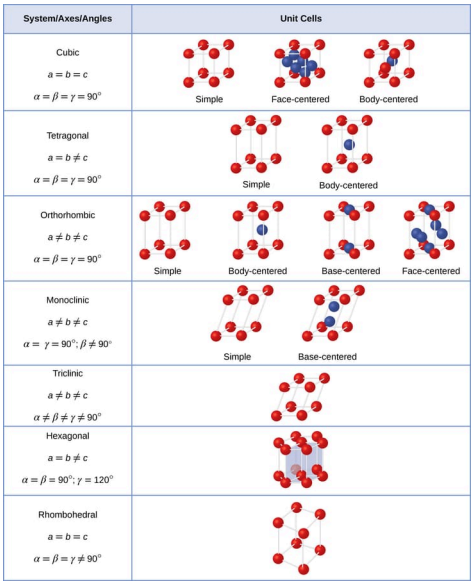


Figure 6.3.11:There are seven different lattice systems and 14 different unit cells.

A table is composed of two columns and eight rows. The header row reads “System / Axes / Angles” and “Unit Cells .” The first column reads “Cubic, a equals b equals c, alpha equals beta equals gamma equals 90 degrees,” “Tetragonal, a equals b does not equal c, alpha equals beta equals gamma equals 90 degrees,” “Orthorhombic, a does not equal b does not equal c, alpha equals beta equals gamma equals 90 degrees,” “Monoclinic, a does not equal b does not equal c, alpha equals gamma equals 90 degrees, beta does not equal 90 degrees,” “Triclinic, a does not equal b does not equal c, alpha does not equal beta does not equal gamma does not equal 90 degrees,” “Hexagonal, a equals b does not equal c, alpha equals beta equals 90 degrees, gamma equals 120 degrees,” “Rhombohedral, a equals b equals c, alpha equals beta equals gamma does not equal 90 degrees.” The second column is composed of diagrams. The first set of diagrams in the first cell show a cube with spheres at each corner labeled “Simple,” a cube with spheres in each corner and on each face labeled “Face-centered” and a cube with spheres in each corner and one in the center labeled “Body-centered.” The second set of diagrams in the second cell show a vertical rectangle with spheres at each corner labeled “Simple” and a vertical rectangle with spheres in each corner and one in the center labeled “Body-centered.” The third set of diagrams in the third cell show a vertical rectangle with spheres at each corner labeled “Simple,” a vertical rectangle with spheres in each corner and one in the center labeled “Body-centered,” a vertical rectangle with spheres in each corner and one on the top and bottom faces labeled “Base-centered,” and a vertical rectangle with spheres in each corner and one on each face labeled “Face-centered.” The fourth set of diagrams in the fourth cell show a vertical rectangle with spheres at each corner that is slanted to one side labeled “Simple” and a vertical rectangle with spheres in each corner that is slanted to one side and has two spheres in the center is labeled “Body-centered.” The fifth diagrams in the fifth cell show a cube that is slanted with spheres at each corner while the sixth diagram in the sixth cell shows a pair of hexagonal rings that are connected together to form a six-sided shape with spheres at each corner. The seventh diagram in the seventh cell shows a rectangle that is slanted with spheres at each corner.

The Structures of Ionic Crystals

Ionic crystals consist of two or more different kinds of ions that usually have different sizes. The packing of these ions into a crystal structure is more complex than the packing of metal atoms that are the same size. Most monatomic ions behave as charged spheres, and their attraction for ions of opposite charge is the same in every direction. Consequently, stable structures for ionic compounds result (1) when ions of one charge are surrounded by as many ions as possible of the opposite charge and (2) when the cations and anions are in contact with each other. Structures are determined by two principal factors: the relative sizes of the ions and the ratio of the numbers of positive and negative ions in the compound.

In simple ionic structures, we usually find the anions, which are normally larger than the cations, arranged in a closest-packed array. (As seen previously, additional electrons attracted to the same nucleus make anions larger and fewer electrons attracted to the same nucleus make cations smaller when compared to the atoms from which they are formed.) The smaller cations commonly occupy one of two types of holes (or interstices) remaining between the anions. The smaller of the holes is found between three anions in one plane and one anion in an adjacent plane. The four anions surrounding this hole are arranged at the corners of a tetrahedron, so the hole is called a tetrahedral hole. The larger type of hole is found at the center of six anions (three in one layer and three in an adjacent layer) located at the corners of an octahedron; this is called an octahedral hole. Figure 6.3.12 illustrates both of these types of holes.

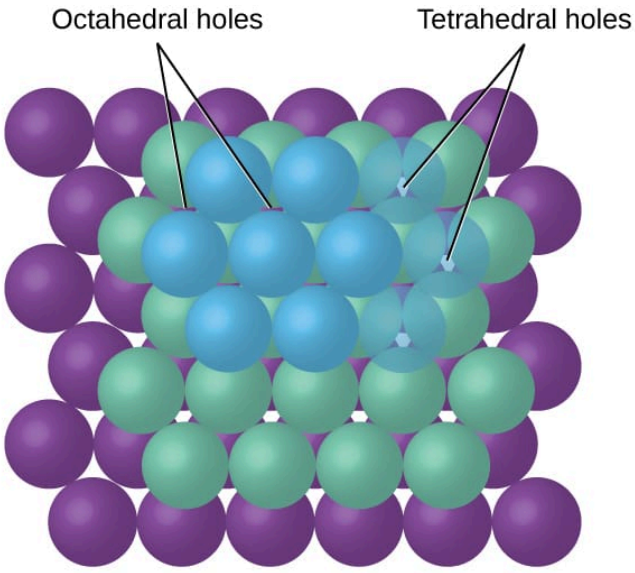


Figure 6.3.12: Cations may occupy two types of holes between anions: octahedral holes or tetrahedral holes.

An image shows a top-view of a layer of blue spheres arranged in a sheet lying atop another sheet that is the same except the spheres are green. The second sheet is offset just a bit so that the spheres of the top sheet lie in the grooves of the second sheet. A third sheet composed of purple spheres lies at the bottom. The spaces created between the spheres in each layer are labeled “Octahedral holes” and “Tetrahedral holes.”

Depending on the relative sizes of the cations and anions, the cations of an ionic compound may occupy tetrahedral or octahedral holes, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.13. Relatively small cations occupy tetrahedral holes, and larger cations occupy octahedral holes. If the cations are too large to fit into the octahedral holes, the anions may adopt a more open structure, such as a simple cubic array. The larger cations can then occupy the larger cubic holes made possible by the more open spacing.

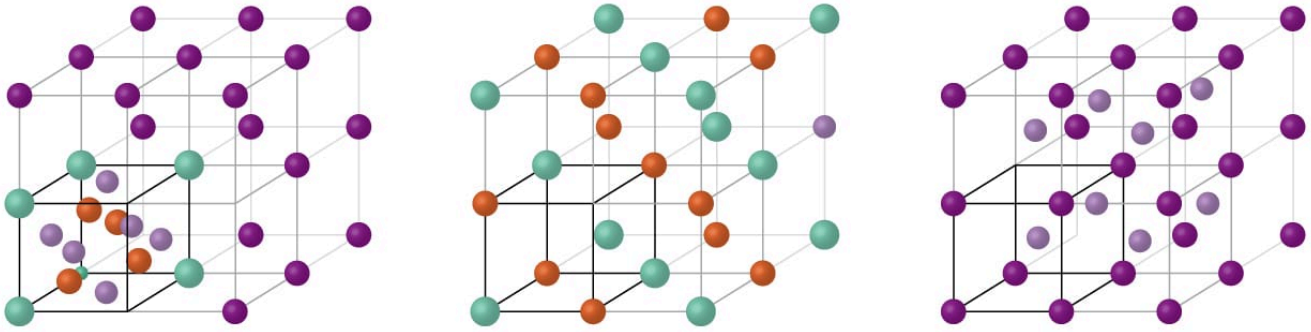


Figure 6.3.13:A cation’s size and the shape of the hole occupied by the compound are directly related.

A diagram of three images is shown. In the first image, eight stacked cubes, with purple spheres at each corner, that make up one large cube are shown. The bottom left cube is different. It has green spheres at each corner and has four orange and six light purple spheres located on the faces of the cube. Labels below this structure read “Tetrahedral hole” and “Cation radius is about 22.5 to 41.4 percent of the anion radius. In the second image, eight stacked cubes, with alternating orange and green spheres at each corner, make up one large cube that is shown. The bottom left cube has darker lines that connect the spheres together. Labels below this structure read “Octahedral hole” and “Cation radius is about 41.4 to 73.2 percent of the anion radius. In the third image, eight stacked cubes, with purple spheres at each corner and light purple spheres on their interior faces, make up one large cube that is shown. Labels below this structure read “Cubic hole” and “Cation radius is about 73.2 to 100 percent of the anion radius.”

There are two tetrahedral holes for each anion in either an HCP or CCP array of anions. A compound that crystallizes in a closest-packed array of anions with cations in the tetrahedral holes can have a maximum cation:anion ratio of 2:1; all of the tetrahedral holes are filled at this ratio. Examples include Li_2O, Na_2O, Li_2S, and Na_2S. Compounds with a ratio of less than 2:1 may also crystallize in a closest-packed array of anions with cations in the tetrahedral holes, if the ionic sizes fit. In these compounds,

however, some of the tetrahedral holes remain vacant.

Example 6.3.3: Occupancy of Tetrahedral Holes

Zinc sulfide is an important industrial source of zinc and is also used as a white pigment in paint. Zinc sulfide crystallizes with zinc ions occupying one-half of the tetrahedral holes in a closest-packed array of sulfide ions. What is the formula of zinc sulfide?

Solution

Because there are two tetrahedral holes per anion (sulfide ion) and one-half of these holes are occupied by zinc ions, there must be $\frac{1}{2} \times 2$, or 1, zinc ion per sulfide ion. Thus, the formula is ZnS.

Exercise 6.3.3: Lithium selenide

Lithium selenide can be described as a closest-packed array of selenide ions with lithium ions in all of the tetrahedral holes. What it the formula of lithium selenide?

Answer available at the end of this section.

The ratio of octahedral holes to anions in either an HCP or CCP structure is 1:1. Thus, compounds with cations in octahedral holes in a closest-packed array of anions can have a maximum cation:anion ratio of 1:1. In NiO, MnS, NaCl, and KH, for example, all of the octahedral holes are filled. Ratios of less than 1:1 are observed when some of the octahedral holes remain empty.

Example 6.3.4: Stoichiometry of Ionic Compounds Sapphire

Aluminum oxide crystallizes with aluminum ions in two-thirds of the octahedral holes in a closest-packed array of oxide ions. What is the formula of aluminum oxide?

Solution

Because there is one octahedral hole per anion (oxide ion) and only two-thirds of these holes are occupied, the ratio of aluminum to oxygen must be $\frac{2}{3}$:1, which would give $\mathrm{Al_{2/3}O}$. The simplest whole number ratio is 2:3, so the formula is Al_2O_3.

Exercise 6.3.4

The white pigment titanium oxide crystallizes with titanium ions in one-half of the octahedral holes in a closest-packed array of oxide ions. What is the formula of titanium oxide?

Answer available at the end of this section.

In a simple cubic array of anions, there is one cubic hole that can be occupied by a cation for each anion in the array. In CsCl, and in other compounds with the same structure, all of the cubic holes are occupied. Half of the cubic holes are occupied in SrH_2, UO_2, $SrCl_2$, and CaF_2.

Different types of ionic compounds often crystallize in the same structure when the relative sizes of their ions and their stoichiometries (the two principal features that determine structure) are similar.

Unit Cells of Ionic Compounds

Many ionic compounds crystallize with cubic unit cells, and we will use these compounds to describe the general features of ionic

structures. When an ionic compound is composed of cations and anions of similar size in a 1:1 ratio, it typically forms a simple cubic structure. Cesium chloride, CsCl, (Figure 6.3.14) is an example of this, with Cs^+ and Cl^- having radii of 174 pm and 181 pm, respectively. We can think of this as chloride ions forming a simple cubic unit cell, with a cesium ion in the center; or as cesium ions forming a unit cell with a chloride ion in the center; or as simple cubic unit cells formed by Cs^+ ions overlapping unit cells formed by Cl^- ions. Cesium ions and chloride ions touch along the body diagonals of the unit cells. One cesium ion and one chloride ion are present per unit cell, giving the l:l stoichiometry required by the formula for cesium chloride. Note that there is no lattice point in the center of the cell, and CsCl is not a BCC structure because a cesium ion is not identical to a chloride ion.

Figure 6.3.14: Ionic compounds with similar-sized cations and anions, such as CsCl, usually form a simple cubic structure. They can be described by unit cells with either cations at the corners or anions at the corners.

Three images are shown. The first image shows a cube with black dots at each corner and a red dot in the center. This cube is stacked with seven others that are not colored to form a larger cube. The second image is composed of eight spheres that are grouped together to form a cube with one smaller sphere in the center. The name under this image reads “Body-centered simple cubic structure.” The third image shows five horizontal layers of purple spheres with layers of smaller green spheres in between.

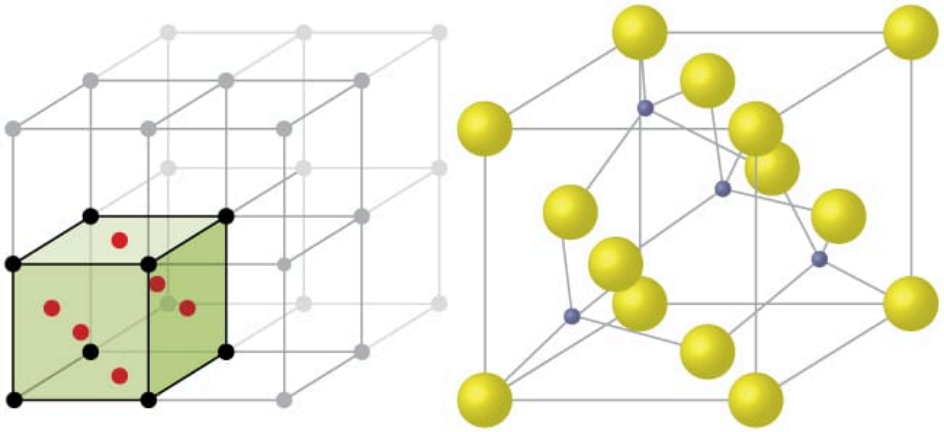
We have said that the location of lattice points is arbitrary. This is illustrated by an alternate description of the CsCl structure in which the lattice points are located in the centers of the cesium ions. In this description, the cesium ions are located on the lattice points at the corners of the cell, and the chloride ion is located at the center of the cell. The two unit cells are different, but they describe identical structures.

When an ionic compound is composed of a 1:1 ratio of cations and anions that differ significantly in size, it typically crystallizes with an FCC unit cell, like that shown in Figure 6.3.15. Sodium chloride, NaCl, is an example of this, with Na^+ and Cl^- having radii of 102 pm and 181 pm, respectively. We can think of this as chloride ions forming an FCC cell, with sodium ions located in the octahedral holes in the middle of the cell edges and in the center of the cell. The sodium and chloride ions touch each other along the cell edges. The unit cell contains four sodium ions and four chloride ions, giving the 1:1 stoichiometry required by the formula, NaCl.

Figure 6.3.15: Ionic compounds with anions that are much larger than cations, such as NaCl, usually form an FCC structure. They can be described by FCC unit cells with cations in the octahedral holes.

Three images are shown. The first image shows a cube with black dots at each corner and a red dot in the center. This cube is stacked with seven others that are not colored to form a larger cube. The second image is composed of eight spheres that are grouped together to form a cube with one much larger sphere in the center. The name under this image reads “Body-centered simple cubic structure.” The third image shows seven horizontal layers of alternating purple and green spheres that are slightly offset with one another and form a large cube.

The cubic form of zinc sulfide, zinc blende, also crystallizes in an FCC unit cell, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.16. This structure contains sulfide ions on the lattice points of an FCC lattice. (The arrangement of sulfide ions is identical to the arrangement of chloride ions in sodium chloride.) The radius of a zinc ion is only about 40% of the radius of a sulfide ion, so these small Zn^{2+} ions are located in alternating tetrahedral holes, that is, in one half of the tetrahedral holes. There are four zinc ions and four sulfide ions in the unit cell, giving the empirical formula ZnS.

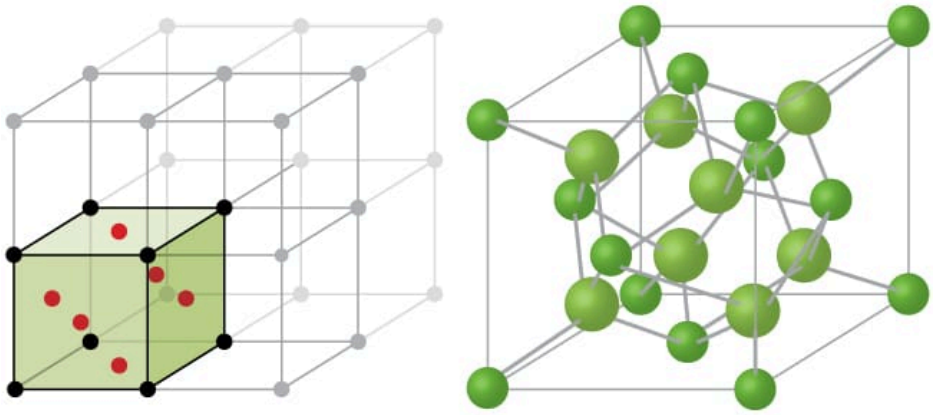


ZnS face-centered unit cell

Figure 6.3.16: ZnS, zinc sulfide (or zinc blende) forms an FCC unit cell with sulfide ions at the lattice points and much smaller zinc ions occupying half of the tetrahedral holes in the structure.

Two images are shown. The first image shows a cube with black dots at each corner and a red dot in the center of each face of the cube. This cube is stacked with seven others that are not colored to form a larger cube. The second image is composed of eight spheres that form the corners of a cube with six other spheres located in the face of the cube. The spheres are connected to one another by lines. The name under this image reads “Z n S, face-centered unit cell.”

A calcium fluoride unit cell, like that shown in Figure 6.3.17, is also an FCC unit cell, but in this case, the cations are located on the lattice points; equivalent calcium ions are located on the lattice points of an FCC lattice. All of the tetrahedral sites in the FCC array of calcium ions are occupied by fluoride ions. There are four calcium ions and eight fluoride ions in a unit cell, giving a calcium:fluorine ratio of 1:2, as required by the chemical formula, CaF_2. Close examination of Figure 6.3.17 will reveal a simple cubic array of fluoride ions with calcium ions in one half of the cubic holes. The structure cannot be described in terms of a space lattice of points on the fluoride ions because the fluoride ions do not all have identical environments. The orientation of the four calcium ions about the fluoride ions differs.



CaF_2 face-centered unit cell

Figure 6.3.17: Calcium fluoride, CaF_2, forms an FCC unit cell with calcium ions (green) at the lattice points and fluoride ions (red) occupying all of the tetrahedral sites between them.

Two images are shown. The first image shows a cube with black dots at each corner and a red dot in the center of each face of the cube. This cube is stacked with seven others that are not colored to form a larger cube. The second image is composed of eight small green spheres that form the corners of a cube with six other small green spheres located in the faces of the cube. Eight larger green spheres are spaced inside the cube and all of the spheres are connect to one another by lines. The name under this image reads “C a F, subscript 2, face-centered unit cell.”

Calculation of Ionic Radii

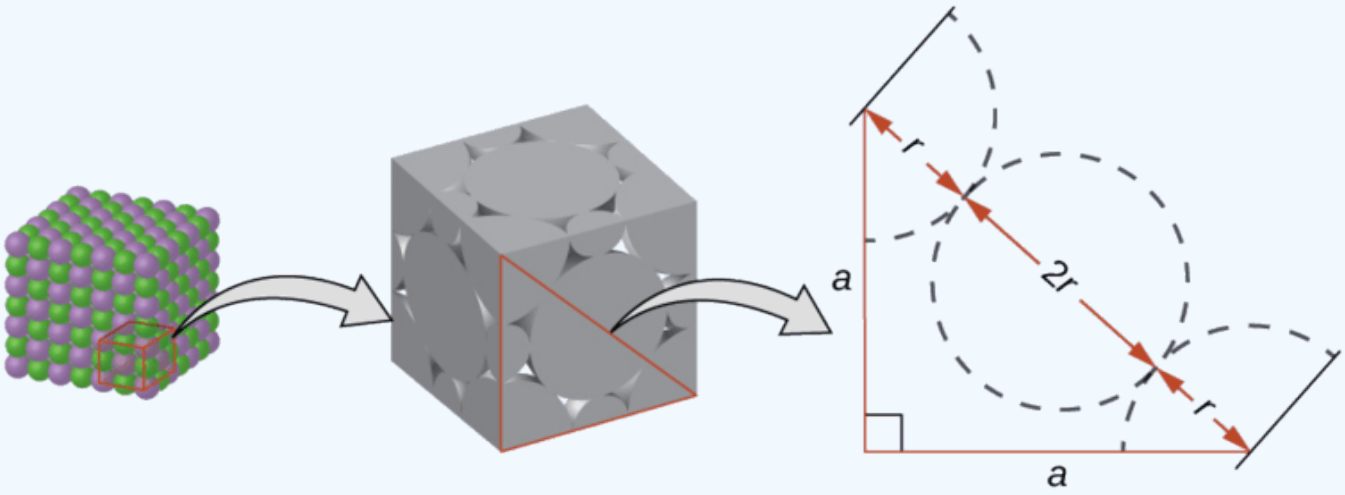
If we know the edge length of a unit cell of an ionic compound and the position of the ions in the cell, we can calculate ionic radii for the ions in the compound if we make assumptions about individual ionic shapes and contacts.

Example 6.3.5: Calculation of Ionic Radii

The edge length of the unit cell of LiCl (NaCl-like structure, FCC) is 0.514 nm or 5.14 Å. Assuming that the lithium ion is small enough so that the chloride ions are in contact, calculate the ionic radius for the chloride ion. Note: The length unit angstrom, Å, is often used to represent atomic-scale dimensions and is equivalent to 10^{-10} m.

Solution

On the face of a LiCl unit cell, chloride ions contact each other across the diagonal of the face:



Drawing a right triangle on the face of the unit cell, we see that the length of the diagonal is equal to four chloride radii (one radius from each corner chloride and one diameter—which equals two radii—from the chloride ion in the center of the face), so $d = 4r$. From the Pythagorean theorem, we have:

$$a^2 + a^2 = d^2$$

which yields:

$$(0.514\ \text{nm})^2 + (0.514\ \text{nm})^2 = (4r)^2 = 16r^2$$

Solving this gives:

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{(0.514\ \text{nm})^2 + (0.514\ \text{nm})^2}{16}} = 0.182\ \text{nm}\ (1.82\ \text{Å})\ \text{for a}\ Cl^-\ \text{radius.}$$

Exercise 6.3.6

The edge length of the unit cell of KCl (NaCl-like structure, FCC) is 6.28 Å. Assuming anion-cation contact along the cell edge, calculate the radius of the potassium ion. The radius of the chloride ion is 1.82 Å.

Answer available at the end of this section.

It is important to realize that values for ionic radii calculated from the edge lengths of unit cells depend on numerous

assumptions, such as a perfect spherical shape for ions, which are approximations at best. Hence, such calculated values are themselves approximate and comparisons cannot be pushed too far. Nevertheless, this method has proved useful for calculating ionic radii from experimental measurements such as X-ray crystallographic determinations.

X-Ray Crystallography

The size of the unit cell and the arrangement of atoms in a crystal may be determined from measurements of the *diffraction* of X-rays by the crystal, termed X-ray crystallography. Diffraction is the change in the direction of travel experienced by an electromagnetic wave when it encounters a physical barrier whose dimensions are comparable to those of the wavelength of the light. X-rays are electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths about as long as the distance between neighboring atoms in crystals (on the order of a few Å).

When a beam of monochromatic X-rays strikes a crystal, its rays are scattered in all directions by the atoms within the crystal. When scattered waves traveling in the same direction encounter one another, they undergo *interference*, a process by which the waves combine to yield either an increase or a decrease in amplitude (intensity) depending upon the extent to which the combining waves' maxima are separated (Figure 6.3.18).

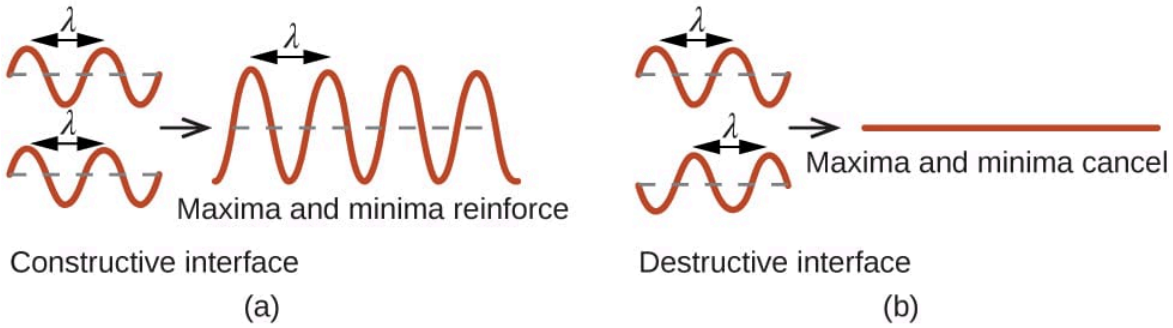


Figure 6.3.18: Light waves occupying the same space experience interference, combining to yield waves of greater (a) or lesser (b) intensity, depending upon the separation of their maxima and minima.

A pair of images is shown that has four sections. In the first section, two sinusoidal waves are shown, one drawn above the other, and a section from the top of one curve to the top of the next curve is labeled "lambda." The curves align with one another. The phrase below this reads "Constructive interference." A right facing arrow leads from the first section to the second, which shows one larger sinusoidal curve that has higher and lower peaks and troughs. A section from the top of one curve to the top of the next curve is labeled "lambda" and the phrase below this reads "Maxima and minima reinforce." In the second section, two sinusoidal waves are shown, one drawn above the other, and a section from the top of one curve to the top of the next curve is labeled "lambda." The curves do not align with one another. The phrase below this reads "Destructive interference." A right facing arrow leads from the first section to the second, which shows one flat line. The phrase below this reads "Maxima and minima cancel."

When X-rays of a certain wavelength, λ, are scattered by atoms in adjacent crystal planes separated by a distance, d, they may undergo constructive interference when the difference between the distances traveled by the two waves prior to their combination is an integer factor, n, of the wavelength. This condition is satisfied when the angle of the diffracted beam, θ, is related to the wavelength and interatomic distance by the equation:

$$n\lambda = 2d\sin\theta \tag{6.3.1}$$

This relation is known as the Bragg equation in honor of W. H. Bragg, the English physicist who first explained this phenomenon. Figure 6.3.18 illustrates two examples of diffracted waves from the same two crystal planes. The figure on the left depicts waves diffracted at the Bragg angle, resulting in constructive interference, while that on the right shows diffraction and a different angle that does not satisfy the Bragg condition, resulting in destructive interference.

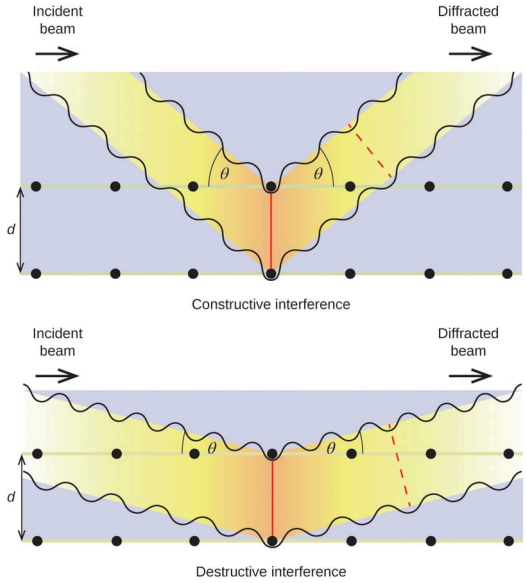


Figure 6.3.19: The diffraction of X-rays scattered by the atoms within a crystal permits the determination of the distance between the atoms. The top image depicts constructive interference between two scattered waves and a resultant diffracted wave of high intensity. The bottom image depicts destructive interference and a low intensity diffracted wave.

Two similar figures are shown. The first figure, labeled “Constructive Interference,” shows two horizontal rows of seven black dots with a line passing through them. The fourth dots of each row have a vertical line connecting them. The distance between these rows is labeled “d.” A beam labeled “Incident beam” descends at an angle labeled “theta” until it hits the line connecting the fourth dots, after which a diffracted beam ascends at the same angle “theta.” A dotted line is drawn across the diffracted beam. The second figure, labeled “Destructive interference,” is very similar, except that the angles “theta” are far more acute, making the slopes of the beams more shallow.

An X-ray diffractometer, such as the one illustrated in Figure 6.3.20, may be used to measure the angles at which X-rays are diffracted when interacting with a crystal as described earlier. From such measurements, the Bragg equation may be used to compute distances between atoms as demonstrated in the following example exercise.

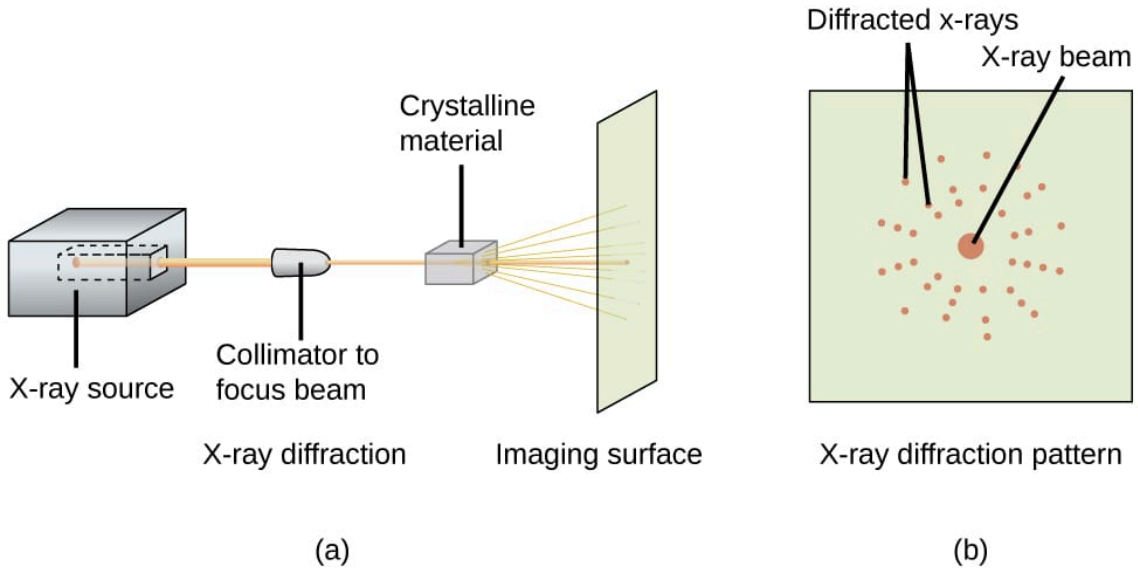


Figure 6.3.20: (a) In a diffractometer, a beam of X-rays strikes a crystalline material, producing (b) an X-ray diffraction pattern that can be analyzed to determine the crystal structure.

A diagram, labeled “a” shows a cube on the left with a channel bored into its right side labeled “X dash ray source.” A beam is leaving from this channel and traveling in a horizontal line toward an oval-shaped, short tube, labeled “Collimator to focus beam” and “X dash ray diffraction,” where it passes through a cube labeled “Crystalline material” and scatters onto a vertical sheet labeled “Imaging surface.” A second diagram, labeled “b,” shows a square sheet with a large dot in the center labeled “X dash ray beam,” that is surrounded by smaller dots arranged in rings and labeled “Diffracted X dash rays.”

Example 6.3.6: Using the Bragg Equation

In a diffractometer, X-rays with a wavelength of 0.1315 nm were used to produce a diffraction pattern for copper. The first order diffraction (n = 1) occurred at an angle θ = 25.25°. Determine the spacing between the diffracting planes in copper.

Solution

The distance between the planes is found by solving the Bragg equation (Equation 6.3.1) for d.

This gives

$$d = \frac{n\lambda}{2\sin\theta} = \frac{1(0.1315\text{ nm})}{2\sin(25.25°)} = 0.154\text{ nm}$$

Exercise 6.3.6

A crystal with spacing between planes equal to 0.394 nm diffracts X-rays with a wavelength of 0.147 nm. What is the angle for the first order diffraction?

Answer available at the end of this section.

X-ray Crystallographer Rosalind Franklin

The discovery of the structure of DNA in 1953 by Francis Crick and James Watson is one of the great achievements in the history of science. They were awarded the 1962 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, along with Maurice Wilkins, who provided experimental proof of DNA's structure. British chemist Rosalind Franklin made invaluable contributions to this monumental achievement through her work in measuring X-ray diffraction images of DNA. Early in her career, Franklin's research on the structure of coals proved helpful to the British war effort. After shifting her focus to biological systems in the early 1950s, Franklin and doctoral student Raymond Gosling discovered that DNA consists of two forms: a long, thin fiber formed when wet (type "B") and a short, wide fiber formed when dried (type "A"). Her X-ray diffraction images of DNA provided the crucial information that allowed Watson and Crick to confirm that DNA forms a double helix, and to determine details of its size and structure. Franklin also conducted pioneering research on viruses and the RNA that contains their genetic information, uncovering new information that radically changed the body of knowledge in the field. After developing ovarian cancer, Franklin continued to work until her death in 1958 at age 37. Among many posthumous recognitions of her work, the Chicago Medical School of Finch University of Health Sciences changed its name to the Rosalind Franklin University of Medicine and Science in 2004, and adopted an image of her famous X-ray diffraction image of DNA as its official university logo.

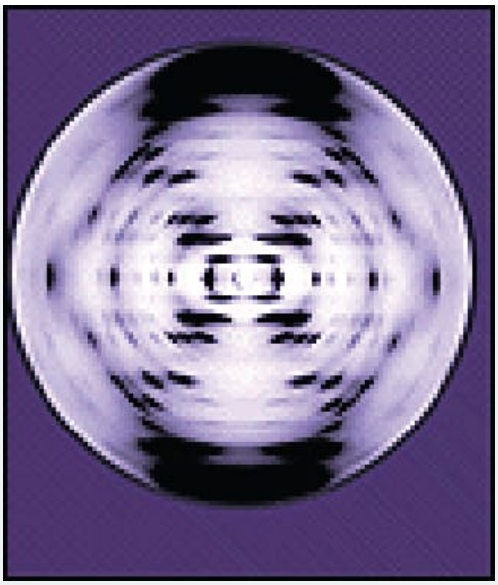


Figure 6.3.7.This illustration shows an X-ray diffraction image similar to the one Franklin found in her research. (credit: National Institutes of Health)

Key Concepts and Summary

The structures of crystalline metals and simple ionic compounds can be described in terms of packing of spheres. Metal atoms can pack in hexagonal closest-packed structures, cubic closest-packed structures, body-centered structures, and simple cubic structures. The anions in simple ionic structures commonly adopt one of these structures, and the cations occupy the spaces remaining between the anions. Small cations usually occupy tetrahedral holes in a closest-packed array of anions. Larger cations usually occupy octahedral holes. Still larger cations can occupy cubic holes in a simple cubic array of anions. The structure of a solid can be described by indicating the size and shape of a unit cell and the contents of the cell. The type of structure and dimensions of the unit cell can be determined by X-ray diffraction measurements.

Glossary

body-centered cubic (BCC) solid
: crystalline structure that has a cubic unit cell with lattice points at the corners and in the center of the cell

body-centered cubic unit cell
: simplest repeating unit of a body-centered cubic crystal; it is a cube containing lattice points at each corner and in the center of the cube

Bragg equation
: equation that relates the angles at which X-rays are diffracted by the atoms within a crystal

coordination number
: number of atoms closest to any given atom in a crystal or to the central metal atom in a complex

cubic closest packing (CCP)
: crystalline structure in which planes of closely packed atoms or ions are stacked as a series of three alternating layers of different relative orientations (ABC)

diffraction
: redirection of electromagnetic radiation that occurs when it encounters a physical barrier of appropriate dimensions

face-centered cubic (FCC) solid
: crystalline structure consisting of a cubic unit cell with lattice points on the corners and in the center of each face

face-centered cubic unit cell
simplest repeating unit of a face-centered cubic crystal; it is a cube containing lattice points at each corner and in the center of each face

hexagonal closest packing (HCP)
crystalline structure in which close packed layers of atoms or ions are stacked as a series of two alternating layers of different relative orientations (AB)

hole
(also, interstice) space between atoms within a crystal

isomorphous
possessing the same crystalline structure

octahedral hole
open space in a crystal at the center of six particles located at the corners of an octahedron

simple cubic unit cell
(also, primitive cubic unit cell) unit cell in the simple cubic structure

simple cubic structure
crystalline structure with a cubic unit cell with lattice points only at the corners

space lattice
all points within a crystal that have identical environments

tetrahedral hole
tetrahedral space formed by four atoms or ions in a crystal

unit cell
smallest portion of a space lattice that is repeated in three dimensions to form the entire lattice

X-ray crystallography
experimental technique for determining distances between atoms in a crystal by measuring the angles at which X-rays are diffracted when passing through the crystal

Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

Answers

Exercise 6.3.1

No. If Ni were simple cubic, its density would be given by:

$$1\ \text{Ni atom} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Ni}}{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \text{Ni atoms}} \times \frac{58.693\ \text{g}}{1\ \text{mol Ni}} = 9.746 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{g}$$

$$V = l^3 = (3.524 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{cm})^3 = 4.376 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{cm}^3$$

Then the density of Ni would be

$$(= \frac{9.746 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{g}}{4.376 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{cm}^3} = 2.23\ \text{g/cm}^3$$

Since the actual density of Ni is not close to this, Ni does not form a simple cubic structure.

Exercise 6.3.2

144 pm

10.5 g/cm^3

Exercise 6.3.3**: Lithium selenide**

Li_2Se

Exercise 6.3.4

TiO_2

Exercise 6.3.6

The radius of the potassium ion is 1.33 Å.

Exercise 6.3.6

21.9°

This page titled 6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

- 10.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

INDEX

A

amorphous solid
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

atomic spectra
1.4: Atomic Spectra

Author Bars
1.14: Slater's Rules

Author tag:OpenStax
2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry
2.2: Ionic Bonding
2.3: Covalent Bonding
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

autonumheader:yes2
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

B

back strain
5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct.

bond length
2.3: Covalent Bonding

Bragg equation
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

C

chromium
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

citationstyle:acs
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
1.14: Slater's Rules

CO
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

cobalt
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

coordination number
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

copper
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding

covalent network solid
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

Cr
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

crystalline solid
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

Cu
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

cubic closest packing
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

D

Diffraction
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

Drago and Wayland's EC Model
5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors

E

ECW model
5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors

effective nuclear charge
1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

electron configuration
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

electron shielding
1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge

electronegativity
2.3: Covalent Bonding

electronegativity (Mulliken)
5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors

electrophile
5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals

F

Fe
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

field:ichem
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
1.14: Slater's Rules

first row transition metals
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

front strain
5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct.

frontier orbitals
5.8: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital.

H

hexagonal closest packing
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

hole
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

hypothesis:yes
6.1: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids

I

inert pair effect
2.2: Ionic Bonding

interstitial sites
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

ionic bond
2.2: Ionic Bonding

ionic solid
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

iron
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

isomorphous
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

M

manganese
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

metallic solid
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

Mn
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

molecular solid
6.2: The Solid State of Matter

N

Ni
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

nickel
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

nonpolar covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding

nucleophile
5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals

O

octahedral hole
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

orbital
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

oxidation states
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

oxoacids
*5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom**

oxyacids
*5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom**

P

Pauling's rules
*5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom**
Pearson's absolute hardness
5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors
penetration
1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge
polar covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding
pure covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding

Q

quantum theory
1.3: Quantum Theory

S

Sc
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
Scandium
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
Second Row Transition Metal
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
simple cubic structure
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
simple cubic unit cell
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
space lattice
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
subshells
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

T

tetrahedral hole
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
Ti
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
titanium
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
transition metals
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

U

unit cell
6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
Usanovich acids
5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals
Usanovich bases
5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals

V

v
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
vacancy
6.2: The Solid State of Matter
vanadium
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

Z

zinc
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements
Zn
1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements

This page titled Index is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

GLOSSARY

S

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

This page titled Glossary is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

DETAILED LICENSING

Overview

Title: AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie)

Webpages: 74

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 40.5% (30 pages)
- Undeclared: 36.5% (27 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 8.1% (6 pages)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 5.4% (4 pages)
- CC BY-NC 4.0: 4.1% (3 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 2.7% (2 pages)
- CC BY-NC 3.0: 2.7% (2 pages)

By Page

- AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie) - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Atomic Structure - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: The History of the Periodic Table - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.2: Electromagnetic Radiation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: Quantum Theory - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.4: Atomic Spectra - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.5: The Bohr Atom - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.6: Two Ideas Leading to a New Quantum Mechanics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.7: Wave Mechanics and Quantum Numbers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.8: Electron Spin- A Fourth Quantum Number - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.9: Orbital Shapes and Energies - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.10: Electron Configurations - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.12: Magnetic Properties - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.14: Slater's Rules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: Simple Bonding Theory - *Undeclared*
    - 2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.2: Ionic Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.3: Covalent Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.4: Electronegativity - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.5: Lewis Theory- An Overview - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.6: Writing Lewis Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.7: Resonance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.8: Exceptions to the Octet Rule - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.9: Shapes of Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.10: Multiple Bonds - *Undeclared*
    - 2.11: Electronegativity and Atomic Size Effects - *Undeclared*
  - 3: Molecular Symmetry - *Undeclared*
    - 3.1: Symmetry Elements and Operations - *Undeclared*
    - 3.2: Symmetry Elements - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Molecular Point Groups - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 4: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory - *Undeclared*
    - 4.1: Formation of Molecular Orbitals from Atomic Orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.2: Molecular Orbitals from s Orbitals - *CC BY-NC 3.0*
    - 4.3: Molecular Orbitals from p Orbitals - *CC BY-NC 3.0*
    - 4.4: Molecular orbitals from d orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.5: Nonbonding Orbitals and Other Factors - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.6: Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 4.7: Molecular Orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.8: Orbital Mixing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.9: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.10: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.11: Orbital ionization energies - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
- 4.12: Polar bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.13: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 5: Acid-Base and Donor-Acceptor Chemistry - *Undeclared*
- 5.1: Acid-Base Models as Organizing Concepts - *Undeclared*
- 5.2: Arrhenius Concept - *Undeclared*
- 5.3: Brønsted-Lowry Concept - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.4: Rules of Thumb for thinking about the relationship between Molecular Structure and Brønsted Acidity and Basicity* - *Undeclared*
- 5.5: The acid-base behavior of binary element hydrides is determined primarily by the element's electronegativity and secondarily by the element-hydrogen bond strength.* - *Undeclared*
- 5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom* - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 5.8: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital. - *Undeclared*
- 5.9: All other things being equal, electron withdrawing groups tend to make Lewis acids stronger and bases weaker while electron donating groups tend to make Lewis bases stronger and acids weaker - *Undeclared*
- 5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct. - *Undeclared*
- 5.11: Hard and Soft Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*
- 5.12: Hard-Hard and Soft-Soft preferences may be explained and quantified in terms of electrostatic and covalent and electronic stabilization on the stability of Lewis acid-base adducts - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

◦ 6: Crystalline Solids - *Undeclared*
- 6.1: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.2: The Solid State of Matter - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids - *CC BY 4.0*

◦ Back Matter - *Undeclared*
- Index - *Undeclared*
- Glossary - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

This page titled AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie) is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.

DETAILED LICENSING

Overview

Title: AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie)

Webpages: 74

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 40.5% (30 pages)
- Undeclared: 36.5% (27 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 8.1% (6 pages)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 5.4% (4 pages)
- CC BY-NC 4.0: 4.1% (3 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 2.7% (2 pages)
- CC BY-NC 3.0: 2.7% (2 pages)

By Page

- AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie) - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Atomic Structure - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: The History of the Periodic Table - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.2: Electromagnetic Radiation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: Quantum Theory - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.4: Atomic Spectra - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.5: The Bohr Atom - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.6: Two Ideas Leading to a New Quantum Mechanics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.7: Wave Mechanics and Quantum Numbers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.8: Electron Spin- A Fourth Quantum Number - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.9: Orbital Shapes and Energies - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.10: Electron Configurations - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.11: Electron Configurations for Transition Metal Elements - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.12: Magnetic Properties - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.13: Shielding and Effective Nuclear Charge - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.14: Slater's Rules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: Simple Bonding Theory - *Undeclared*
    - 2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.2: Ionic Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.3: Covalent Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.4: Electronegativity - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.5: Lewis Theory- An Overview - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.6: Writing Lewis Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.7: Resonance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.8: Exceptions to the Octet Rule - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.9: Shapes of Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.10: Multiple Bonds - *Undeclared*
    - 2.11: Electronegativity and Atomic Size Effects - *Undeclared*
  - 3: Molecular Symmetry - *Undeclared*
    - 3.1: Symmetry Elements and Operations - *Undeclared*
    - 3.2: Symmetry Elements - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Molecular Point Groups - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 4: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory - *Undeclared*
    - 4.1: Formation of Molecular Orbitals from Atomic Orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.2: Molecular Orbitals from s Orbitals - *CC BY-NC 3.0*
    - 4.3: Molecular Orbitals from p Orbitals - *CC BY-NC 3.0*
    - 4.4: Molecular orbitals from d orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.5: Nonbonding Orbitals and Other Factors - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.6: Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 4.7: Molecular Orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.8: Orbital Mixing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.9: Diatomic Molecules of the First and Second Periods - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.10: Heteronuclear Diatomic Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.11: Orbital ionization energies - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
- 4.12: Polar bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.13: Ionic Compounds and Molecular Orbitals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 5: Acid-Base and Donor-Acceptor Chemistry - *Undeclared*
- 5.1: Acid-Base Models as Organizing Concepts - *Undeclared*
- 5.2: Arrhenius Concept - *Undeclared*
- 5.3: Brønsted-Lowry Concept - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.4: Rules of Thumb for thinking about the relationship between Molecular Structure and Brønsted Acidity and Basicity* - *Undeclared*
- 5.5: The acid-base behavior of binary element hydrides is determined primarily by the element's electronegativity and secondarily by the element-hydrogen bond strength.* - *Undeclared*
- 5.6: The Acidity of an Oxoacid is Determined by the Electronegativity and Oxidation State of the Oxoacid's Central Atom* - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.7: Lewis Concept and Frontier Orbitals - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 5.8: The frontier orbital approach considers Lewis acid-base reactions in terms of the donation of electrons from the base's highest occupied orbital into the acid's lowest unoccupied orbital. - *Undeclared*
- 5.9: All other things being equal, electron withdrawing groups tend to make Lewis acids stronger and bases weaker while electron donating groups tend to make Lewis bases stronger and acids weaker - *Undeclared*
- 5.10: Bulky groups weaken the strength of Lewis acids and bases because they introduce steric strain into the resulting acid-base adduct. - *Undeclared*
- 5.11: Hard and Soft Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*
- 5.12: Hard-Hard and Soft-Soft preferences may be explained and quantified in terms of electrostatic and covalent and electronic stabilization on the stability of Lewis acid-base adducts - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 5.13: Quantitative Measures of Hardness, Softness, and Acid-Base Interactions from a Hard Soft Acid-Base Principle Perspective Involve Orbital Energies and/or Apportioning Acid-Base Bonding in Terms of Electrostatic and Covalent Factors - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

◦ 6: Crystalline Solids - *Undeclared*
- 6.1: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.2: The Solid State of Matter - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.3: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids - *CC BY 4.0*

◦ Back Matter - *Undeclared*
- Index - *Undeclared*
- Glossary - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

This page titled AUCHE 230 - Structure and Bonding (Elizabeth McGinitie) is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Elizabeth McGinitie.